

Bit  Bit  
كتاب في اللغة الإنجليزية

# New Hello!



2<sup>nd</sup>  
PREP  
2024

**SECOND TERM**  
الصف الثاني الإعدادي  
التعليم العام والأزهري

دار غزة  
للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع  
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

# Contents

## 1

Part

- Exam specifications

### Module 3: Science and art

- Unit (7) : Technology and the future
- Unit (8) : You are what you eat
- Unit (9) : Watch, listen and make

#### Review (C)

### Module 4: Our place in the world

- Unit (10) : We are what we wear
- Unit (11) : The future of our planet
- Unit (12) : Languages and learning

#### Review (D)

## 2

Part

- General Exercises
- End of Term Practice with Answers
- Final Exams
- Al-Azhar Exams
- **SB / WB** Answers
- Listening material
- Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

### Booklet (free with the book)

- Dictation
- Homework exercises on lessons
- Tests on units
- General Revision & Exercises



**Specifications for Second Year Preparatory (2<sup>nd</sup> term)  
English Examination (2023 - 2024)**



مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الإعدادي  
(24 Marks) (الفصل الدراسي الثاني) للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٢٤ (Time: 2 Hours)



**Listening**

**4 Marks**

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)**

Students listen to a text from (30-35) words. Topics should be related to the Set Books.  
Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each.  
(One mark each)



**Language Functions**

**2.5 Marks**

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. Students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any guidance. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full.  
(Half a mark each)



**Reading Comprehension**

**4.5 Marks**

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED and TWENTY-FIVE (125)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are required to answer **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. (Half a mark each) and **THREE (3)** open-ended questions (One mark each)

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Giving the main idea (1 question)
- Extracting information (2 questions)
- Understanding reference (1 question)
- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)
- Critical thinking skill (1 question)



## Vocabulary & Structure

2 Marks

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** (5 Marks)

TEN (10) multiple-choice items (7 Vocabulary & 3 Structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the FOUR (4) options given. (Half a mark each)

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

(2 Marks)

FOUR (4) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given words(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs... etc. related to what students have studied. (Half a mark each)



## Writing

6 Marks

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on....:** (6 Marks)

Students are asked to write a paragraph from EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95) words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

(One mark for organization-One mark for relevance of ideas- One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

OR

**Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on:** (6 Marks)

Students are asked to write an email from EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95) words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the email. Names and addresses are provided.

(One mark for organization - One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)



prep.

2

New  
Hello!

7  
UNIT

# Technology and the future

## Objectives

### Reading:

A magazine article about online shopping;  
*The Time Machine*; a poster about the  
dangers of technology

### Writing:

A reply to an online message; a formal  
email about a problem with a delivery.

### Listening:

A discussion about new inventions;  
people's problems with technology and  
suggested solutions

### Speaking:

Giving opinions about inventions and  
technology; a debate

### Language:

*If/when + should* for advice

### Life Skills:

Critical thinking: technological awareness

SB / WB Answers

جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب ولاندريلك جواب عنها في آخر الكتاب

يقوم الطالب بتسوية المفردات في كراسة التمرين

استلم إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

headphones	✓ سماعات الرأس (جمع دائما)
motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)
solar panels	✓ ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
helicopter	طائرة مروحية (هليكوبتر)

speed	سرعة
electricity	الكهرباء
app(application)	✓ تطبيق (على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)

## Useful Phrases

<b>have</b> {	money	يملك مالا	<b>spend</b> {	money	ينفق مالا
	a choice	لديه اختيار		time	يقضي وقت
	time	لديه وقت	<b>waste</b> {	money	يهدر (يضيق) المال
<b>save</b> {	money	يُخّذ المال		time	يهدر (يضيق) الوقت
	time	يوفر الوقت	<b>wait for a delivery</b>		يلتظر توصيل (طلب)

## Verbs & Nouns

correct (ed)	يصحح - يصوب	correction	تصحيح - تصويب
invent (ed)	يخترع	invention	اختراع
predict (ed)	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ
translate (d)	يترجم	translation	ترجمة

## Vocabulary

half-motorbike	نصف خصائص دراجة نارية	for	مع مرئيد له
half-helicopter	نصف خصائص طائرة مروحية	against	✓ ضد - معارض له
French	اللغة الفرنسية	the latest	✓ الأحدث
shopping online	التسوق عبر الانترنت	article	✓ مقالة (في جريدة)
pollution	✓ التلوث	either...or....	✓ إما...أو...
resources	✓ مصادر	benefits	✓ فوائد
businesses	✓ أعمال تجارية	cooler	✓ أكثر برودة
wing	✓ جناح	free time	وقت فراغ
firstly	أولا	hope (d)	يأمل
secondly	ثانيا	push (ed)	يدفع (لأمام)
flying motorbike	دراجة نارية طائرة	prefer (red)	يفضل
technology	التكنولوجيا		



## Expressions & Prepositions

make electricity	يولد كهرباء	pass exams	يجتاز الامتحانات
look online	يبحث على الإنترنت	translate from...into... .. إلى	يترجم من ... إلى ...
wear headphones	يرتدي سماعات الرأس	on a motorbike	على دراجة نارية
get hotter	يزداد سخونة / حرارة	agree / disagree with	يتفق / يختلف مع
get home	يصل للمنزل	arrive in	يصل إلى (بلد)
do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق	in a few minutes	في خلال دقائق قليلة
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	at the speed of..	على سرعة ..
change roads into ...	يحول الطريق إلى ...	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
shop online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت	think of	يفكر في

### Conjugations of

#### Irregular Verbs

#### Present

hear	يسمع
buy	يشترى
spend	يقضي - يتفق
drive	يقود (سيارة مثلاً)
wear	يرتدي
fly	يطير

#### Past simple

heard
bought
spent
drove
wore
flew

#### Past Participle

heard
bought
spent
driven
worn
flown

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
useful	مفيد	helpful	useless	غير مفيد
famous	مشهور	popular	unknown	غير معروف
agree / for	يوافق - مؤيد	accept	disagree / against	لا يوافق / معارض
friendly	ودود	kind	unfriendly	غير ودود
strong	قوي	powerful	weak	ضعيف
real	حقيقي	true	unreal	غير حقيقي



## Definitions

helicopter	طائرة مروحية	a form of transport that flies using long, thin parts on top of it that turn round and round very quickly	١- وسيلة مواصلات ٢- عجلات ٣- محرك ٤- جهاز إلكتروني
translate (d)	يترجم	change words into a different language	
motorbike	دراجة نارية	a form of <b>transport</b> <sup>(١)</sup> with two <b>wheels</b> <sup>(٢)</sup> and an <b>engine</b> <sup>(٣)</sup>	
app	تطبيق	a small computer program that you can use on a mobile phone or other <b>electronic device</b> <sup>(٤)</sup>	
speed	سرعة	how fast something moves	
headphones	سماعات الرأس	a piece of equipment that you wear over your ears so that you can listen to music without anyone else hearing it	



## Language Notes

### 1) spend / waste

- تستخدم الأفعال **spend / waste** كما يلي:

**spend** يقضي / **waste** يضيع + (time) + V-ing.

**Ex.** I don't want to **spend** lots of time **travelling** to the shops.

**Ex.** I **waste** no time **playing** video games.

**spend** ينفق / **waste** يهدر + (money) + on + V-ing. / noun

**Ex.** He **spent** much money **on** (buying) clothes.

**Ex.** Don't **waste** your money **on** (buying) sweets.

### 2) prefer

- يمكن أن يلي الفعل (**prefer**) الفعل في المصدر مسبقاً بـ (to) :

**Ex.** I **prefer** to wear that jacket.

- كما يمكن أن يستخدم كما يلي:

**prefer** +  $\frac{\text{V-ing.}}{\text{Noun}}$  + to +  $\frac{\text{V-ing.}}{\text{Noun}}$

**Ex.** I **prefer** **playing** football **to** **playing** tennis.

**Ex.** I **prefer** football **to** tennis.



## ③ hope

1- hope + مضارع بسيط + فاعل

Ex. We hope she passes the exam.

3- hope + to + Inf.

Ex. I hope to get high marks.

أنا أأمل (hope) في أن يمر (pass) الامتحان.

2- hope + فاعل + will + Inf.

Ex. We hope she will pass the exam.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amr spends too much time ..... computer games.

- a. play                      b. to play                      c. plays                      d. playing

2. I prefer ..... TV to going to the cinema.

- a. watching                      b. watches                      c. watch                      d. to watching

3. Omar is hoping ..... English at university.

- a. studying                      b. studies                      c. to study                      d. will study



## Reading

SB Page (2)

استمع إلى النصوص



- ❶ This clever jacket uses an **app**<sup>(1)</sup> to make you warmer when the weather is cold.
- ❷ When these **headphones**<sup>(2)</sup> hear another language, they can **translate**<sup>(3)</sup> it into your language.
- ❸ Change roads into **solar panels**<sup>(4)</sup>! This invention uses strong glass that you can drive on and make **electricity**<sup>(5)</sup> at the same time.
- ❹ Is it a **motorbike**<sup>(6)</sup>? Is it a **helicopter**<sup>(7)</sup>? No, this invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter! It can push you into the air at the **speed**<sup>(8)</sup> of a fast car!



- ١- تطبيق  
٢- سماعات الرأس  
٣- يترجم  
٤- ألواح طاقة شمسية  
٥- الكهرباء  
٦- دراجة نارية  
٧- طائرة مروحية  
٨- سرعة



Say it correctly

• translate

• ينطق حرف (s) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق صوت /s/ أو /z/.

## Shopping online - Yes or No?

**Inji - I love online shopping!**



Shopping online<sup>(1)</sup> is great! Firstly, it **saves**<sup>(2)</sup> me time. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes. Secondly, I have more **choice**<sup>(3)</sup> online. Also, if more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the **road**<sup>(4)</sup> and less **pollution**<sup>(5)</sup>! I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

**Baher - I prefer going to real shops in my city.**



Every time I buy clothes online, the thing that I buy is wrong! At a shop, I can see what I am buying and I can **try**<sup>(6)</sup> it first. Also, I don't like to **waste**<sup>(7)</sup> time waiting for a **delivery**<sup>(8)</sup> - I want things now! If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close. If they close, then lots of other **businesses**<sup>(9)</sup> like cafés will close, too.

- ١- التسوق عبر الانترنت
- ٢- يوفر
- ٣- اختيار
- ٤- طريق
- ٥- تلوث
- ٦- يقيس - يجرب
- ٧- يضع
- ٨- توصيل
- ٩- أعمال تجارية

- Mother** : Ahmed, your plane will arrive in England at 11 o'clock.
- Ahmed** : Who will meet me at the airport if the plane's late?
- Mother** : Uncle Sami will wait for you, don't worry!
- Ahmed** : What clothes will I wear if it's cold?
- Mother** : You have a big coat, but it will be warm inside!
- Ahmed** : Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school?
- Mother** : There will be lots of new students, they'll be very friendly.
- Ahmed** : What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson?
- Mother** : He or she will help you to understand.
- Ahmed** : What will I eat if I don't like the food?
- Mother** : Aunt Judy will cook Egyptian food, but you should try English food, too!





# Audioscript

SB Page (3)

1. Narrator : Hatem

**Hatem** : Wow! That looks so cool<sup>1</sup> ! I'm not sure it's very useful though<sup>2</sup> . It won't be able to fly very high, will it?

١- رائع  
٢- مفيد رغم ذلك  
٣- السفر  
٤- مفيد  
٥- ربما  
٦- اختراع

2. Narrator : Manal

**Manal** : I think lots of people will want to buy one of these; they'll be very useful for travelling<sup>3</sup> . It won't help people to speak other languages though, will it? It's only good for<sup>4</sup> listen.ing.

3. Narrator : Tarek

**Tarek** : I think this is a good idea for people in cold places. It won't be very useful for me though! Maybe<sup>5</sup>, they'll make one to make people feel cooler! That would be good here in the summer!

4. Narrator : Sawsan

**Sawsan** : I think that is an amazing nvention<sup>6</sup> . I hope they'll build lots of these in Egypt. We have lots of sun and we could make lots of electricity.

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

يوجد التدريبات اضافية في  
كراسة الواجب المنزلي

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- Do you think that it is easy to . . . from Arabic to English? 2023 WB  
 a. translate      b. move      c. find      d. stay
- The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a . 2022 WB  
 a. lorry      b. ship      c. rocket      d. motorbike
- . . . are like planes, but they do not have wings! 2022 WB  
 a. Cars      b. Cameras      c. Helicopters      d. Mobikes
- Mona always wears . . . on the bus because she loves listening to music. 2022 WB  
 a. mobiles      b. headphones      c. dresses      d. tablets
- There's a/an . . . on this phone which tells me the weather in my city. 2023 WB  
 a. app      b. screen      c. battery      d. charger
- I want to . . . shopping on foot. 2022 WB  
 a. have      b. go      c. pass      d. visit

7. We can use solar ..... to make electricity.  
 a doors                      b windows                      c panels                      d rooms
8. .... much time using the mobile phone is bad for health.  
 a Spending                      b Saving                      c Spelling                      d Sawing
- 9 I don't like to waste time ..... for the delivery.  
 a wait                      b waits                      c waiting                      d to wait
10. "....." means to change words into a different language.  
 a Wait                      b Translate                      c Spend                      d. Waste

### Bit by Bit Exercises

11. I always ..... home at 4 p.m.  
 a make                      b wear                      c. get                      d. look
12. My mother ..... the shopping yesterday.  
 a wore                      b made                      c. went                      d. did
13. A ..... has two wheels and is always fast.  
 a car                      b ship                      c. motorbike                      d. boat
14. A: Can we go to the club tomorrow?  
 B: Sorry! I can't. I don't ..... enough time.  
 a build                      b. have                      c. wait                      d. go
15. Don't ..... your time playing games on your mobile.  
 a give                      b keep                      c. waste                      d miss
16. He drove his car at a/an ..... of 120 km / h.  
 a speed                      b. invention                      c. app                      d. wing
17. The internet is a useful .....  
 a invent                      b invention                      c. predict                      d prediction
18. Ola always ..... her money on buying dresses.  
 a waits                      b has                      c. makes                      d. spends
19. A: Do you think scientists can ..... the future?  
 B: Of course not.  
 a translate                      b translation                      c predict                      d prediction
20. Don't leave the lights on, it wastes .....  
 a electricity                      b. water                      c time                      d wind





## Language

### Making predictions (التنبؤات)

#### 1- will (ll) / will not (won't) for future predictions

##### مثالين (Ex)

• نستخدم الصيغة الآتية للتنبؤ بشيء ما في المستقبل:

subject فعل اسم / ضمير	→	will = ll will not = won't	سوف سوف لا	→	inf. مصدر الفعل
---------------------------	---	-------------------------------	---------------	---	--------------------

Ex The reasonones very useful for travelling.

Ex The machine is capable to fly very high.

##### Key words (كلمات مفتاحية)

• نستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن المستقبل.

في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا
في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا
في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا
في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا
في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا
في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا
في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا
في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا
في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا
في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا	في المستقبل قريبا

• كما نستخدم الأفعال والتعبيرات الآتية للتعبير عن الشيء بالمستقبل مع (will):

يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will
يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will
يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will
يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will
يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will
يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will
يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will
يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will
يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will
يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will
يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will	يؤكد	will

##### المستقبل (Future)

• نستخدم will (ll) / will not (won't) للتنبؤ بالمستقبل بشيئين التاليين:

Ex I will have a car one day.

Ex Hossem will get high marks next exam.

• نستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن حقائق في المستقبل.

Ex The sun will rise at 5:30 the morning tomorrow.

##### سؤال (Question)

...مصدر الفعل. Inf. + فاعل + Will (كلمة استخدام)

Ex When will you see your friends? (سؤال بكلمة استخدام)

Ex How long will it take to get to the future? (سؤال بـ how long)

- Yes they will. - No, they won't.

Check

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My brother ..... of university next year.  
 a. will be                      b. is                      c. has                      d. was
- 2 He ..... fail. He's really smart.  
 a. will                      b. won't                      c. isn't                      d. wasn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 Will you ..... (coming) to tomorrow's party?  
 2 ..... (Did) the students travel to Luxor next week?

2- (If / When) for future predictions

• نستخدم (If / When) في الحالة الشرطية الأولى (first conditional) لعمل تنبؤات في المستقبل كما يلي:

If / When → مضارع بسيط , → will + Inf.

Ex. If everyone crosses online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

will + inf. → if / when → مضارع بسيط

Ex. I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

١- توضع فاصلة (,) بين جزئي الجملة عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (If / When):

Ex. If I go out, I will meet my friends.

٢- في حالة الاستفهام نستخدم الآتي:

...? مضارع بسيط + will / if + فاعل + فعل + will + Inf. (كلمة استفهام)

If / When + فاعل + فعل بسيط , will + فاعل + فعل + Inf....? (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. What will you do if you have much free time?

Ex. If Mustafa gets much money, will he buy a mobile?

Ex. Will Mustafa buy a mobile if he gets much money?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أي من جزئي الجملة (أو كلاهما) منفيًا:

Ex. If Hossem doesn't study hard, he will fail.

Ex. If I don't call my friend, he will get angry.

Ex. If Nagwa doesn't study hard, she won't succeed

٤- نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس (will + inf) في فعل الشرط بعد (If / When).

Ex. If Romy helps his dad, they will finish on time.

Ex. If Romy will help his dad, they will finish on time. (X) (الجملة خطأ)



## Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams Exercises

1. If I ..... to the shops, I will spend a lot of money.  
 a go                      b went                      c. goes                      d. going
2. If they play well, they ..... the game.  
 a won                      b. will win                      c. wins                      d. would win
3. My son ..... be 8 years old next year.  
 a will                      b. is                      c. going                      d. going to
4. If I go to the shops on Saturday, I ..... some new headphones.  
 a buy                      b bought                      c. am buying                      d. will buy
5. What clothes ..... if it's cold? WB  
 a I will wear                      b. I wear                      c. I wore                      d. will I wear
6. When Huda visits Cairo, she ..... some new shoes. SB  
 a would buy                      b buying                      c will buy                      d bought
7. I think travelling in time ..... impossible. WB  
 a be                      b. would be                      c. were                      d. will be
- 8 Hassan won't use the internet to buy food when he ..... older. SB  
 a is                      b. was                      c. be                      d. are
9. If I ..... everything online, I won't be able to go shopping with my friends. SB  
 a would buy                      b. buy                      c. will buy                      d. bought
10. .... you visit Aswan, will you visit the High Dam?  
 a Where                      b While                      c. If                      d. As
11. I think there ..... no illnesses in the future. WB  
 a will be                      b. be                      c. won't be                      d. was
12. If you go to the club this afternoon, you ..... Hossam because he is in Aswan.  
 a should see                      b won't see                      c. will see                      d. don't see

### Bit by Bit Exercises

13. My friends and I ..... to Alex soon.  
 a. is travelling      b. travelled      c. travels      d. will travel
14. That boy ..... a famous architect in the future.  
 a. is      b. will be      c. did      d. was
15. Mona ..... her aunt if she has enough free time.  
 a. will visit      b. visited      c. would visit      d. is visited
16. Kamal will arrive on time if he ..... about the meeting.  
 a. will know      b. knew      c. knows      d. knowing
17. When mum goes to the mall, she ..... me a jacket.  
 a. was getting      b. got      c. getting      d. will get
18. I will travel abroad when I ..... my exams.  
 a. will finish      b. finishing      c. finish      d. finishes
19. If Omar trains hard, he ..... next week's match.  
 a. wins      b. doesn't win      c. won't win      d. will win
20. My father ..... me a new mobile next month.  
 a. will buy      b. would buy      c. buys      d. bought
21. They ..... a nice time if they go to Al-Azhar Park.  
 a. had      b. will have      c. having      d. has
22. When Amir ..... to America, he will buy a modern car.  
 a. travels      b. travel      c. travelling      d. travelled

② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. What ..... (I will) eat if I don't like the food?
2. I won't watch TV tonight if I ..... (went) out.
3. What ..... (I do) if I've a problem?
4. I hope there ..... (is) less pollution in the future.
5. I ..... (not watch) TV tonight if I am busy.
6. If Ali comes first, he ..... (be) very happy.



### Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Hassan will be sad if he ..... (got) low marks.
8. What ..... (would) you do when you meet Ali?
9. He will feel tired if he ..... (didn't) sleep well tomorrow
10. I think I ..... (speak) English well next year.
11. He ..... (feel) warmer when he wears that jacket.
12. How ..... (did) technology help us to travel in the future?

### تحدث عن الاختراعات الجديدة

#### Talking about new inventions

التحدث عن الاختراعات الجديدة

- نسأل ونجيب عن ما نأمل في المستقبل بخصوص الاختراعات الجديدة فنقول:

A: Do you hope we will see in the future?

ما الاختراع الذي تأمل أن نراه مستقبلاً؟

B: I hope ..... will be invented soon. أتمنى أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يتم اختراعه قريباً.

I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon.

A: Will / won't be very useful in Egypt?

هل توافق أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يكون / سوف لا يكون مفيداً في مصر؟

B: I agree that..... will / won't be useful in Egypt!

أوافق أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يكون / سوف لا يكون مفيداً في مصر.

I agree that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt.

#### Predicting the future

عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل

- يمكن عمل تنبؤات مستقبلية باستخدام will + inf. + present simple + If كالتالي:

- If I ..... my mother at the weekend, she will have more free time.

لو أساعد أمي في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، سوف يكون لديها وقت فراغ أكثر.

- If I ..... my homework early, I'll play video games.

لو أنهيت من واجبي المنزلي مبكراً، سوف أعب ألعاب الفيديو.

- If I ..... my exams, I'll be happy. لو أجتاز امتحاناتي، سأكون سعيداً.

- If I ..... a snake in my house, I will be frightened.

لو أجد ثعباناً في منزلي، سأكون خائفاً.

# General Exercises

## on Lessons 1 & 2



يوجد تمرينات إضافية في دراسة الطالب العربي

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Rashad and Omar are talking about **types** of technology.

**Rashad:** Do you know much about technology?

**Omar :** ① .....

**Rashad:** What type of technology do you use every day?

**Omar :** ② .....

**Rashad:** ③ .....?

**Omar :** I use the internet to communicate with my friends and play games online.

**Rashad:** ④ .....?

**Omar :** Yes, sometimes I've problems online.

**Rashad.** What should you do if you are worried about somethings online?

**Omar :** ⑤ .....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Exercises on Vocabulary ➡

1. I like to use my ..... to listen to music on my mobile phone. 2023

- a. charger      b. headphones      c. laptop      d. microphones

2. I have a new phone that has a / an ..... to help me do my homework.

- a. motorbike      b. app      c. wing      d. headphone

3. Do you think that we will ..... a car that doesn't make any pollution? WB

- a. invention      b. predict      c. prediction      d. invent

4. My mother always ..... the shopping on Fridays.

- a. does      b. goes      c. makes      d. looks

#### Exercises on Language ➡

5. There will ..... electric cars in the future. 2022

- a. be      b. are      c. being      d. been

6. When Dina ..... home, her aunt will meet her.

- a. come      b. comes      c. came      d. coming



7. I have enough free time, I will go out with my friends.

- a. If                      b. What                      c. How                      d. Do

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. If they \_\_\_\_\_ (not work) hard, the manager will punish them.
2. If Huda \_\_\_\_\_ (went) to Cairo, she will buy some new shoes. 2023
3. He will feel tired if he \_\_\_\_\_ (didn't) sleep well. 2023
4. I won't play outside if it \_\_\_\_\_ (rains) tomorrow. 2023
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ (won't) succeed in the next exam. She's really clever.
6. What will Ahmed \_\_\_\_\_ (doing) if he knows the truth?
7. If Sara \_\_\_\_\_ (have) much work, she won't watch TV.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

يكتب فقرات (تتكون من 90 كلمة) في كراسة الجواب المنزلي

"Are you for or against online shopping?"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة المقرة الإشائية:

- What are the benefits of online shopping?
- Why don't some people like online shopping?
- Does online shopping save time?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- If more people shop online,
- It saves ..
- Some people like to try

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في كراسة التسميع

## Key Vocabulary

addicted to	مدمن على (معتاد على)	horrible	مطويح / سارحذا
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
headache	صداع	explore (d)	يستكشف
lever	ذراع تشغيل آلة	pull (ed)	يسحب
impossible	مستحيل	disappear (ed)	يختفي

## Useful Phrases

stay outside	يبقى بالخارج	have flying cars	يملك سيارت طائرة
try eating fruit	يجرب تناول الفاكهة	have no illnesses	ليس لديه أمراض
understand a lesson	يفهم درس	swim in the sea	يسبح في البحر
travel in / through time	يسافر عبر الزمن	explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر
live on the moon	يعيش على القمر		



## Vocabulary

The Time Machine	آلة الزمن (اسم رواية)	planet	كوكب
Time Traveller	مسافر عبر الزمن	climate change	تغير المناخ
model	نموذج مصغر	funny	مضحك
suddenly	فجأة	share (d)	يشارك / يتشارك
instead	بدلاً من ذلك	drop (ped)	يسقط
expert	خبير	tidy (ed)	يرتب
strange	غريب	reply (ed) (n)	رد - رداً
space	الفضاء	copy (ied) (n)	ينسخ - نسخة
website	موقع على الإنترنت		



## Expressions &amp; Prepositions

sound like	يبدو مثل	ready to use	جاهزة للإستخدام
have a headache	يعاني من صداع	take the road south	يستقل الطريق جنوباً
have a break	ياخذ راحة	on the internet	في الإنترنت
make friends	يصادق - يكوّن صداقات	on social media	على مواقع التواصل
feel tired / worried	يشعر بالتعب / بالقلق	turn... off	يُغلق
pull a lever	يسحب زراع آلة	good at	جيد في
share a photo	يشارك صورة	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	worried about	قلق على
a piece of technology	لحافه التكنولوجية	take .. away	ياخذ ... بعيداً
drop rubbish	يلقي القمامة	believe in	يؤمن بـ
start a machine	يشغل آلة	come out	يظهر/ يُبرز (الشمس مثلاً)

## Conjugations of

## Irregular Verbs

## Present

## Past simple

## Past Participle

cost	يكلف	cost	cost
hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	hurt	hurt
build	يبني / يبنى	built	built
send	يرسل	sent	sent
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Word	Meaning	Opposite
impossible	مستحيل	possible
pull	يسحب	push
disappear	يختفي	appear
turn.. off	يغلق جهاز	turn.. on
horrible	رهيّب/ فظيخ	awesome / amazing

## Definitions

<b>social media</b> وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- websites and apps that <b>allow</b> people to talk to each other on the internet</li> <li>- websites and computer programs that allow people to communicate and share information on the internet using a computer or mobile phone</li> </ul>	
<b>mistake</b> عن طريق الخطأ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- without <b>planning</b> or wanting to do something</li> <li>- something you do or say without intending to</li> </ul>	١- تسمح ٢- نخطئ ٣- حدث ٤- مقيض ٥- امر
<b>horrible</b> فظيخ/سيء جدًا	very bad, not nice at all	
<b>addicted to</b> مدمن على	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- always needing to do or have something</li> <li>- liking something so much that you want to do or have it all the time</li> </ul>	
<b>pull</b> يسحب	hold something and move it towards you	
<b>disappear</b> يختفي	suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find	
<b>explore</b> يستكشف	look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there	
<b>impossible</b> مستحيل	if an action or <b>event</b> is impossible, it cannot happen or be done	
<b>lever</b> ذراع تشغيل آلة	a <b>handle</b> that you push or pull to make a machine work	
<b>headache</b> صداع	a <b>pain</b> inside your head	

## Language Notes

### ① Gerund (V-ing)

- من الممكن أن يستخدم (V-ing) كفاعل للجملة:

**Ex.** Playing video games is my hobby.

**Ex.** Travelling has many benefits.



## 2) stop

• stop + V-ing يتوقف عن شيء كان يفعله

Ex. You should **stop** **using** **your** **phone** **too** **much**.  
Ex. When dad arrived, we **stopped** **talking**.

• stop + to + Inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل...

Ex. On my way home, I **stopped** **to** **buy** **some** **bread**.

## 3) take

• take + مدة + to + Inf. يستخدم الفعل (take) بمعنى (يستغرق) كما يلي.

Ex. The machine **took** **me** **two** **years** **to** **build**.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن وضع المفعول به بعد الفعل take

## 4)

• explore يستكشف (مكان/شيء) لأول مرة

Ex. I'll **explore** **the** **village** **tomorrow**.

• invent يخترع شيء لم يكن موجود

Ex. I hope the flying motorbike will **be** **invented** **soon**.

## 5) allow / let

• allow (ed) + مفعول + to + Inf. يسمح

Ex. Social media **allows** **people** **to** **communicate**.

• let (let - let) + مفعول + Inf. يسمح

Ex. My dad **didn't** **let** **me** **go** **out** **last** **night**.

• Let's + Inf. هيا بنا

Ex. **Let's** **go** **for** **a** **walk**.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... movies online really wastes my time.  
a. Watch      b. Watching      c. To watching      d. Watches
- It took Hagar three hours ..... her homework.  
a. finish      b. finishes      c. finished      d. to finish
- My teacher didn't ..... me to eat in class.  
a. allow      b. laugh      c. let      d. work
- Graham Bell ..... the telephone in 1876.  
a. found      b. explored      c. invented      d. wasted

# Audio script

SB Page (5)

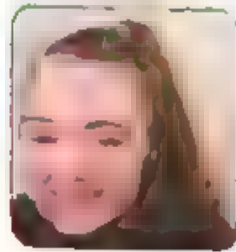
استمعوا في هذا المقطع



Shady



Hala



Randa



Adam



1. Narrator : Shady

**Shady** : I'm not sleeping very well at the moment. I usually watch some videos on the internet before I go to sleep but sometimes I watch them for a few hours and then I can't sleep. My head often hurts lots in the morning, too.

١- بكاف

٢- بامل

٣- فلق

٤- بفتح

٥- مصحك

٦- بشرط

٧- غريب

2. Narrator : Hala

**Hala** : I found this great online game but I didn't know that when I got new things on it, it \_\_\_\_\_ real money! I \_\_\_\_\_ my parents aren't going to be angry when I tell them how much money I spent ...

3. Narrator : Randa

**Randa** : I love social media, I love watching videos online and I love talking to my friends on my phone. But now I feel \_\_\_\_\_ if I don't have my phone or I can't check it. I think it is starting to \_\_\_\_\_ a problem.

4. Narrator : Adam

**Adam** : My friends and I like to put \_\_\_\_\_ pictures online but when I \_\_\_\_\_ a photo, everyone says my clothes are not cool or my hair looks strange'. It makes me feel sad.

SB Page (6)

Narrator : One

**Woman** : Shady, watching videos before bed is not a good idea. You should try not to take your phone into your bedroom at night.



Narrator : Two

**Woman** : Hala, you need to talk to your parents. They should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online.

**Narrator : Three**

**Woman** Randa, it is important not to become addicted to technology. If you feel you can't live without your phone you should be taking a break every day for an hour or more.



**Narrator : Four**

**Woman** Oh Adam, they don't sound like good friends! Talk to them in real life and tell them how it makes you feel. If they don't change, maybe you should find some new friends.

## Reading

SB P. (7)

My parents say that I spend too much time online, but playing video games is my hobby and I am very good at them! I love playing games with my friends but my parents say they will take my computer away if I don't stop playing on it so much. What should I do?

SB Page (8)

### The Time Machine by H. G. Wells

London, England, 1895

A group of friends meet for dinner at the Time Traveller's house. After dinner, the Time Traveller asks his friends if they think that it is possible "to travel through time."

"It's impossible!" they reply. "We can only travel through space, not time."

The Time Traveller shows them a model of a machine that he has in his hand.

"This is a copy of a machine that I believe can go through time. It took me two years to build," he tells them. The friends laugh.

"Pull this lever," he tells one of them.

They feel some wind and then the machine suddenly disappears.

"Where is it?" the other men ask.

"The model machine is in the future," the Time Traveller says. "Would you like to see the real machine?" he asks.

He takes them to another room. Inside the room is another bigger machine. It is not finished.

"In this machine," he says "I will travel to the past and the future."

**Say it correctly** • lever



الرافعة (الرافعة) هي كلمة مثل كلمة

- ١- زحمة
- ٢- قفص
- ٣- رافعة
- ٤- حوض
- ٥- شدة
- ٦- بيت
- ٧- رافعة
- ٨- قفص
- ٩- حوض



# Exercises on Vocabulary

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في دراسة الواجب المنزلي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Our friends sent us photos on  
a. social media      b. social studies      c. social parts      d. the radio
2. That new hotel looks . I really don't like it. **WB**  
a. nice      b. wonderful      c. horrible      d. fantastic
3. If you don't the lesson, you should tell the teacher. **WB**  
a. swim      b. visit      c. try      d. understand
4. The tourists look the road south by , but they wanted to go north. **WB**  
a. correction      b. lever      c. mistake      d. right
5. The best way to the countryside is on foot.  
a. invent      b. explore      c. communicate      d. make
6. I can't find my earphones; they suddenly  
a. believed      b. listened      c. appeared      d. disappeared
7. My friend drinks too much coffee. He became to it.  
a. additional      b. addicted      c. horrible      d. expert
8. " " means very bad.  
a. Awesome      b. Amazing      c. Horrible      d. Interesting
9. Don't touch the , or the machine will start. **WB**  
a. liver      b. lever      c. river      d. diver
10. I need some medicine, please. I've a terrible  
a. class      b. mistake      c. picnic      d. headache

## Bit by Bit Exercises

11. It is for us to breathe underwater.  
a. possible      b. probable      c. usual      d. impossible
12. Some divers will the bottom of this sea tomorrow  
a. explore      b. damage      c. invent      d. make
13. The sun behind a cloud.  
a. made      b. bought      c. disappeared      d. worked

14. I watched an interesting film \_\_\_\_\_ the internet last week.  
 a. of                      b. on                      c. out                      d. to
15. You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ friends with bad people.  
 a. do                      b. take                      c. make                      d. hurt
16. When you are \_\_\_\_\_ to something, you always need to do it.  
 a. addicted                      b. kind                      c. polite                      d. rude

## Language

### (If / When + should / shouldn't) to give advice

«نستخدم (If / When + should / shouldn't) لتقديم النصيحة بمعنى إذا / عندما ... ينبغي / لا ينبغي أن...»

If / When → مضارع بسيط → should / shouldn't + Inf.

Ex. You should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online

Ex. If they don't get good marks, maybe they should study harder.

Ex. If it is very rainy, you shouldn't go out.

١- إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ If / When لا بد من وضع (,) comma قبل بداية الجملة الثانية.

Ex. If you have a problem, you should tell your parents.

Ex. You should tell your parents if you have a problem.

٢- في حالة الاستفهام نستخدم الأسلوب الآتي:

...? مضارع بسيط If / when Inf. فاعل Should (كلمة إستفهام)

Ex. What should I do if I don't find my mobile?

Ex. Should we go out if we have enough time?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أيًا من جزئي الجملة (أو كلاهما) في حالة النفي:

Ex. If you don't find your books, you should tell your parents.

Ex. If you don't feel well, you shouldn't go out.

٤- إذا دلت الجملة على الاستمرارية من الممكن أن يأتي بعد (If / When) زمن المضارع المستمر بدلاً من المضارع البسيط:

Ex. If you are sitting at the computer for a long time, you should have a break.

# Exercises

## on Language

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في حراسة الواجب المنزلي

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. When you go to bed, you \_\_\_\_\_ turn your phone off. SB  
 a. won't                      b. will                      c. should                      d. have
2. You should tell a parent or teacher if you \_\_\_\_\_ worried about something. SB  
 a. felt                      b. will feel                      c. are felt                      d. feel
3. If she has a headache, she \_\_\_\_\_ see a doctor. دائرة التعليم 2023  
 a. have                      b. should                      c. is                      d. was
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ swim in the sea if it is very cold. دائرة ابو حماد 2023  
 a. have to                      b. had to                      c. should                      d. shouldn't
5. When you \_\_\_\_\_ tired, you should have a break. دائرة بيا 2023  
 a. are                      b. be                      c. were                      d. will be
6. If you are in the library, you \_\_\_\_\_ make no se. دائرة اندرسن 2023  
 a. shouldn't                      b. should                      c. must                      d. can
7. If you want to be healthy, you \_\_\_\_\_ healthy food. دائرة أبو منصور 2023  
 a. ate                      b. should eat                      c. eating                      d. would eat

### Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Where should I go if I \_\_\_\_\_ to buy a new car?  
 a. was wanting                      b. wants                      c. want                      d. wanting
9. You shouldn't stay up late if you \_\_\_\_\_ to get up early.  
 a. needing                      b. needed                      c. needs                      d. need
10. What \_\_\_\_\_ I do if I need to make friends online?  
 a. am                      b. not                      c. should                      d. was
11. If you need to stay healthy, you \_\_\_\_\_ go to the gym  
 a. not                      b. should                      c. shouldn't                      d. have



12. I should read books if I ..... free time.

- a. had                      b. has                      c. will have                      d. have

13. If you meet Mr Hamdy, you ..... tell him about the accident.

- a. shouldn't                      b. are                      c. not                      d. aren't

② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1 If we want to stop climate change, we should ..... (stopped) cutting down trees. WB

2. You ..... (shall) come to stay with me when you're bored.

..... في الظروف 2022

3. If you ..... (didn't) do your homework, you should apologise to your teacher.

دارة الرياضه الحمراء 2023

### Bit by Bit Exercises

4. When you have much homework, you ..... (shouldn't) finish it first.

5. You should ..... (is) careful when you use the internet

6. If you feel tired, you ..... (shouldn't) go to bed.

7. When you have an exam, you should ..... (relaxing).

8. If you ..... (needs) to be fit, you should do exercise.

## Speaking

### Talking about technology

### التحدث عن التكنولوجيا

- للسؤال والجابة عن انواع التكنولوجيا التي تستخدمها بقول:

A: What types of technology do you use every day?

ما هي انواع التكنولوجيا التي تستخدمها كل يوم؟

B: I think I am addicted to.....

اعتقد اني مدمن لـ.....

A: What do you use them for?

فيما تستخدمهم؟

B: I spend hours watching / playing.....

أقضي ساعات أشاهد / لعب.....

A: Do you have any problems with technology?

هل تعاني من مشكلات مع استخدام التكنولوجيا؟

B: I think I'm addicted to my phone!

اعتقد اني مدمن لهاتفي!

- I spent lots of money in an online game by mistake.

انفقت كثير من المال في لعبة على الإنترنت عن طريق الخطأ

# General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



## ① Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about technology.

Ahmed : What are you reading about, Ali?

Ali : ① .....

Ahmed : Are you interested in modern technology?

Ali : ② .....

Ahmed : ③ .....

Ali : Because technology becomes very important for everyone.

Ahmed : ④ .....

Ali : Yes, of course, computer, mobile and internet are all forms of technology.

Ahmed : Which one is the most important form?

Ali : ⑤ .....

## ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Most young people are ..... to mobile phones.

- a. addicted      b. interested      c. worried      d. amazed

2. My head hurts, I have a .....

- a. backache      b. headache      c. stomachache      d. toothache

3. If you do something without intending to do it, it's means you do it by .....

- a. advice      b. addiction      c. mistake      d. night

4. I can't find my watch. It .....

- a. hurt      b. disappeared      c. sent      d. found

### Exercises on Language

5. If it rains, you ..... take your umbrella.

- a. should      b. shouldn't      c. mustn't      d. need

6. You shouldn't watch videos on the internet if your head .....

- a. will hurt      b. hurting      c. hurts      d. would hurt

58

7. If you \_\_\_\_\_ someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online.

26

a didn't know

b don't know

c not know

d won't know

8. If you see people being horrible online, you \_\_\_\_\_ tell your parents.

58

a should

b won't

c are

d shouldn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When you \_\_\_\_\_ (had) much money, you should travel abroad.

2. What \_\_\_\_\_ (would) you do when you meet the manager?

3. You should visit your grandparents when you \_\_\_\_\_ (had) enough time.

4. You \_\_\_\_\_ (should) chat to people you don't know.

58

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

90

"How do you think life will change in the future?"

عندما تتحدث، استخدم

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you think will happen in the future?
- Do you think we will travel in time?
- Do you think we will live on the moon?
- Do you think we will have flying cars?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- In the future, I think .....
- I think we will travel .....
- I don't think we'll live .....
- I think we'll have .....



## Key Vocabulary

enough  
outside

كافي video games  
بالخارج order (ed)

كافي / خارج  
في الخارج / خارج  
باعتبار / خارج

## Useful Phrases

watch videos online

يشاهد فيديوهات عبر الإنترنت

check social media

يتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

get enough sleep

يحصل على قدر نوم كافي

spend (time) on screens

يضيع (وقت) أمام شاشات

have eye problems

يعاني من مشاكل في البصر

spend hours playing

يضيع ساعات في اللعب

damage your hearing

يسبب ضررًا للحاسة السمع



## Vocabulary

debate

مناظرة / جدال

exercise

تمارين رياضية

screen

شاشة

view

رأى / وجهة نظر

faithfully / sincerely

بإخلاص

dangers

مخاطر

robot

إنسان آلي

clear

واضح

ear problems

مشاكل سمعية

surname

لقب (اسم العائلة)

though

بالرغم من ذلك

idea

فكرة

wheel

عجلة

transport

النقل

regards

تحيات

damage (d)

يُتلف

improve (d)

يُحسن

text (ed)

يرسل رسالة نصية

wish (ed) (n.)

يتمنى / أمنية

## Expressions & Prepositions

give ... headaches

تسبب صداع لـ...

stay healthy

يبقى بصحة جيدة

get a headache

يصاب بصداع

once an hour

مرة في الساعة

order ... on a website

يطلب... من على موقع

go on wheels

يسير على عجلات

go online

يدخل على الإنترنت

go on holiday

يذهب لقضاء اجازة

stop ... sleeping	يُعلَم ... من النوم	bad for	ضار
the reason why	السبب الذي من أجله	late into the night	في وقت متأخر ليلًا
children aged 6	أطفال أعمارهم 6 سنوات	In my view / opinion	في رأيي
look forward to + V-ing. / n	يتطلع إلى	from my point of view	من وجهة نظري

### Conjugations of

#### Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
teach	يُعَلِّم	taught	taught
become	يصبح	became	become
ride	يركب (دراجة... الخ)	rode	ridden

Word	Meaning	Opposite
outside	بالخارج	indoors / indoors
online	عبر الإنترنت	offline
positive	إيجابي	negative
clear	واضح	unclear



### Definitions

order	يطلب	ask someone to make, supply <sup>(1)</sup> , or deliver <sup>(2)</sup> food or an object	١- يمد ٢- يوصل
-------	------	--	-------------------



### Language Notes

#### ① enough

- نستخدمه (enough) بمعنى (كافي / بدرجة كافية) كما يلي:

enough + to + inf.

Ex. Sami was clever enough to get high marks.

Ex. He is tall enough to reach the shelf.

- من الممكن أن يلي (enough) اسم.

Ex. We don't have enough money to buy a car.

## 2) all

- تستخدم **all** بمعنى إكل... إكل... إكل...

1- **all** + اسم بعد جمع + فعل ليعمل جمع

2- **all** + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد ليعمل مفرد

Ex. All my friends are coming to the party.

Ex. All's money is at home.

## 3) Email Writing

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية لكتابة / لتهيئة رسالة بريد إلكتروني (في حالة معرفة اسم المرسل إليه):

Dear ...	عزيزي/عزيزتي	Kind Regards	أطيب التحيات
Yours sincerely	محدثك بإخلاص	Best Wishes	أطيب التمنيات

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية بعد (Dear):

Mr.	السيد للإشارة لرجل بشكل مهذب
Mrs.	السيدة للإشارة لسيدة متزوجة بشكل مهذب (يوضع بعدها اسم الزوج)
Ms	السيدة للإشارة لسيدة بشكل مهذب (دون تحديد ما إذا كانت متزوجة أم لا) وينطق حرف [s] كمنطق [z].

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية لتهيئة / لتهيئة بريد إلكتروني (في حالة عدم معرفة اسم المرسل إليه):

Dear Sir / Madam	عزيزي السيد/السيدة	Yours faithfully	محدثك بإخلاص
------------------	--------------------	------------------	--------------

## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This street is wide ..... to drive down it.

a. enough      b. too      c. much      d. many

2. All the milk in the fridge ..... fresh.

a. have      b. are      c. is      d. does

## Reading

SB P. (9)

استمع إلى النصوص

### The dangers of technology

1- يرسل رسالة نصية  
2- يوم كافي

**Sleep** : Many people text<sup>1</sup>, check social media or watch videos online late into the night. Then they don't get enough sleep<sup>2</sup>.



**Eye problems :** If you spend a lot of time on **screens**<sup>١</sup>, you can have **eye problems**<sup>٢</sup> and **headaches**<sup>٣</sup>.

**Ear problems :** Listening to loud music or films through<sup>٤</sup> headphones can **damage**<sup>٥</sup> your **hearing**<sup>٦</sup>.

**Exercises :** Many people spend hours playing video games or watching TV and don't spend enough time **outside**<sup>٧</sup> doing exercise.

١- شاشات

٢- مشاكل في العين

٣- صداع

٤- عبر

٥- تلف

٦- السمع

٧- بالخارج



SB Page (10)

### New Message

Dear Sir / Madam

I **ordered**<sup>١</sup> a new mobile phone last week and the **delivery**<sup>٢</sup> was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged. I would like to **change**<sup>٣</sup> the phone for a new one that is not damaged. Can you tell me how I can do this?

Yours faithfully<sup>٤</sup>,

Lama Sabri

١- طلبت

٢- التوصيل

٣- يغير

٤- المخلص لك

WB Page (75)

### New Message

Dear Sir / Madam,

I **ordered**<sup>١</sup> a new game last week on your **website**<sup>٢</sup>. The **delivery**<sup>٣</sup> was today. When I opened the box, I found that I ordered a game for children **age**<sup>٤</sup> 6-9 **h.p.m stake**<sup>٥</sup>. It didn't say this on your website. I was not happy about this because I want to play the game with my friends, and we are all 13 or 14.

I would like to **change**<sup>٦</sup> the game for a new one that is for the **correct age**<sup>٧</sup>.

Can you tell me how I can do this?

I **look forward to**<sup>٨</sup> hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Haytham Shabana

١- موقع على الإنترنت

٢- بالرمز العمر

٣- بالخطا

٤- العمر المناسب

٥- ينطه إلى

## New Message

Hi Fatma,

The jacket I ordered online arrived today, but it is the wrong colour! I ordered a blue jacket and this one is red. I'm going to ask them how to change it!

See you soon,  
love Maya



## Audioscript

- Hanan** : Do you think that all computer games are bad for you, Lama?
- Lama** : From my point of view<sup>1</sup>, not all computer games are bad. Some of them can help you to learn things.
- Hanan** : I agree. If you don't play computer games all the time, it shouldn't be a problem<sup>2</sup>.
- Lama** : It's not a good idea to play games late at night though<sup>3</sup>.
- Hanan** : I agree. In my opinion<sup>4</sup>, playing games late at night stops you sleeping.
- Lama** : Yes, it's a good idea to only play quiet, calm games in the evening.
- Hanan** : If you only play games that teach<sup>5</sup> you things in the evening, it should be fine.

- ١- من وجهة نظري
- ٢- مشكلة
- ٣- بالرغم من ذلك
- ٤- في رأيي
- ٥- يعلم

## Videoscript

**Narrator:**

What do you use when you want to find out the time? Do you use a watch<sup>1</sup> ... or do you use a clock<sup>2</sup>?

These clocks either use numbers to tell the time... or they use hands<sup>3</sup>. These hands show hours, minutes<sup>4</sup> and seconds<sup>5</sup>.

But how did people know the time in the past? In Ancient Egypt, people used sundials<sup>6</sup>. Sundials use the position of the sun to tell the time.

Then, in the year 1524, a scientist<sup>7</sup> from Denmark<sup>8</sup> called Taqī al-Dīn invented a watch that looked like the watches of today. It had three hands to show hours, minutes and seconds. It was also small, so people could carry it with them.

- ١- ساعة يد
- ٢- ساعة جدار
- ٣- عقارب الساعة
- ٤- دقائق
- ٥- ثواني
- ٦- ساعات شمسية
- ٧- عالم
- ٨- مدينة دمشق

But watches today don't only tell you the time. Some watches will say that you should do exercise if you are sitting at a computer for a long time! And some have apps, such as maps<sup>1</sup> that will give you directions<sup>1(b)</sup> if you are lost.

٩- خريطة  
١- اتجاهات

What will the watches of the future be like? Some will be like modern mobile phones. If someone calls you, you will be able to see them on a special video screen. And some will look after your health. They will tell you what medicine you should take if you are ill, or that you should see a doctor.

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- I look forward to \_\_\_\_\_ from my friend. لمتابعة - الساعات 2022  
a. hear                      b. hearing                      c. hears                      d. heard
- \_\_\_\_\_ my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches. SB  
a. From                      b. In                      c. By                      d. On
- Technology can be bad \_\_\_\_\_ your health. SB  
a. at                      b. to                      c. for                      d. about
- \_\_\_\_\_ my opinion, eating too much food is bad for our health. خبر السبع 2022  
a. With                      b. On                      c. At                      d. In
- Our school held a/an \_\_\_\_\_ which is called "Technology and pollution". حدثه سنة 2023  
a. debate                      b. interview                      c. conversation                      d. article
- Social media is very useful, but it has \_\_\_\_\_, too. د. ه. سنوات 2023  
a. information                      b. ways                      c. dangers                      d. hobbies

### Bit by Bit Exercises

- When I got up, it was still dark \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. countryside                      b. side                      c. abroad                      d. outside
- The room was large \_\_\_\_\_ for all the students.  
a. too                      b. so                      c. enough                      d. such
- I \_\_\_\_\_ a jacket online and the delivery was yesterday.  
a. ordered                      b. wore                      c. tried                      d. gave
- It's my habit to \_\_\_\_\_ social media to get the latest news.  
a. choose                      b. damage                      c. break                      d. check
- A bike has two \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. wheels                      b. engines                      c. machines                      d. tools



12. This video game is useful for children ..... nine.  
 a. age                      b. ages                      c. ageing                      d. aged
13. Salah spends a lot of time watching videos .....  
 a. online                      b. lines                      c. outline                      d. line
14. You should ..... enough sleep. You look really tired.  
 a. check                      b. get                      c. spend                      d. watch

### Speaking

#### ① Giving positive opinions

إعطاء آراء إيجابية

- إعطاء آراء إيجابية بخصوص شيء يمكن أن تستخدمه:

- .....Is a good idea.  
 ..... هي / هو فكرة جيدة.

**Ex.** Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea.

- If you use ... well, it should help you + inf. ....  
 لو نستخدم ... جيد ينبغي أن يساعدك أن .....

**Ex.** If you use technology well, it should help you become healthier.

- If you don't become addicted to ..., you will be fine.  
 لو لم تصبح مدمنًا على ..... سوف تكون بخير.

**Ex.** If you don't become addicted to technology, you will be fine.

#### ② Giving negative opinions

إعطاء آراء سلبية

- إعطاء آراء سلبية بخصوص شيء يمكن أن تستخدمه:

- It isn't a good idea to + inf.  
 ليست فكرة جيدة أن .....

**Ex.** It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV.

- From my point of view, ....can + inf.  
 من وجهة نظري ..... يمكنه أن .....

**Ex.** From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.

- In my opinion, ....is / can be bad for ...  
 في رأيي ..... (يمكن أن يكون) صار .....

**Ex.** In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 5 &amp; 6



## ① Complete the following dialogue:

Rashad and Omar are talking about types of technology.

Rashad : Do you know much about technology?

Omar : ① .....

Rashad : What type of technology do you use every day?

Omar : ② .....

Rashad : ③ ... ?

Omar : I use the internet to communicate with my friends and play games online.

Rashad : ④ ... ?

Omar : Yes, sometimes I've problems online

Rashad : What should you do if you are worried about something online?

Omar : ⑤ .....

## ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mahmoud can have eye problems because he ..... a lot of time on screens.

- a. spends                      b. checks                      c. hears                      d. listens

2. A: Why do the children spend a lot of time ..... ?

B: They are playing basketball

- a. seaside                      b. countryside                      c. side                      d. outside

3. I'd like to change this broken mobile phone ..... a new one.

- a. in                      b. of                      c. for                      d. off

4. When I work on my computer for a long time, I ..... a headache.

- a. make                      b. give                      c. take                      d. get

5. We didn't know the reason ..... the manager was angry yesterday.

- a. for                      b. why                      c. what                      d. which

## Key Vocabulary

headphones	سماعات الرأس (جمع دائماً)	speed	سرعة
motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيككل)	electricity	الكهرباء
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	app(application)	تطبيق (على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)
helicopter	طائرة مروحية (هليكوبتر)	horrible	فظيع / سيء جداً
addicted to	مدمن على (معتاد على)	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	video games	ألعاب الفيديو
headache	صداع	explore (d)	يستكشف
lever	ذراع تشغيل آلة	pull (ed)	يسحب
impossible	مستحيل	disappear (ed)	يختفي
enough	كافي	order (ed)	يطلب / يأمر
outside	بالخارج		

## Useful Phrases

have money	يملك مالاً	spend money	يبلغق مالاً
have a choice	لديه اختيار	spend time	يقضي وقت
have time	لديه وقت	waste money	يهدر (يضيع) المال
save money	يُخزّر المال	waste time	يهدر (يضيع) الوقت
save time	يوفر الوقت	wait for a delivery	ينتظر توصيل (طلب)
stay outside	يلقى بالخارج	live on the moon	يعيش على القمر
try eating fruit	يجرب تناول الفاكهة	have flying cars	يملك سيارات طائرة
understand a lesson	يفهم درس	have no illnesses	ليس لديه أمراض
travel through time	يسافر عبر الزمن	explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر
watch videos online	يشاهد فيديوّهات عبر الإنترنت	spend (time) on screens	يقضي (وقت) أمام شاشات
check social media	يتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	have eye problems	يعاني من مشاكل في البصر
get enough sleep	يحصل على قدر نوم كافي	spend hours playing	يقضي ساعات في اللعب



## Verbs & Nouns

correct (ed)	يصحح - يصح	correction	تصحيح - تصويب
invent (ed)	يخترع	invention	اختراع
predict (ed)	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ
translate (d)	يترجم	translation	ترجمة



## Language

### 1- will ('ll) / will not (won't) for future predictions

#### Form التكوين

يتكون زمن المستقبل البسيط كالآتي:

• نستخدم (will / won't) للتنبؤ بشيء ما في المستقبل كالآتي:

subject فاعل (اسم / ضمير)	→	will = ٢ل will not = won't	سوف سوف لا	→	inf. مصدر الفعل
------------------------------	---	-------------------------------	---------------	---	--------------------

Ex. Technology will help us in the future.

#### Key words الكلمات الدالة

• نستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن المستقبل:

next (week - month - year)  
one day  
tomorrow  
in the future  
soon

(الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم  
يوفا ما  
غدا  
في المستقبل  
قريباً

#### Question السؤال

...مصدر الفعل. Will + فاعل + inf. (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Will our life change in the future?

Yes, it will. / No, it won't.

### 2- (If / When) for future predictions and giving advice

• نستخدم لعمل التنبؤات في المستقبل كما يلي:

If / When → مضارع بسيط → will + inf.

Ex. If I find a good jacket online, I will buy it.

• نستخدم الأسلوب التالي لتقديم النصيحة:

If / When → مضارع بسيط → should / shouldn't + inf.

Ex. If you have a problem, you should tell me about it.

## Speaking

## ① Talking about new inventions

الحديث عن الاختراعات الجديدة

- نسال ونجيب عن ما نامله في المستقبل بخصوص الاختراعات الجديدة فنقول:

A: What invention do you hope we will see in the futuro?

B: I hope..... will be invented soon.

A: Do you agree that..... will / won't be very useful in Egypt?

B: I agree that ..... will / won't be useful in Egypt!

## ② Making predictions in the future

عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل

- يمكن عمل تنبؤات مستقبلية باستخدام If + present simple → will + inf كالآتي:

- If I help my mother at the weekend, she will have more free time.

## ③ Talking about technology

لتحدث عن التكنولوجيا

- للسؤال والإجابة عن أنواع التكنولوجيا التي نستخدمها نقول:

A: What types of technology do you use every day?

B: I think I am addicted to... ..

A: What do you use them for?

B: I spend hours watching / playing.....

A: Do you have any problems with technology?

B: I think I'm addicted to my phone!

- I spent lots of money in an online game by mistake.

## ④ Giving positive opinions

اعطاء آراء ايجابية

- إعطاء آراء إيجابية بخصوص شيء نستخدمه:

• .....is a good idea..

• If you use ... well, it should help you + inf .....

• If you don't become addicted to ..., you will be fine..

## ⑤ Giving negative opinions

اعطاء آراء سلبية

- إعطاء آراء سلبية بخصوص شيء نستخدمه:

• It isn't a good idea to + inf.

• From my point of view, ... ..can + inf.

• In my opinion,.... is / can be bad for.....

## General Exercises on Unit 7

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Adham about a mobile.

Ahmed : Is it your new mobile?

Adham : ①

Ahmed : When did you buy it?

Adham : ②

Ahmed : ③

Adham : To study my lessons on it.

Ahmed : ④

Adham : Yes, it has a lot of games.

Ahmed : How much does it cost?

Adham : ⑤

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Exercises on Vocabulary

1. My little sister is ... to sweets. She always wants to eat them!

- a. damaged      b. addicted      c. broken      d. hated

2. People need ... to run machines.

- a. electricity      b. flash      c. light      d. air

3. Can you ... the English passage into Arabic?

- a. translate      b. transport      c. invite      d. reduce

4. We are really hungry. We are waiting for the ...

- a. trip      b. bus      c. picnic      d. delivery

5. Do you think that there will be many ... in your English homework?

- a. correct      b. corrections      c. invent      d. inventions



## General Exercises

6. I think people will visit other planets one day, but it is \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the sun. **WB**  
 a. possible                      b. probable                      c. easy                      d. impossible
7. The door was very heavy, so we had to \_\_\_\_\_ it open. **WB**  
 a. call                      b. pull                      c. lock                      d. look
8. When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to \_\_\_\_\_ its large gardens. **WB**  
 a. invent                      b. explore                      c. expect                      d. export
9. The mobile is the greatest \_\_\_\_\_. **WB**  
 a. invitation                      b. discovery                      c. invention                      d. translation
10. \_\_\_\_\_ media are websites and apps that let people talk to each other online. **WB**  
 a. Social                      b. Careful                      c. Electric                      d. Expensive

## Exercises on Language

11. If you want to get to the park quickly, you \_\_\_\_\_ the bus. **WB**  
 a. would take                      b. take                      c. should take                      d. took
12. If you go to the Egyptian Museum, you \_\_\_\_\_ see Ali because he is in Luxor. **WB**  
 a. should                      b. will                      c. won't                      d. don't
13. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it \_\_\_\_\_ very windy. **WB**  
 a. is                      b. will be                      c. was                      d. should be

### ③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I look forward to \_\_\_\_\_ (see) you soon. **WB**
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ (be) fit if you do some exercise.
3. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (watched) TV for a long time, your eyes will hurt.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (punish) Sameh when I meet him tomorrow.
5. Hala will feel happy when she \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) her grandparents.
6. The world \_\_\_\_\_ (be) different in the future.

إمجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

④ Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Fatma telling her about a problem you had with an online delivery  
 The address is [fatma77@gmail.com](mailto:fatma77@gmail.com).

- Your friend's email address is fatma77@gmail.com.
- Your name is Mariam and your email address is mariam80@hotmail.com.

1. The first step is to identify the problem or question that needs to be answered. This involves understanding the context and the specific requirements of the task.

2. Next, it is essential to gather relevant information and data. This can be done through research, consultation with experts, or by analyzing existing resources.

3. Once the information is gathered, the next step is to analyze it. This involves identifying patterns, trends, and key factors that influence the outcome.

4. After analysis, a plan or strategy should be developed. This plan should outline the steps to be taken, the resources needed, and the timeline for completion.

5. The final step is to implement the plan. This involves executing the tasks, monitoring progress, and making adjustments as needed to ensure the goal is achieved.

6. Finally, the results should be evaluated. This involves comparing the actual outcomes with the expected results and identifying areas for improvement.

7. The process should be documented and shared with others. This helps in learning from the experience and applying the knowledge to future projects.

8. Continuous improvement is key. Regularly reviewing and refining the process ensures that it remains effective and efficient over time.

9. Collaboration and communication are crucial throughout the entire process. Working together and sharing ideas can lead to better solutions and faster progress.

10. Flexibility is important. Being open to change and adapting to new information or challenges can make a significant difference in the outcome.

11. Setting clear goals and objectives from the start helps in staying focused and motivated throughout the project.

12. Regular communication and reporting keep everyone informed and accountable for their tasks.

13. Prioritizing tasks and managing time effectively ensures that all deadlines are met and the project stays on track.

14. Seeking feedback from stakeholders and team members can provide valuable insights and help in making necessary adjustments.

15. Celebrating successes and milestones along the way can boost morale and keep the team motivated.

16. Maintaining a positive attitude and staying resilient in the face of challenges is essential for a successful outcome.

17. Keeping a detailed record of the project's progress and decisions made helps in tracking and learning from the experience.

18. Ensuring that all team members have the necessary skills and resources to complete their tasks is a key to success.

19. Being transparent about the project's status and challenges helps in building trust and managing expectations.

20. Finally, reflecting on the project's outcome and the lessons learned can provide valuable insights for future projects.

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Why do you write this email?
- When was the delivery?
- What did you order?
- What was the problem?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm writing to tell you about .....
- I ordered .....
- The delivery was .....
- I'm still waiting for .....



### A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



- It's important not to become addicted to .....  
a. speed                      b. video games              c. technology              d. social media
- Try taking a ..... every day for an hour or more.  
a. break                      b. headache                  c. game                      d. time

### B Language Functions

② Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Eman and Wafaa are talking about technology.

Wafaa : What are you reading, Eman?

Eman : ① .....

Wafaa : Are you interested in technology?

Eman : ② .....

Wafaa : ③ .....?

Eman : I think the mobile phone is the most important invention.

Wafaa : You are right, I agree with you.

### C Usage

③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The ..... can fly without wings.  
a. bike                      b. helicopter                  c. taxi                      d. car
- Arabic is the national ..... in Egypt.  
a. language                  b. meal                      c. flag                      d. team
- After hard work, one should ..... a break to rest.  
a. go                          b. do                          c. make                      d. have
- He has a headache, so he should ..... some medicine.  
a. took                      b. takes                      c. take                      d. taking
- You ..... make noise if your father is reading.  
a. will                          b. must                      c. should                      d. shouldn't

### D Reading Comprehension

④ Read the following, then answer the questions:

In some countries, people first had televisions about 90 years ago. Before 1935, the picture on a TV screen was smaller than a post card. Most TV programmes



were in black and white. In 1940s, TV companies in the USA began to make colour programmes. However, colour TVs were very expensive, so most people who had televisions watched in black and white. Although Egypt had TVs in the 1960s, the country made its first colour TV programme in 1973. Also, the first remote controls were made in 1948.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

- 1 When did people first have televisions?
- 2 Why didn't most people in the past use colour TVs?
- 3 How big was the picture on a TV screen before 1935?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4 Egypt made its first colour TV in .....  
a. 1935                      b. 1973                      c. 1960                      d. 1940
- 4 Colour TV programmes were ..... those ones in black and white.  
a. during                      b. before                      c. after                      d. at the same time

**5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:**

- 1 friends - meet - A group - dinner - for - of - park - at. ....
- 2 video - playing - People many - spend hours - games. ....
- 3 you - ill - are - you - If - see - a doctor - should. ....
- 4 saves - time - online - Shopping - money - and. ....

**Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:**

"Life in the future"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإبداعية:

- What do you think life will be like in the future?
- What will people be more addicted to?
- What will modern devices help people to do?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Life in the future will be .....
- People will be more addicted to .....
- Modern devices will help people to .....

### Paragraphs

#### 1- Are you for or against online shopping?

Shopping online is great! Firstly, it saves time. Most people don't want to spend much time travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy the things they want in a few minutes. Secondly, they have more choices online. Also, if more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on roads and less pollution! However, some people don't like online shopping. They like to try the things they are buying first. Also, they don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.

#### 2- How do you think life will change in the future?

What will happen in the future? This is a question most of us ask. For me, I think travelling in time will be impossible. I don't think we will live on the moon. It's impossible. I think we'll have flying cars. I hope we will have no illnesses. I think scientists will explore the bottom of the sea. They may discover new animals and new kinds of fish. I think life in the future is still a secret.

#### 3- Life in the future (Azhar)

Technology changes the world. People will use social media more than they do today. They will be able to travel in time by using time machines. They will have flying cars. They will live on the moon.

#### 4- Positive and negative sides of using technology

Using technology has become very important in our life. Most of our daily activities need technology. Using technology is sometimes positive. It saves effort and time. The negative side of using technology is that it sometimes wastes our money and time. Playing computer games is an example of that. But should schools use computer games in the classroom? I think it'll be positive if that is related to teaching children. They will be more interested and excited, but this should be controlled well.

### Emails

#### - A problem you had with an online delivery

**From** : manam08@hotmail.com.  
**To** : fatma77@gmail.com.  
**Subject** : A problem with an online delivery

Dear Fatma,

I am writing to tell you about a problem I had with an online delivery. You know I like online shopping. It saves me time. I ordered a new laptop three weeks ago. The delivery was yesterday but I am still waiting. I need to get it as soon as possible. I emailed the seller and he/she replied that he/she would send it as soon as possible.

Yours faithfully,

Mariam



### A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Online shopping is ..... !  
a. bad                      b. light                      c. great                      d. heavy
2. Online shopping saves the speaker's .....  
a. time                      b. money                      c. water                      d. gas
3. The speaker doesn't want to spend lots of time ..... to the shops.  
a. walking                      b. running                      c. travelling                      d. flying
4. The speaker can stay at ..... and buy the things he/she wants in a few minutes.  
a. farm                      b. zoo                      c. school                      d. home

### B Multiple-Choice

② Read the following, then answer the questions:

A presenter is talking to Mustafa about technology.

Presenter : What do you think of technology?

Mustafa : ① .....

Presenter : ② ..... ?

Mustafa : Because people can spend much time on online games!

Presenter : ③ ..... ?

Mustafa : Yes, I do. I like playing games with my friends.

Presenter : Do you like online shopping?

Mustafa : ④ .....

Presenter : What else do people do on the internet?

Mustafa : ⑤ .....

### C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

James and Tom are scientists from England. They came to Egypt by plane. They stayed at the Sheraton in Cairo for four days. In Cairo, they went to Cairo University to meet some scientists. The two scientists talked about the new invention. It was about



changing roads into solar panels! This invention used strong glass that people could drive on and make electricity at the same time. The scientists at Cairo University liked the idea very much. They thought it was great.

James and Tom visited the Egyptian Museum, the Cairo Tower and the Pyramids. They also went shopping at Khan Al-Khalili. They bought some nice presents for their friends. Then, they went to Luxor and Aswan where they spent three days.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

2. What was James and Tom's invention about?

3. What do you think of the invention?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. James and Tom spent ..... in Cairo

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| a. a week    | b. three days |
| c. four days | d. two days   |

5. James and Tom are from .....

- |          |            |            |           |
|----------|------------|------------|-----------|
| a. Egypt | b. England | c. the USA | d. Turkey |
|----------|------------|------------|-----------|

6. The invention would help people get .....

- |        |         |          |           |
|--------|---------|----------|-----------|
| a. air | b. food | c. water | d. energy |
|--------|---------|----------|-----------|

**D Vocabulary and Structures**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I asked my aunt to ..... a French internet article into Arabic.

- |          |          |              |           |
|----------|----------|--------------|-----------|
| a. build | b. check | c. translate | d. damage |
|----------|----------|--------------|-----------|

2. My sister is ..... to her phone. She always wants to use it.

- |             |             |          |          |
|-------------|-------------|----------|----------|
| a. horrible | b. addicted | c. happy | d. proud |
|-------------|-------------|----------|----------|

3. I lost my ..... yesterday, so I couldn't listen to my favourite songs.

- |           |               |           |        |
|-----------|---------------|-----------|--------|
| a. drones | b. headphones | c. jacket | d. app |
|-----------|---------------|-----------|--------|

4. Do you ..... that the weather will get hotter in the future?

- |            |               |           |              |
|------------|---------------|-----------|--------------|
| a. predict | b. prediction | c. invent | d. invention |
|------------|---------------|-----------|--------------|

5. It was cloudy this morning, but the clouds soon ..... when the sun came out.

- |             |                |         |            |
|-------------|----------------|---------|------------|
| a. appeared | b. disappeared | c. hurt | d. damaged |
|-------------|----------------|---------|------------|

6. This email is in Spanish. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ it for me?  
 a. test                      b. say                      c. waste                      d. translate
7. I asked my teacher for help because I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ a new lesson.  
 a. stay                      b. visit                      c. understand                      d. try
8. If I help my sister with her homework she'll \_\_\_\_\_ it quickly.  
 a. finishing                      b. finishes                      c. finished                      d. finish
9. If Mai \_\_\_\_\_ too much, she will put on weight.  
 a. eats                      b. eat                      c. eating                      d. ate
10. When you \_\_\_\_\_ online games, you should check that you can't buy anything.  
 a. played                      b. plays                      c. playing                      d. play

2022 - 2023

WB

2023

2023

WB

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If she exercises more, she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) fit.
2. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (didn't) leave now, you will be late for school.
3. This machine won't \_\_\_\_\_ (being) able to fly very high.
4. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (not do) sleep early, you won't get up early.

2023

2023

SB

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"Positive and negative sides of using technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإيجابية:

- What do you think of technology?
- What positive and negative sides of technology are?
- Do you think schools should use computer games in the classroom?
- Technology is .....
- The positive / negative sides of technology are .....

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:



**New  
Hello!**



# You are what you eat

## Objectives

### Reading:

Texts about what people eat; a healthy food quiz; a recipe; an article about unusual food; an article about a healthy island

### Writing:

An email about a favourite snack; a paragraph about a country's diet; a paragraph about sleep

### Listening:

A discussion about favourite snacks;

a conversation at dinner; teenagers sharing their worries about food and health

### Speaking:

Describing food; offering, accepting and refusing food politely; giving advice about being healthy

### Language:

*a lot, a little and a few*

### Life Skills:

Self-management



# Key

اسمع إلى المفردات



full	ممتلئ (اشبعان)	allergic to	لديه حساسية من
snack	وجبة خفيفة	energy	طاقة
fast food	الوجبات السريعة		

## Food and Snacks

falafel	الفلافل	rojok	الروجاك (وجبة فواكه شعبية بماليزيا)
fava beans	فول أخضر	sfenj	كبك السمنج (فطائر حلوة شعبية بالمغرب)
chicken	لحم الدجاج / دجاجة	hawawshi	حواوشي (أكبة مصرية)
pizza	بيزا	samosa	السموسة (وجبة حارة شعبية بالهند)
nuts	مكسرات	chips	رقائق بطاطس مقرنة
pasta	مكرونة	olives	زيتون
spices	توابل - بهارات	rice pudding	أرز باللبن
watermelon	بطيخ	chocolate	شيكولاته
grapes	عنب	vegetable	خضار

## Food Adjectives

delicious	لذيذ	spicy	متبل (كثير التوابل) / حار
juicy	كثير العصارة	sweet	حلو المذاق
salty	مالح	popular	شائع - محبوب

## Vocabulary

thirsty	عطشان	practise	تدريب
however	بالرغم من ذلك	teenager	مراهق (شخص عمره من 13 إلى 19 سنة)
type = kind	نوع	plate	طبق
netball	لعبة كرة الشبكة	power	قوة / طاقة
careful	حريص	fat	دهن
washing up	غسل الأطباق	oven	فرن
squash	لعبة الإسكواش	describe (d)	يصف
left (adj)	متبقى	invite (d)	يدعو (المناسبة)
athletics team	فريق ألعاب القوى	taste (d) (n)	يذوق - مذاق

## Expressions & Prepositions

go running	يمارس رياضة الجري	(be) on a team	يكون عضو في فريق
get home	يصل المنزل	food with a good taste	طعام ذو مذاق جيد
get ill	يمرض	eat .... with .....	يتناول ... مع ....
give energy	يعطي طاقة	eat ... for breakfast	يتناول ... على الإفطار
do the washing up	يغسل الأطباق	thanks for	شكراً على
have a rest	يستريح	invite ... to .	يدعو ... على .
make falafel	يطهو فلافل (طعمية)	on the way home	في الطريق للمنزل

### Conjugations of

#### Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة في آخر الكتاب

#### Present

#### Past simple

#### Past Participle

put	يضع	put	put
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
eat	يكل	ate	eaten

### Word

### Meaning

### Opposite

lucky	م حظوظ	fortunate	unlucky	غير محظوظ
popular	شائع - محبوب	famous / known	unpopular	غير محبوب
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	terrible	سئ



### Words & Meanings

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

allergic	لديه حساسية	- having a <b>condition</b> <sup>(1)</sup> that makes you feel ill after you eat, breathe or touch something	1- حالة 2- قوة / طاقة
energy	طاقة	- something that gives you the <b>power</b> <sup>(2)</sup> to do things - the ability to do a lot of work or activity without becoming tired	
fast food	وجبات سريعة	- food that is quick and easy to buy or cook - food that can be served very quickly in a café or restaurant because it is already prepared	
juicy	كثير العصارة	full of juice	

salty	ملح lasting of salt or containing a lot of salt	٢- محتوي على
spicy	مائل / حار containing the tastes from spices	
snacks	a small amount of food after meals.	

## Language Notes

### 1) However

يمكن استخدام (However) للربط بين فكرتين / جملتين متناقضتين:

Ex. Omar is short. However, he is good at basketball.

### 2) so / because

تستخدم (so) للربط بين جملتين لتوضيح نتيجة حدث معين كما يلي:

السبب → so → النتيجة

Ex. I don't like nuts, so I won't eat that cake.

تستخدم (because) للربط بين جملتين لتوضيح سبب حدث معين كما يلي:

السبب → because → النتيجة

Ex. Nada was sad because she failed her exam.

### 3) Verbs + to + inf.

بعض الأفعال مثل (ask - advise - tell) يمكن ان يتبعها مفعول ثم (to + inf)

Ex. Ahmed asked me to describe my favourite snack.

## Check Your Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He was really ill. . . . . , he went to school.  
a. So                      b. As                      c. Because                      d. However
- He put on weight, . . . . he decided to join a sports centre.  
a. so                      b. because                      c. to                      d. for
- Magid felt happy . . . . . he passed his exams with high marks.  
a. so                      b. because                      c. to                      d. at
- My father advised me . . . . . hard.  
a. study                      b. studying                      c. to study                      d. studied





# Andioscript

SB Page (13)



استمع الى الصوت



**Speaker 1:** Sfenj<sup>١</sup> is a kind of cake from <sup>٢</sup>Morocco. It has lots of sugar and fat in it and is very <sup>٣</sup>sweet, so it is not very healthy, but I love it! We sometimes eat sfenj for breakfast and sometimes as a <sup>٤</sup>snack with some tea or a cup of coffee.

**Speaker 2:** In many places people use fava beans to make falafel. They are the best! Falafel is really <sup>٥</sup>delicious and it is very <sup>٦</sup>popular in Egypt.

**Speaker 3:** In <sup>٧</sup>Britain, we often buy chips from a fish and chip shop. People often put some salt on their chips. I don't put any salt on mine because I don't like salty food. It is not very healthy.

**Speaker 4:** You can buy samosas on the street everywhere in <sup>٨</sup>India. Samosas have <sup>٩</sup>spicy vegetables inside them. People often eat samosas for a snack. I love to eat them with some hot tea.

**Speaker 5:** Rajak<sup>١٠</sup> is a fruit snack you can buy in the street in <sup>١١</sup>Malaysia and people also make it at home. Rajak is very sweet and <sup>١٢</sup>juicy. People use different spices in different parts of the country, but it's always delicious.

١- السفنجل (فطائر

مغربية)

٢- دولة المغرب

٣- دهن

٤- حلوى الطعام

٥- وجبة خفيفة

٦- فويل لخير

٧- لذيذ

٨- محبوب / شائع

٩- بريطاني

١٠- محل سمك

ومقر مشات

١١- السمبوسة اوجبة

هندية)

١٢- دولة الهند

١٣- متبل / حار

١٤- الروجك (طبق من

ماليزيا)

١٥- دولة ماليزيا

١٦- كثير العصارة



- Grandmother** : Would you like some more chicken <sup>1</sup>, Amal?
- Amal** : Yes, please, just a little.
- Grandmother** : And would you like some more beans, too?
- Amal** : Yes, thank you, grandmother ... stop, that's enough <sup>2</sup>! I mustn't eat too much.
- Huda** : Do you like chicken, Amal?
- Amal** : Yes, I love grandmother's spicy chicken. It's the best!
- Huda** : Thank you, grandmother, that was a delicious dinner <sup>3</sup>!
- Grandmother** : Would you girls like some more rice pudding <sup>4</sup>?
- Huda** : No, thank you, I'm really full <sup>(5)</sup>.
- Grandmother** : What about you, Amal?
- Amal** : Thank you, but I really couldn't. Why don't you have a rest now, grandmother? Huda and I can take the plates <sup>7</sup> to the kitchen and we'll do the washing up <sup>8</sup>.

١- لحم الدجاج

٢- كاف

٣- عشاء

٤- أرز باللبن

٥- ممتلئ (شبعان)

٦- راحة

٧- أطباق

٨- غسيل الأطباق

- Grandma** : Would you like some cake, Leila?
- Leila** : Yes, please, just a little. I mustn't eat too much.
- Grandma** : Would you like a cup of tea with the cake?
- Leila** : Thank you, I like tea.
- Grandma** : Do you like sugar in your tea?
- Leila** : Yes, please, but that's enough. I only like a little sugar.
- Grandma** : Here you are, tea with cake!



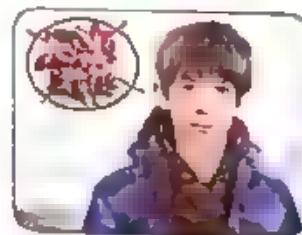
## Reading

SB page (14)

### What I eat

My name's Imad. I am allergic to 'nuts', so I must be careful what I eat. If I eat something with nuts in it, I will get ill! For most of the time, this is not a problem. However, I like sweet things, and there are a few types of cake that have nuts in them, so I can't eat those.

I'm lucky because my mother makes me many different, delicious things to eat at home. She says I should eat more vegetables and salad. I have a lot of fruit, and that's healthy!



١- لديه حساسية من

٢- مكسرات

٣- حليب

٤- بالرغم من ذلك

٥- أنواع

٦- محفوظ

I'm Mustafa. I'm on the school athletics team and I go running every day, so I need food that gives me energy. I eat a lot of rice and pasta every day. I also eat a few healthy snacks, like nuts.



After athletics practice, my friends and I sometimes get some fast food, like pizzas, on the way home, but I try not to eat too much!

- ٧- فريق ألعاب القوى
- ٨- طاقة
- ٩- تدريب
- ١٠- وجبات سريعة

WB Page (77)

## New Message

Hi Tom

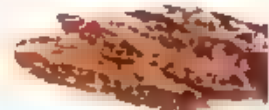
How are you? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack. I love hawawshi and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need some nice bread. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put some salt on it, too. I don't like to have any salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven. It is delicious! Do you have any favourite snacks?

Describe them to me in your next email!

Best wishes,

Osama

- ١- يصف
- ٢- حواوشي
- ٣- خبز
- ٤- فرن
- ٥- قادم



WB Page (78)

Judy plays squash every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a netball game, she always eats some fish with a lot of pasta, because this gives her energy. When she is playing netball, she drinks a little water. Then, after the game, she eats a few sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very good for her.

- ١- لعبة الاسكواش
- ٢- لعبة كرة الشبكة

## Exercises on Vocabulary

يوجد تمارين إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams Exercises

1. The water in the sea is ..... SB  
 a. sweet                      b. spicy                      c. juicy                      d. salty
2. .... is an example of fast food. WB  
 a. Cheese                      b. Pasta                      c. Pizza                      d. Cake
3. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is very ..... SB  
 a. high                      b. sweet                      c. salty                      d. short
4. Fatafel is really ..... and it is very popular in Egypt. SB  
 a. horrible                      b. terrible                      c. bad                      d. delicious
5. Many people are allergic to ....., so they don't eat cakes. WB  
 a. pizzas                      b. nuts                      c. salad                      d. salt
6. I like eating ..... fruits like watermelons and oranges.  
 a. spicy                      b. salty                      c. tasteless                      d. juicy
7. I am ..... to fish. When I eat it, it makes me ill.  
 a. addiction                      b. popular                      c. allergic                      d. ready
8. A ..... is a small amount of food eaten between meals.  
 a. snail                      b. snack                      c. snake                      d. smoke
9. Samosas have ..... vegetables inside them.  
 a. plastic                      b. terrible                      c. spicy                      d. spring
10. I'm ..... to nuts, I must care about what I eat.  
 a. kind                      b. polite                      c. allergic                      d. hungry

## Bit by Bit Exercises

11. I met three of my friends ..... my way home.  
 a. at                      b. from                      c. of                      d. on
12. Carrots and potatoes are .....  
 a. fruit                      b. nuts                      c. vegetables                      d. meat
13. We use ..... to give food a special taste.  
 a. spices                      b. stars                      c. skies                      d. spaces
14. That piece of meat is really ..... I can't eat it.  
 a. delicious                      b. salty                      c. popular                      d. fast



15. \_\_\_\_\_ food is prepared quickly and is usually unhealthy.  
 a. Helpful                      b. Fast                      c. Slow                      d. Famous
16. I always eat fish with pasta because this gives me \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. sugar                      b. snow                      c. sweet                      d. energy
17. You should put the bread in a hot \_\_\_\_\_ for 5 minutes.  
 a. oven                      b. fridge                      c. screen                      d. laptop
18. Habiba likes \_\_\_\_\_ foods, so she adds much pepper to her food.  
 a. sweet                      b. spicy                      c. sugar                      d. full



## Language

### A- Remember: Countable & Uncountable nouns

#### أسماء معدودة

##### Countable nouns

###### ١- أسماء مفردة يسبقها (a / an)

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن.

a pen - a door - a unit

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

an umbrella - an apple - an hour

###### ٢- أسماء جمع كالتالي:

- جمع منتظم بإضافة (s):

a pen → pens / a book → books

- أسماء تنتهي بـ (sh - ch - s - x - o) يضاف لها (es):

a dish → dishes

a watch → watches

a bus → buses

a box → boxes

a tomato → tomatoes

- أسماء تنتهي بـ (y) يسبقها حرف ساكن فتحذف الـ (y) ويضاف (ies):

a city → cities / a lady → ladies

- أسماء تنتهي بـ (f / fe) فتحذف ويضاف (ves):

a wolf → wolves / a knife → knives

- أسماء ذات جمع غير منتظم فتحفظ:

a tooth → teeth / a man → men

##### Uncountable nouns

- تأتي دائماً مفردة ولا يسبقها (a/an) وتأخذ فعل مفرد.

###### من أمثلة الأسماء التي لا تعد:

١- المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة:

rice - meat - sugar - juice - bread - water - cheese - milk

٢- المواد الدراسية - المواد الخام - الأسماء المعنوية:

English - rubber - love

٣- أسماء أخرى:

information - news - rain - air - advice

- يمكن أن نستخدم ألقاب التجزئة لتحويل الاسم الذي لا يعد إلى اسم يعد:

a piece of                      قطعة من

a glass of                      كوب من

a bottle of                      زجاجة من

Ex. This **piece** of information is useful.

Ex. These **pieces** of information are useful.



١- نستخدم (كثير **much**) مع الاسماء التي لا تعد بينما نستخدم (كثير **many**) مع الاسماء التي تعد (الجمع):

**Ex.** We have got much sugar.

**Ex.** They have got many books.

٢- تذكر أشهر أسماء الطعام التي تعد / لا تعد:

Countable nouns				Uncountable nouns			
chips	رقائق بطاطس	loaves	أربعة	sugar	سكر	water	مياه
beans	فول	grapes	حببات عنب	salt	ملح	butter	زبد
spices	توابل	lentils	عدس	tea	شاي	koshari	كشري
nuts	مكسرات	apples	تفاح	pasta	مكرونه	bread	خبز

### Check on Language Notes

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The books over there ..... mine.  
a. is                      b. has                      c. have                      d. are
- The water of the Nile ..... important for Egypt.  
a. does                      b. has                      c. is                      d. are

② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The information dad gave me ..... (were) important.
- Three men ..... (is) sitting in the room now.

### B- some & any

#### 1- some بعض

• نستخدم (some) في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

**Ex.** I met some boys on my way home.

**Ex.** People often put some salt on their chips.



• نستخدم (some) في السؤال للعرض أو الطلب.

**Ex.** Would you like some apples / rice?

**Ex.** Can I have some sweets / tea?

#### 2- any أي

• نستخدم (any) في الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفي السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد.

**Ex.** I don't put any books on that table.

**Ex.** Is there any water in the bottle?

### Check on Language Notes

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I really don't have ..... money now.  
a. some                      b. many                      c. a lot                      d. any
- Dad bought ..... meat on his way home.  
a. any                      b. some                      c. a lot                      d. many

② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- Is there ..... (some) sugar in the fridge?
- We have ..... (any) bread in the kitchen.

### C- a lot of / a little / a few

#### 1- a lot of      كثيراً من

• تستخدم (a lot of) غالباً في الجملة المثبته مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) ومع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. I have got a lot of oranges.

Ex. They eat a lot of rice and pasta.

#### 2- a few      قليل / a little      قليل

• تستخدم (a few) مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع):

Ex. I eat a few snacks.

• تستخدم (a little) مع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We have a little salad.



1- تستخدم كثيراً من (a few / a little) بمعنى (قليل ولكنه يكفي):

Ex. There is a little cheese. You can have a sandwich.

2- تستخدم كثيراً من (few / little) بمعنى (قليل ولا يكفي):

Ex. There is little cheese. You need to buy some more.

### Check on Language Notes

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... boys liked eating pasta.  
a. A few                      b. A lot                      c. Much                      d. Any
- A: Did you have any sugar?      B: Yes, I had .....  
a. many                      b. a little                      c. a lot of                      d. a few

② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- This book will take you ..... (a few) time to read.
- ..... (A little) students in my school visited London.

## D- like / would like

• يستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما نفضله أو نحب.

like + n./ v-ing / to + Inf.

Ex. I like orange juice, but I don't like tea.

Ex. He likes eating fava beans for breakfast.

• تستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض ولطلب الأشياء:

would like + n. / to + Inf.

Ex. What would you like for breakfast?

(To make offers)

- I'd like (to have) some beans, please.

(To ask for things)

• نستخدم كلاهما في السؤال كما يلي:

Do / Does + subject + like + n / v-ing / to + Inf.....?

Ex. Do you like (drinking) orange juice?

Ex. Does your dad like to walk to work?

Would + subject + like + n / to + Inf....?

Ex. Would you like to have some water?

- Yes, please.



1- I like tea, but I don't like coffee.

• استخدمنا الفعل (like) هنا لأن الجملة تعبر عن شيء نفضله بشكل عام (لا يمكن استخدام (would like) هنا).

2- A: Would you like a sandwich?

B: No, thank you.

• استخدمنا (Would ... like) هنا لأن الجملة تعبر عن تقديم عرض في موقف محدد وليس كلام عام عن التفضيل.

## Exercises on Language

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams Exercises

- |   |                                     |             |
|---|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1 There are                             | grapes left. Would you like some?   |             |
| a. a little                             | b. a few                            | c. much     |
|   |                                     | d. a lot    |
| 2 Lei'a likes                           | milk in her tea, but not very much. |             |
| a. a few                                | b. any                              | c. a lot    |
|   |                                     | d. a little |
| 3 Dad has                               | time to do sport. He is very busy.  |             |
| a. a little                             | b. a lot                            | c. many     |
|   |                                     | d. a few    |
| 4. Would you like                       | salt on your chips?                 |             |
| a. a lot                                | b. a little                         | c. a few    |
|   |                                     | d. lots     |
| 5. I don't like this soup, there is too | salt in it.                         |             |
| a. many                                 | b. enough                           | c. much     |
|   |                                     | d. few      |
| 6. Would you like                       | beans?                              |             |
| a. lot                                  | b. lots                             | c. lot of   |
|   |                                     | d. some     |



7. I'm not very hungry, but I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ olives, please.
- a. a lot                      b. a little                      c. any                      d. a few
8. My grandmother spends \_\_\_\_\_ time cooking in the kitchen.
- a. a lot of                      b. a few                      c. lots                      d. many
9. Has samosa got \_\_\_\_\_ sugar or salt in it?
- a. some                      b. any                      c. a lot                      d. many
10. Let's not go to the beach. There's \_\_\_\_\_ rain today.
- a. too many                      b. a few                      c. too much                      d. not enough
11. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ cold orange juice?
- a. a few                      b. lots                      c. few                      d. some
12. He put \_\_\_\_\_ salt on the chips.
- a. a few                      b. a little                      c. any                      d. lots

## Bit by Bit Exercises

13. Mustafa always eats \_\_\_\_\_ healthy snacks.  
a. a lot                                      b. a few                                      c. much                                      d. a little
14. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ books.  
a. much                                      b. lots                                      c. some                                      d. any
15. Samir is a good athlete, so he eats \_\_\_\_\_ fast food.  
a. a few                                      b. few                                      c. a little                                      d. much
16. A: "There are a few oranges left. \_\_\_\_\_ you like some?" B: "Yes, please."  
a. Had                                      b. Were                                      c. Would                                      d. Are
17. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ chips?  
a. some                                      b. little                                      c. a lot                                      d. an
18. There was \_\_\_\_\_ cheese in the kitchen when dad asked to eat.  
a. a few                                      b. any                                      c. a lot                                      d. a little
19. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ milk in the fridge. Could you go and buy some?  
a. some                                      b. many                                      c. any                                      d. a few
20. I have a \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
a. some                                      b. lot of                                      c. many                                      d. any

**2** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams Exercises ●

1. The road is very busy. There are (much) cars
2. A: " (Would) you like coffee?" B: "No, I don't. I prefer tea." SB
3. There are just (a little) seats left in the cinema.

4. Ramy likes (a few) sugar in his tea, but not too much.
5. There are too (much) people in the market today.
6. Does Ahmed have (a little) friends?
7. When she is playing netball, she drinks .... (a few) water.
8. We eat (few) rice and pasta.

### محادثة الطعام

#### 1) Talking about your favourite food

تحدث عن طعامك المفضل

- نسأل ونجيب عن طعامك المفضل كالآتي:

A: What's your favourite juicy fruit? B: ..... 's my favourite juicy fruit.  
ما هي فاكهتك المفضلة المليئة بالعصارة؟ ..... هي فاكهتي المفضلة المليئة بالعصارة.

A: Which is your favourite snack? B: ..... is my favourite snack.  
أي الوجبات الخفيفة المفضلة لك؟ ..... هي وجبتي الخفيفة المفضلة.

A: Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet? B: My favourite snack is .....  
هل وجبتك الخفيفة المفضلة مليئة، بالceviche أم حارة أم حلوة الطعم؟ ..... وجبتي الخفيفة المفضلة.

A: Is it healthy or unhealthy? B: It is healthy / unhealthy.  
هل هي صحية أم غير صحية؟ إنها صحية / غير صحية.

A: Has it got any sugar or salt in it? B: Yes, it has. - No, it hasn't.  
هل مضاف إليها أي سكر أو ملح؟

#### 2) Asking and answering about what you like and dislike

السؤال والإجابة عما تحب وما لا تحب.

A: What would you like for breakfast? B: I'd like some beans, please.  
ماذا تحب على الإفطار؟ أود تناول بعض الفول، من فضلك.

A: Would you like some tea? B: Yes, please.  
هل ترغب في بعض الشاي؟ نعم، من فضلك.

### 3) Offering, accepting and refusing food politely

نقدم الطعام المفضل والرخيص، نأخذ  
لنرفض الطعام على الشخص الآخر.

• Do you like ....? هل تحب .....؟

Ex. Do you like rice?

#### Accepting

- Yes, please.
- Thank you. I like ....
- Yes, please, just a few / a little.

• Would you like ...? هل ترغب في .....؟

Ex. Would you like a sandwich?

- للموافقة أو الرفض نقول:

#### Refusing

- Thank you, but I'm really full.
- No, I don't / wouldn't. I prefer....
- No, thank you.
- Thank you, but I really couldn't.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



يوجد تمرينات إضافية في خزانة الواجب المنزلي

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Khalid and John are talking about snacks.

Khalid : What's your favourite snack, John?

John : ① ..... What about you?

Khalid : I like chips, too, but I like falafel more.

John : ② ..... ?

Khalid : Yes, falafel is a popular snack in Egypt.

John : Is it a healthy snack?

Khalid : ③ ..... It is made from beans and vegetables.

John : ④ ..... ?

Khalid : I eat it in the morning. Would you like to eat it for breakfast tomorrow?

John : ⑤

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Exercises on Vocabulary

1. It was not easy to join the school ..... team.  
a tests                      b allergic                      c athletics                      d athlete
2. Children like to eat ..... between meals.  
a snakes                      b snails                      c sticks                      d snacks
- 3 She offered me more food, but I was .....  
a. fit                      b. hungry                      c full                      d empty

4. People who do sports like to eat rice and pasta because they give them

- a. fast food      b. salt      c. sugar      d. energy

5. Sandwiches and pizza are examples of ..... food.

- a. thirsty      b. angry      c. lucky      d. fast

6. I'm ..... to sweets, so I never eat them.

- a. kind      b. hungry      c. polite      d. allergic

202.

### Exercises on Language

7. She eats ..... fish because it helps to make her strong.

- a. any      b. a lot of      c. lots      d. a lot

WB

8. My grandmother spends ..... time cooking in the kitchen.

- a. a few      b. many      c. a lot of      d. lots

9. She drinks ..... water.

- a. a little      b. any      c. many      d. a few

WB

10. She eats ..... sweets.

- a. much      b. a lot      c. a few      d. a little

WB

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't have ..... (some) cheese in the fridge.

2. There is ..... (lot) juice for breakfast.

3. Mum bought ..... (much) vegetables today.

4. There aren't ..... (some) cakes in the supermarket.

203.

④ Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

WB

to your friend telling her about your favourite snack.

امتحان عنصري آخر الترم

- Your friend's name is Hanaa and her email address is hanaa77@gmail.com.

- Your name is Judy and your email address is judy88@hotmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What's your favourite snack?

- When do you often have it?

- How do you make it?

- Why do you like it?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My favourite snack is .....

- I often have it when .....

- It's easy to make .....

- I like it because .....



## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



dairy products	منتجات الألبان	healthy	صحي
bone	عظمة	fresh	طازج
protein	بروتين	unusual	غير معتاد
delicious	لذيذ	butter	زبد
sense	حاسة		

## Verbs for senses & Organs

Verb	Organ	Verb	Organ
hear	يسمى	ear	الأذن
see	يرى	eye	العين
touch (ed)	يلمس	hand	اليده
		taste (d)	يتذوق
		smell	يشم
		tongue	اللسان
		nose	الأنف

## Cooking verbs & nouns

beat	بخفق / يضرب	(eggs - butter - milk)
chop (ped)	يقطع	(meat - vegetables - tomatoes)
fry (ied)	يقلى	(eggs - chicken)
pour (ed)	يصب	(water - tea - juice)
heat (ed)	يسخن	(beans - soup - oil - butter)
wash (ed)	يغسل	(beans - vegetables)
serve (d)	يقدم / يخدم / يشرّب	(food - lunch)
boil (ed)	يغلي / يسلق	(water - eggs)
add (ed)	يضيف	(salt - sugar)

## Special food

fried chicken	دجاج مقلّى	dry fish	سمك مجفف
omelette	أومليت	century eggs	بيض القرن (أكلة صينية)
chamorado	الشامبرادو (أرز بالشيكولاته)	foul mudammas	فول مدمس
tuyo	تويو (سمك مملح صغير)	durian fruit	فاكهة الدوريان (فواكه منطقة جنوب آسيا)



## Vocabulary

quiz	اختبار قصير	instructions	تعليمات
piece	قطعة	fork	شوكة
humans	البشر	soup	حساء (شورية)
fridge	ثلاجة	square	مربع
dining room	غرفة الطعام	soft	لين (طري)
chopped	مفقط	recipe	وصفة طهي / طريقة للطبخ
bowl	سلطانية	coll (ed)	يسمى
frying pan	مقلاة (طاسة القلي)		

## Expressions & Prepositions

smell terrible	ذو رائحة فظيعة	serve ... with	يقدم ... مع ...
sleep well	ينام جيدًا	beat ... with	يخفق ... مع ... / باستخدام ...
be full	يشعر بالشبع	add ... to ...	يضيف ... إلى ...
have strong bones	لديه عظام قوية	take ... out of ...	يخرج ... من ...
have a taste	له طعم	on the inside / outside	في الداخل / الخارج
look unusual	يبدو غير معتاد	different from	مختلف عن
keep food	يحفظ الطعام	chop ... into	يقطع ... إلى
taste delicious	ذو طعم لذيذ	pour ... into ...	يصب ... في ...
under the ground	تحت الأرض	pour ... over ...	يصب ... على ...

## Conjugation

### Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept
beat	يخفق / يضرب	beat	beaten
smell	يشم	smelled / smelt	smelled / smelt
grow	ينمو	grew	grown

## Word

## Meaning

## Opposite

unusual	غير معتاد	strange	usual	معتاد
heat	يسخن	warm up	cool	يبرد



## Definitions

beat	يخفق	mix food quickly using a fork, <b>wooden spoon</b> , etc.
bone	عظمة	one of the hard parts of the <b>skeleton</b> inside a person or animal
chop	يقطع	cut something into small pieces

١- ملعقة خشبية  
٢- هبكل عظمي

dairy products	منتجات الألبان	things that you can eat which are made from the milk of a cow, such as cheese and butter
protein	بروتين	- one of the many things found in food such as meat, cheese, fish, or eggs, that is necessary for the body to grow and be strong
fry	يقلّي	cook something in hot oil or fat
pour	يصب	make a liquid flow out of or into something such as a cup or bowl
serve	يقدم «طعام/شراب»	provide <sup>(5)</sup> food or drinks
smell	يشم	know what something is using your nose
taste	يتذوق	know what something is when you put it in your mouth
unusual	غير معتاد	different from others of the same type in a way that is surprising <sup>(6)</sup> or interesting
delicious	لذيذ	very nice to eat



### Language Notes

#### ① Verbs + adjectives

بعض الأفعال يليها صفة (وليس حال) مثل:

smell / look / feel / be / taste

Ex. This food smells bad.

رائحته كريهة.

Ex. I think the cake tastes delicious.

مذاقه لذيذ.

كما يمكن أن تستخدم بعض هذه الأفعال كاسماء:

smell رائحة taste مذاق look منظر

Ex. Century eggs have a salty taste.

لهم طعم مالح.

#### ② It + be + adjective + to + inf.

يستخدم هذا الأسلوب لوصف حدث معين:

Ex. It's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together.

#### Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think that food smells .....

a. nicely

b. nice

c. nicer than

d. as nice

2. It is usual ..... falafel in Egypt.

a. to eat

b. to eating

c. eats

d. ate



## Reading

[SB Page (16)]

استمع إلى النصوص

A healthy food quiz<sup>(1)</sup>

1. If you want to be healthy, you should eat
  - a. only fruit and vegetables
  - b. a lot of meat and cheese
  - c. some of all types of food
2. We need to drink ..... glasses of water every day.
  - a. eight
  - b. two
  - c. four
3. Dairy products - like milk and cheese help us to
  - a. have lots of hair
  - b. have strong bones<sup>(2)</sup>
  - c. run fast
4. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein<sup>(3)</sup> in them and we need protein to .....
  - a. sleep well
  - b. move fast
  - c. have a strong body
5. A lot of sugar .....
  - a. makes it difficult to sleep
  - b. is bad for your teeth
  - c. makes you sleep longer
6. Examples of healthy snacks are .....
  - a. fruit and nuts
  - b. chocolate and sweets
  - c. salty chips
7. People need to eat ..... pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day.
  - a. one to two
  - b. five to ten
  - c. one
8. People often like fast food because
  - a. it has lots of fat and sugar in it
  - b. it gives you energy
  - c. you can eat a lot of it and not feel full
9. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is
  - a. expensive
  - b. fresh
  - c. from a big supermarket

١- اختيار صحير

٢- منتجات الألبان

٣- عظام

٤- البروتين

٥- طازج

One point for each correct answer:  
 1c 2a 3b 4c 5b 6a 7b 8a 9b  
 Score 7-9: Very good! You know all about healthy eating.  
 Score 4-6: Quite good. You need to learn a little more to be really healthy.  
 Score 1-3: Not good. There are a lot of things you need to learn about healthy eating.

Answers:



### How to make an omelette

1. Beat two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
2. Add a little salt to the eggs and milk.
3. Heat some butter in a frying pan.
4. Pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.
5. When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve with salad.



### How to make a tomato salad

1. Take two big tomatoes and half an onion.
2. Chop all the vegetables into small squares.
3. Put the chopped vegetables into a bowl.
4. Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5. Serve the salad with your omelette.



- ١- يخفق
- ٢- سلطانية
- ٣- يسخن
- ٤- ريد
- ٥- مقلاة
- ٦- يصب
- ٧- يقدم مع
- ٨- نصف
- ٩- بصل
- ١٠- يقطع

Say it correctly

\* bowl تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة (goal) مع اختلاف الصوت الأول فقط.

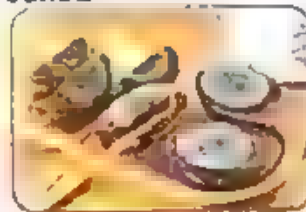
### Unusual but delicious

Some food smells bad or looks unusual- but still tastes good!

Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible, but they are very healthy and taste delicious. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.



In the Philippines, people eat something called 'champorado' with 'tuyo' for breakfast. 'Champorado' is sweet chocolate rice and 'tuyo' are small salty fish. For most people, it's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together, but it is popular in the Philippines!



- ١- غير معتاد
- ٢- يبدو
- ٣- فاكهة دوريان
- ٤- دولة اندونيسيا
- ٥- دولة ماليزيا
- ٦- صلب
- ٧- الخارج
- ٨- لين
- ٩- الداخل
- ١٠- فطير
- ١١- مذاقه لذيذ
- ١٢- شوربة
- ١٣- دولة الفلبين
- ١٤- ارز بالشيكولاتة
- ١٥- سمك مملح
- ١٦- دولة الصين
- ١٧- بعض القرن

In China, people eat eggs that are months or years old! They are called century eggs and they are black and green inside. To make them, people put fresh eggs under the ground for a long time. Century eggs smell a lot and have a salty taste, but lots of people think they are delicious.

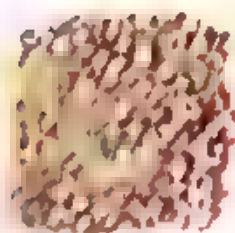


Focus on what you eat

WB Page (79) //

### How to make hummus

1. Wash some beans and put them in a pan.
2. Add some water and wait for the beans to boil.
3. Heat the beans in the water until it boils.
4. Pour some lemon juice over the hot beans.
5. Serve it with warm bread.



١- فول حمص  
٢- خبز دافئ



## Audioscript

WB Page (80)

Ashraf:

I'm Ashraf. I really like trying unusual food because I like to taste new things.

Dina:

My name's Dina. When I was younger, I thought vegetables didn't taste nice at all. Now I like them. I eat a lot of them because I know they are healthy.

Heba:

I'm Heba. Yesterday I ate fesikh. This is a dry salty fish. It doesn't taste nice at all, and it smells horrible!

Basel:

My name's Basel. I love the smell of cakes when they are cooking, but I never eat cakes at all. I'm allergic to nuts.



## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is **fresh**.  
a. expensive      b. terrible      c. old
2. You need to **beat** eggs and milk before you make an omelette.  
a. chop      b. wash      c. beat      d. drink
3. Humans have 210 **bones** in their bodies.  
a. legs      b. books      c. skeletons      d. bones
4. Wheat, corn and nuts all have **protein** in them.  
a. sugar      b. protein      c. bones      d. skin
5. When I had a big lunch, I felt **full**.  
a. full      b. careful      c. empty      d. delicious

SB

WB

SB

SB

WB

6. Before you fry food, you should \_\_\_\_\_ some oil in a pan.  
 a. heat                      b. make                      c. serve                      d. fire
7. We only eat a little meat and a few \_\_\_\_\_ products.  
 a. day                      b. diary                      c. dairy                      d. paper
8. Mum made lunch and \_\_\_\_\_ it with salad.  
 a. chopped                      b. served                      c. saved                      d. felt
9. Which of these is bad for your teeth?  
 a. fruits                      b. cheese                      c. eggs                      d. sugar
10. We can \_\_\_\_\_ with our ears.  
 a. see                      b. hear                      c. touch                      d. smell
11. Durian fruits are very healthy and \_\_\_\_\_ delicious.  
 a. touch                      b. see                      c. taste                      d. hear
12. A lot of sugar is bad \_\_\_\_\_ your teeth.  
 a. for                      b. at                      c. to                      d. with

### Bit by Bit Exercises

13. Cheese is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ products.  
 a. daily                      b. dairy                      c. diary                      d. day
14. Some food looks \_\_\_\_\_, but still tastes good.  
 a. delicious                      b. nice                      c. unusual                      d. beautiful
15. She added some sugar, flour and \_\_\_\_\_ to make a cake.  
 a. salt                      b. meat                      c. bones                      d. butter
16. I like this meal. It's \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. bad                      b. delicious                      c. dirty                      d. boring
17. We should \_\_\_\_\_ fruit and vegetables before we eat them.  
 a. wash                      b. sell                      c. throw                      d. hear
18. We use our hands to \_\_\_\_\_ things.  
 a. see                      b. smell                      c. hear                      d. touch
19. I don't like to eat fesikh. It always \_\_\_\_\_ terrible.  
 a. smells                      b. feels                      c. touches                      d. smiles
20. Mum chopped the tomatoes \_\_\_\_\_ small pieces with a knife.  
 a. of                      b. into                      c. out                      d. from



## Language

### Imperative

### صيغة الأمر

تستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات.

#### 1- صيغة الأمر المثبت

- Inf. + مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة
- Always + Inf. + باقي الجملة

Ex. Chop the tomatoes! Don't chop them too small!

Ex. Add salt. Don't add too much salt!

#### 2- صيغة الأمر الملقى

- Don't + Inf. باقي الجملة
- Never + Inf. + باقي الجملة



- يستخدم الفعل (be) في صيغة الأمر كما يلي:

- Be + باقي الجملة
- Don't be + باقي الجملة

Ex. Be careful when you boil the water.

Ex. Don't be late for school.

## Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Take the omelette and ..... it with salad. SB
  - a. serving
  - b. serves
  - c. serve
  - d. doesn't serve
2. .... the eggs in the bowl and beat them with a fork. SB
  - a. To put
  - b. Puts
  - c. Putting
  - d. Put
3. .... the beans in the water until it boils. WB
  - a. Heat
  - b. Heats
  - c. Heated
  - d. Heating
4. .... some lemon juice over the hot beans. WB
  - a. Pours
  - b. Pour
  - c. Poured
  - d. Pouring
5. .... sauce over the pasta. I want it without sauce, please.
  - a. Pour
  - b. Don't pour
  - c. Pours
  - d. Pouring
6. .... the light off before you sleep.
  - a. Turning
  - b. Turns
  - c. Turned
  - d. Turn

### Bit by Bit Exercises

7. To be healthy, ..... all types of food
  - a. eating
  - b. eat
  - c. eats
  - d. ate
8. .... the eggs into the frying pan now.
  - a. Pours
  - b. Poured
  - c. Pour
  - d. Pouring



9. .... out alone without telling your parents.  
a Go                      b Never go                      c Doesn't go                      d Goes
10. .... enough fruits and nuts. They are healthy snacks.  
a Get                      b. Don't get                      c Never get                      d Gets
11. Don't fry the eggs. .... them.  
a Boil                      b. Boils                      c Boiling                      d Boiled
12. .... fast food because it has lots of fat.  
a. Eating                      b. Eats                      c. Eat                      d. Never eat
13. .... your aunt today. She's really ill.  
a. Visited                      b. Visit                      c. Visiting                      d. Visits
14. .... me some fresh food. It is really healthy.  
a. Don't get                      b. To Get                      c Getting                      d. Get

② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Wait a little. .... (Not pour) the eggs now. SB
2. .... (Adds) some water and salt to the beans. WB
3. Chop the tomatoes, but .... (didn't) chop them too small.
4. Don't ..... (touching) electric wires.

### Bit by Bit Exercises

5. .... (Learning) English. It is really useful.
6. Please, .... (heats) the beans now.
7. .... (Having) breakfast early. It will make you feel fresh.
8. .... (Not keep) food in the fridge for a long time. It's not healthy.

## Speaking

### ① Giving opinion about food

2 - ابداء رأي في الطعام

- لإبداء رأينا في الطعام نقول:

• I think that .... tastes + (صفة) ..... طعمه .....  
اعتقد ان .....

Ex. I think that fried chicken tastes good.

• In my opinion, .... smells + (صفة) ..... رائحته .....  
في رأيي .....

Ex. In my opinion, fish smells horrible.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 3 &amp; 4



## ① Complete the following dialogue:

Judy and Aliaa are talking about their favourite food.

Judy : Hi Aliaa, what's your favourite food?

Aliaa : ①

Judy : Oh! ②

Aliaa : Why don't you like fesikh?

Judy : ③

Aliaa : I agree with you, but it tastes nice. ④ ?

Judy : I like pizza.

Aliaa : I like pizza, too.

Judy : ⑤ ?

Aliaa : Good idea.

## ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Exercises on Vocabulary

- Follow these ..... to use the tablet well. شبهه 2022  
 a. pieces                      b. advice                      c. bowls                      d. instructions
- ..... products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones. SB  
 a. Dairy                      b. Dairy                      c. Dry                      d. Wet
- The soup is cold. Shall we ..... it? 2023 SB  
 a. cool                      b. freeze                      c. heat                      d. wash
- My mum ..... some tea into my cup.  
 a. chopped                      b. beat                      c. boiled                      d. poured
- I liked the perfume so much. It ..... really nice.  
 a. smelt                      b. fried                      c. boiled                      d. served
- Which of these is not a dairy product? WB  
 a. milk                      b. rice                      c. cheese                      d. butter
- Do you prefer to boil or ..... your eggs? SB  
 a. wash                      b. pour                      c. serve                      d. fry
- My grandparents always ..... lunch in the dining room at 4 o'clock. SB  
 a. serve                      b. do                      c. wash                      d. play
- Which of these do you use to make an omelette? WB  
 a. sugar                      b. rice                      c. eggs                      d. chocolate

## Exercises on Language

10. To have healthy teeth, ..... sure you eat dairy products  
a. being                      b. are                      c. is                      d. be
11. .... some beans and put them in a pan. WB  
a. Wash                      b. Washing                      c. Washes                      d. To wash
12. .... come to school on time.  
a. Never                      b. Always                      c. Not                      d. Don't

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. .... (Serving) it with warm bread. WB  
2. .... (Doesn't forget) to add a little salt.  
3. .... (Not) boil oil more than one time.  
4. Please, .... (stopped) eating too much chocolate.

④ Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

"Some unusual food that you have tried"

بعض أطعمة غير عادية

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة المقرة الإثنائية:

- What was the unusual food you have tried?
  - How did it smell?
  - How did it taste?
  - How did it look?
  - Would you like to eat it again?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I tried .....
- It was called .....
- It looked / smelt / tasted .....
- I would / wouldn't ..... to eat .....

## Key Vocabulary

exercise	تمارين	cake	كعكة / تورتة
food	طعام	yellow pepper	فلفل أصفر
hungry	جائع	spinach	نبات السبانخ
sleep	نوم	balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
sweet potato	بطاطا	tired	متعب



## Vocabulary

athletics club	نادي ألعاب قوى	upset	بضايق / يزعج - متضايق
conclusion	خاتمة	furthermore	علاوة على ذلك
perhaps	ربما	What sort...?	ما نوع...؟
amount	كمية - مقدار	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
art school	مدرسة لتعليم الرسم	introduce (d)	يقدم
drawing	الرسم بالرصاص / بالمحبر	revise (d)	يراجع
painting	الرسم بالألوان / لوحة فنية	surprise (d)	يفاجئ
situation	موقف	conclude (d)	يختتم (كلامه)
olive oil	زيت الزيتون	relax (ed)	يسترخي
reason	سبب	own (ed)	يملك

## Expressions & Prepositions

feel hungry	يشعر بالجوع	make sure	يتأكد من
have energy	لديه طاقة	text friends	يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء
have a snack	يتناول وجبة خفيفة	serve ... on a plate	يقدم ... في طبق
do some drawing	يقوم ببعض الرسومات	How about + V-ing...?	ما رأيك في...؟
try + V-ing.	يجرب ..	depend on	يعتمد على
as you can see	كما ترى	live on an island	يعيش على جزيرة
eight hours' sleep	نوم لثماني ساعات	stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
that's why	لهذا السبب		



## Conjugations of

### Irregular Verbs

#### Present

upset

بزعج

upset

#### Past Participle

upset

sleep

نام

slept

asleep

bring

أحضّر

brought

brought

mean

أعني

meant

meant

## Word

## Meaning

## Opposite

tired

مُتعب

uncomfortable

comfortable

مُستريح

unfortunately

لسوء الحظ

unluckily

fortunately

لحسن الحظ



## Definitions

spinach

نبات السبانخ

a vegetable with wide dark green leaves that go soft when you cook them

١- عذراء

٢- مريض

٣- أوراق الخضراوات

pepper

فلفل

a kind of vegetables that is usually green, red or yellow, with seeds in the middle

٤- ١٥٦

diet

نظام غذائي

the kind of food that you eat every day

sweet potato

بطاطا

a vegetable that looks like a potato and has purple, yellow or white flesh and a sweet taste

## Language Notes

### ① Possessive ('s) or (')

- نستخدم (s) للتعبير عن الملكية للاسم المفرد والجمع غير المنتظم:

- the boy's bag

- the men's bags

- نستخدم (') للتعبير عن الملكية للاسم الجمع المنتظم (s):

- the boys' bags

### ② The present continuous

- نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث مرتب له في المستقبل:

Ex. Your aunt is coming to visit us next week. It's arranged.

### ③ too many / much

• too many + اسم جمع (كثير جدًا (للعدد) • too much + اسم مفرد لا يعد (كثير جدًا (للكمية)

Ex. Mustafa eats too many cookies.

Ex. Mo'men doesn't have too much money.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That is the \_\_\_\_\_ room. They aren't here now.  
a. girl's                      b. girls                      c. girl                      d. girls'
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ a party next week.  
a. has                      b. am having                      c. having                      d. had
3. My mother gives me \_\_\_\_\_ food.  
a. too many                      b. too few                      c. too much                      d. so many

## Audioscript

SB Page (19)

استمع إلى النصوص



**All** : My name's Ali. My mum and dad own a restaurant and I often help in the kitchen. The \_\_\_\_\_ is my friend and he is teaching me to make different cakes. The problem is, I'm always \_\_\_\_\_ them, so I eat too many cakes. I also know I don't do enough exercise, but that's because I don't have time. When I'm not at school or doing my homework, I'm usually at the restaurant. I don't want to stop helping my parents, so I don't know what to do.

**Eman** : I'm Eman. I do a lot of sport and I have a very healthy diet. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables and I almost never eat fast food. I never eat snacks either, not even when I'm really hungry after school. I know eating snacks isn't good for you. But I'm tired all the time. I never feel I get enough sleep, even when I go to bed early! I want to have more energy.

**Tamer** : I'm Tamer. I want to go to art school when I'm older, but I don't have enough time to do any drawing or painting at the moment. I'm working really hard at school. I'm worried about my exams. When I feel worried, I don't feel hungry. My mother doesn't think I eat enough, so then she gives me even more food. I don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ her, so I can't tell her it's too much!

- ١- طباع
- ٢- يجرب
- ٣- نظم غذائي صحي
- ٤- نادي ألعاب القوى
- ٥- طاقة
- ٦- مدرسة لتعليم
- الرسم
- ٧- يزعم

## Reading

SB Page (19)

It's good that you don't eat fast food, but if you feel very hungry between \_\_\_\_\_, it's a good \_\_\_\_\_ to have a snack. How about \_\_\_\_\_ a few healthy snacks to school on the days when you have athletics club? If you want to have more energy, why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy like rice and pasta? Perhaps you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning, too.

- ١- وجبات
- ٢- فكرة
- ٣- إحصاء
- ٤- ربما

## The Okinawan diet

I come from Okinawa in Japan and the diet on my island<sup>1</sup> is very healthy.

This is for three main reasons. Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple and yellow vegetables like spinach<sup>2</sup>, sweet potato and peppers<sup>3</sup>. Furthermore, we don't have much fat in our diet: we only eat a little meat and a few dairy products. Another important thing is that we eat a very healthy breakfast. We have soup with spinach or eggs with rice, and this gives us lots of energy to start the day.

As you can see, our diet is healthy. That's why Okinawans<sup>4</sup> live a long time. Some of the oldest people in the world live on my island!



sweet potato



yellow pepper



spinach



Say it correctly

\* island

\* spinach

① لاحظ أن حرف (s) لا ينطق في هذه الكلمة.  
② لاحظ أن الجزء الملون في هذه الكلمة ينطق مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة (cheese) مع عدم نطق حرف (a).

- ١- خاص بجزيرة
- ٢- لوكيناوا باليابان
- ٣- جزيرة
- ٤- رئيس
- ٥- اسباب
- ٦- أرجواني اللون
- ٧- نبات خضار
- ٨- فلفل
- ٩- علاوة على ذلك
- ١٠- شعب جزيرة
- لوكيناوا

**Lelia** : Is there any cheese in the fridge? I don't need any now, but I want to make a salad later.

**Mother** : I think there is a little cheese. I'm going shopping now. Would you like me to buy some cheese at the market?

**Leila** : Yes, please! Could you get a few tomatoes, too? I don't have enough for the salad.

1- Your cousins are coming to visit on Saturday next week. They always make wonderful cakes and sweets for you and you want to make something for them. Unfortunately<sup>1</sup>, you do not know how to cook!

2- You are studying for exams at the moment and you are staying up late<sup>2</sup> and eating a lot of chocolate and biscuits<sup>3</sup>. You do not do any exercise and you spend your free time texting<sup>4</sup> your friends. You feel tired and unhealthy.



Say it correctly

\* biscuits

① لنطق هذه الكلمة بنقسمها إلى لصفيين (bis - cuits) وينطق النصف الأخير (kits).

- ١- لسوء الحظ
- ٢- يستمر لوقت متأخر
- ٣- بسكويت
- ٤- يرسل رسائل نصية
- ٥- متعب

How much sleep should we have? The answer depends on your age. Very small babies sleep for about 14 or more hours a day! Children six to seventeen should sleep for ten hours a night. Then you need less sleep. Most people aged 18-65 need about eight hours' sleep.



- ١- تعتمد على
- ٢- بالغ من العمر
- ٣- حوالي

### A healthy diet

It may surprise you to know that West African countries have one of the healthiest diets in the world. Why is this?

Firstly, people in countries such as Senegal, Mali and Sierra Leone eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. Furthermore, the people eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein.

Another important reason is that the people of West Africa don't eat much food with a lot of salt and sugar in it.

Therefore, a healthy diet means eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food.



- ١- يدهش
- ٢- دول غرب أفريقيا
- ٣- دولة السنغال
- ٤- دولة مالي
- ٥- دولة سيراليون
- ٦- نقطة
- ٧- ختامها
- ٨- يعني

### A recipe for pizza

- Firstly, chop some tomatoes.
- Then put the tomatoes onto the pizza bread.
- Add some cheese and pour on a little olive oil.
- Cook the pizza in the oven for ten minutes.
- Add a few olives and a little salt.
- Serve with a fresh salad.



- ١- زيت زيتون
- ٢- فلفل

## Videoscript

### Narrator:

There is a lot of delicious, healthy Egyptian food dishes like                      and                      are enjoyed by many in Egypt and around the world. But which Egyptian food is good for you before and after you play sport?

Foul mudammas is a dish made of beans. People usually

- ١- اصناف طعام
- ٢- كشرى
- ٣- ابر معمر



eat this with a little bread. The beans and the bread contain<sup>٤</sup> something called carbohydrate<sup>٥</sup>. Carbohydrate gives you energy to do sport.

Rice, pasta, fruit and vegetables contain a lot of carbohydrate, so why don't you eat these things before you go swimming or do athletics<sup>٦</sup>?

Sugar also gives us energy to do sport. You can find sugar in chocolate, sweets, honey and some desserts like basbousa<sup>٧</sup> and kachk<sup>٨</sup>. But you should only eat a little sugar because it is bad for your health.

After you play sport, how about eating food that contains protein? Protein is something that helps our body to recover<sup>٩</sup> after exercise.

Meat, fish and dairy products, like milk and cheese, contain a lot of protein. So, you should eat things like kofta<sup>١٠</sup>, sayadiya<sup>١١</sup>, or shakshouka<sup>١٢</sup> after you play sport.

It is important to look after your body. You should do exercise and eat a healthy diet.

- ٤- يحتوي على
- ٥- مواد كربوهيدراتية
- ٦- يمارس ألعاب القوى
- ٧- البسبوسة
- ٨- الكحك
- ٩- يتعافى
- ١٠- كفتة
- ١١- أرز صيادية
- ١٢- الشكشوكة

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- \_\_\_\_\_ is a vegetable that is very healthy. WB  
 a. Sugar                      b. Salt                      c. Spinach                      d. Apple
- When Tamer is worried, he doesn't feel \_\_\_\_\_. SB  
 a. big                      b. hungry                      c. salty                      d. cheap
- A/An \_\_\_\_\_ can be green, red or yellow. WB  
 a. pepper                      b. diet                      c. omelette                      d. spinach
- Your \_\_\_\_\_ is the kind of food that you eat every day. WB  
 a. work                      b. exercise                      c. diet                      d. homework
- Try to have a / an \_\_\_\_\_ diet to keep you healthy. WB  
 a. balanced                      b. long                      c. bad                      d. old

### Bit by Bit Exercises

- \_\_\_\_\_ is important as it gives us energy.  
 a. Cotton                      b. Cloth                      c. Ice                      d. Food
- The sailor decided to live \_\_\_\_\_ the island.  
 a. of                      b. on                      c. for                      d. with

8. You should add a/an \_\_\_\_\_ of olive oil to the food.  
a. number                      b. amount                      c. mount                      d. age
9. I felt really \_\_\_\_\_ because I didn't get enough sleep.  
a. hungry                      b. full                      c. tired                      d. fresh
10. To add a good taste to the salad, you should add some yellow \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. paper                      b. pepper                      c. diet                      d. salt
11. \_\_\_\_\_ potato has a nice taste  
a. Salty                      b. Bad                      c. Liquid                      d. Sweet
12. Ali felt really \_\_\_\_\_ after 14 hours of hard work.  
a. tired                      b. relaxed                      c. active                      d. comfortable
13. Gamila eats too many cakes, but she doesn't do enough \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. snacks                      b. exercise                      c. picnics                      d. trips
14. If you feel \_\_\_\_\_, you should have a meal at a restaurant.  
a. angry                      b. full                      c. careful                      d. hungry

### EXERCISE 19

**Giving advice (about being healthy)**                      اسداء النصح (شأن اتمنى نصحه بده)  
- لإسداء النصح نستخدم العبارات / الأسئلة الآتية:

• **It's a good idea that you ..... .** ..... إنها فكرة جيدة أن .....

**Ex.** It's a good idea that you don't eat fast food

• **It's a good idea to + inf ..... .** ..... إنها فكرة جيدة أن .....

**Ex.** It's a good idea to have a snack.

• **How about + V-ing ..... ?** ..... ؟ ما رأيك في .....

**Ex.** How about bringing a few healthy snacks to school?

• **Why don't you + try + V-ing .... ?** ..... ؟ لم لا تجرب .....

**Ex.** Why don't you try eating fruit that gives you energy?

• **You could + inf ..... .** ..... يمكنك أن .....

**Ex.** You could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning.

ni 2911:

# General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



① Complete the following dialogue:

Yasmin's mother is asking her about what she'd like to eat.

Mum : Are you hungry, Yasmin?

Yasmin : ①

Mum : Would you like to eat something?

Yasmin : ②

Mum : ③

Yasmin : I'd like cheese sandwiches, please.

Mum : ④

Yasmin : Yes, I'd like them with olives.

Mum : Here you are.

Yasmin : ⑤

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Eman never eats fast food or unhealthy .....

a. sleep                      b. exercise                      c. snacks                      d. restaurants

2. A: How about drinking tea in the garden? B: It's a good .....

a. idea                      b. food                      c. meal                      d. diet

3. I like eating ....., it's very healthy.

a. painting                      b. spinach                      c. conclusion                      d. plate

4. It is important to have a balanced, healthy .....

a. trip                      b. view                      c. diet                      d. journey

5. A: I'm really bored. B: How ..... going to the zoo?

a. many                      b. much                      c. deep                      d. about

6. To ..... is to cut something into small pieces.

a. pour                      b. heat                      c. shop                      d. chop

7. Serve foul mudammas ..... warm bread.

a. to                      b. with                      c. for                      d. of

③ Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: **WB**

مكتبك عنه في منزلك

"Egyptian food"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do people usually eat in Egypt?
- What are the most popular dishes?
- Are they healthy or unhealthy? Why / Why not?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- People in Egypt usually eat .....
- There are many dishes in Egypt.
- The Egyptian food is healthy / unhealthy because .....

## Key

full	ممتلئ (شبعان)	cake	كعكة / زورنة
snock	وجبة خفيفة	allergic to	لديه حساسية لـ
fast food	الوجبات السريعة	energy	طاقة
dairy products	منتجات الألبان	fresh	طازج
bone	عظمة	unusual	غير معتاد
protein	بروتين	butter	زبد
exercise	تمارين	sense	حاسة
food	طعام	yellow pepper	فلفل أصفر
hungry	جائع	spinach	نبات السبانخ
sleep	نوم	balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
sweet potato	بطاطا	tired	متعب

## Food and Snacks

falafel	الفلافل	rojak	الروجاك (وجبة فواكة شعبية بماليزيا)
fava beans	فول أخضر	sfenj	السفنج (فطائر حلوة شعبية بالمغرب)
chicken	لحم الدجاج / دجاجة	hawawshi	حواوشي (أكلة مصرية)
pizza	بيتزا	samosa	السمبوسة (وجبة حارة شعبية بالهند)
nuts	مكسرات	chips	رقائق بطاطس مقلية
pasta	مكرونات	olives	زيتون
spices	توابل - بهارات	rice pudding	ارز باللبن
watermelon	بطيخ	chocolate	شيكولاته
grapes	عنب	vegetable	خضار

## Food and Snacks

delicious	لذيذ	spicy	متبل (كثير التوابل) / حار
juicy	كثير العصارة	sweet	حلو المذاق
salty	مالح	popular	شائع - محبوب

## Verbs for senses &amp; Organs

Verb	Organ	Verb	Organ
hear	يسمع ear	taste (d)	يتذوق tongue
see	يرى eye	smell	يشم nose
touch (ed)	يلمس hand		



## Cooking verbs &amp; nouns

beat	يخفق / يضرب (eggs - butter - milk)
chop (ped)	يقطع (meat - vegetables - tomatoes)
fry (ied)	يقلّي (eggs - chicken)
pour (ed)	يصب (water - tea - juice)
heat (ed)	يسخن (beans - soup - oil - butter)
wash (ed)	يغسل (beans - vegetables)
serve (d)	يقدم / يقدّم / يخدم / يخدم / يخدم (food - lunch)
boil (ed)	يغلي / يسلق (water - eggs)
add (ed)	يضيف (salt - sugar)

## Special food

fried chicken	دجاج مقلي	dry fish	سمك مجفف
omelette	لومليت (أكلة تحتوي على البيض وإضافات)	century eggs	بيض القرن (أكلة صينية)
chamorado	الشامبرادو (أرز بالشيكولاتة)	foul mudammas	فول مدمس
tuyo	توبو (سمك مملح صغير)	durian fruit	فاكهة الدوريان



## Language

## 1- Countable &amp; Uncountable nouns

## Countable nouns أسماء تعد

١- أسماء مفردة يسبقها (a / an)

a pen - a door - a unit

an umbrella - an apple - an hour

٢- أسماء جمع كالتالي:

a pen → pens / a book → books

a dish → dishes

a watch → watches

a bus → buses

a box → boxes

a tomato → tomatoes

## Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد

- تأتي دائماً مفردة ولا يسبقها (a / an) وتأخذ فعل مفرد.

rice - meat - sugar - juice - bread - water -

cheese - milk

English - rubber - love

information - news - rain - air

## 2- some & any

• نستخدم (some) في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We saw some friends on our way home.

Ex. Dad always puts some salt on his food.

• نستخدم (some) في السؤال للعرض أو الطلب.

Ex. Would you like some oranges / pasta?

Ex. Can I have some beans / milk?

• نستخدم (any) في الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفي السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We don't buy any books from that shop.

Ex. Is there any water in the fridge?

## 3- a lot of / a little / a few

• نستخدم (a lot of) عاتفا في الجملة المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) ومع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We have a lot of snacks.

Ex. They eat a lot of rice and pasta.

• نستخدم (a few) مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع):

Ex. I eat a few oranges.

• نستخدم (a little) مع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. They have a little milk.

## 4- like / would like

• نستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما يفضل:

Ex. They like coffee but they don't like tea.

• نستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض ولطلب الأشياء:

Ex. What would you like for dinner?

Ex. I'd like (to have) some meat, please.

## 5- Imperative صيغة الأمر

• نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات.

→ Inf. + باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل.

→ Always + Inf. + باقي الجملة.

→ Don't + Inf. باقي الجملة

→ Never + Inf. + باقي الجملة

Ex. Chop the cucumbers! Don't chop them off!

## Speaking

## ① Talking about your favourite food

الحديث عن طعامك المفضل

Question	Answer
A: What's your favourite juicy fruit?	B: ..... is my favourite juicy fruit.
A: Which is your favourite snack?	B: ..... is my favourite snack.
A: Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet?	B: My favourite snack is .....
A: Is it healthy or unhealthy?	B: It is healthy / unhealthy.
A: Has it got any sugar or salt in it?	B: Yes, it has. - No, it hasn't.

## ② Asking and answering about what you like and dislike

السؤال عما تحب وما لا تحب

Question	Answer
A: What would you like for breakfast?	B: I'd like some beans, please.
A: Would you like some tea?	B: Yes, please. or No, thank you.

## ③ Offering, accepting and refusing food politely

تقديم الطعام، القبول والرفض بأدب  
- لعرض الطعام على شخص نسال:

• Do you like ....? / • Would you like ...?

Accepting	Refusing
- Yes, please	- Thank you, but I'm really full.
- Thank you. I like ...	- No, I don't / wouldn't. I prefer.....
- Yes, please, just a few / a little	- No, thank you.
	- Thank you, but I really couldn't.

## ④ Giving opinion about food

ابداء الرأي في الطعام

- لإبداء الرأي في الطعام، يقول:

• I think that ..... tastes + (صفة)

• In my opinion, .... smells + (صفة)

**6) Giving advice (about being healthy)**

إسداء النصيحة (بشأن التمتع بصحة جيدة)

- الإسداء النصيحة نستخدم العبارات / الأسئلة الآتية:

- It's a good idea that you ..... .
- It's a good idea to + inf ..... .
- How about + V-ing ..... ?
- Why don't you try + V-ing ....?
- You could + Inf ..... .

## General Exercises on Unit 8

**1) Complete the following dialogue:**

**Marwa** has just come from school.

**Marwa** : What did you cook for lunch, mum?

**Mum** : ① .....

**Marwa** : Wow! I like koshari very much.

**Mum** : I know.

**Marwa** : ② ..... ?

**Mum** : Yes, I made some salad.

**Marwa** : ③ ..... ?

**Mum** : I made rice pudding.

**Marwa** : ④ ..... Thanks, mum.

**Mum** : ⑤ .....

**2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**Exercises on Vocabulary**

1. I don't put any salt on my food because I don't like ..... food. **SB**  
 a. sweet                      b. big                      c. fast                      d. salty
2. Watermelon is very sweet and ..... It contains a lot of juice.  
 a. salty                      b. allergic                      c. spicy                      d. juicy
3. If we don't use sugar to make food ..... , what other things can we use? **SB**  
 a. sweet                      b. fast                      c. salty                      d. juicy



4. There is not protein in .....

- a. meal                      b. milk                      c. fish                      d. apples

WB

5. You need to ..... the tomatoes into small pieces.

- a. beat                      b. heat                      c. chop                      d. fry

SB

6. First, ..... the eggs in the bowl.

- a. hit                      b. beat                      c. cut                      d. chop

7. I'm really tired and I don't have the ..... to go out.

- a. energy                      b. light                      c. electricity                      d. muscle

### Exercises on Language

8. Would you like ..... more beans?

- a. some                      b. lot                      c. lot of                      d. lots

WB

9. .... the salad with the omelette.

- a. Serves                      b. Didn't serve                      c. Serve                      d. Serving

SB

10. .... the butter in the frying pan now. Wait a minute.

- a. Heating                      b. Don't heat                      c. Heats                      d. Doesn't heat

11. She didn't cook ..... meat last night.

- a. any                      b. some                      c. many                      d. a lot

WB

12. "..... you like a sandwich?" "Thank you, but I'm really full."

- a. Are                      b. Were                      c. Would                      d. Had

SB

13. Do you have ..... money in your wallet?

- a. lots                      b. any                      c. a lot                      d. many

14. I'd like ..... cheese, please.

- a. a lot                      b. a few                      c. many                      d. a little

SB

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Would you like ..... (a few) tea?

2. There aren't ..... (some) cakes in the supermarket.

3. My sister cooked ..... (a lot) pasta and rice.

4. .... (To add) a little salt to the chips.

5. I couldn't find ..... (some) water in the fridge.

6. Pour the eggs into the frying pan and ..... (cooking) it in the butter.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

SB / WB

"Indian diet"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What is the country you are talking about?
- What do people usually eat there?
- Is their diet healthy or unhealthy? Why / Why not?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية

- I'm from ..... The diet in my country is very healthy.
- People in ..... usually eat .....
- Our diet is healthy / unhealthy because ---



### A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

بعض الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



- Fava beans and falafel are very ..... in Egypt.  
a. unknown      b. popular      c. dirty      d. unpopular
- People in Egypt like to eat fava beans and falafel for .....  
a. breakfast      b. dinner      c. lunch      d. supper

### B Language Functions

② Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Ola is talking to her mom.

Mom : Would you like some cake, Ola?

Ola : ① ..... But only a little.

Mom : Why do you want a little?

Ola : ② .....

Mom : ③ ..... ?

Ola : Thanks, I like tea. I don't like coffee with cake.

Mom : OK, I will make a hot cup of tea.

### C Grammar

③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Don't ..... presents from strangers.  
a. accepted      b. accepting      c. accepts      d. accept
- I don't put ..... salt on salad.  
a. some      b. any      c. many      d. few
- Let's sit down and ..... a rest.  
a. do      b. go      c. have      d. make
- You should eat healthy food to get the ..... you need  
a. energy      b. speed      c. diary      d. juicy
- He doesn't do ..... exercise.  
a. a      b. many      c. enough      d. few

## D

## 4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ahmed was born into a rich family. He spent a short happy childhood. But his mother died when he was three years old. His father's sadness over his wife made him ill. He was at hospital for a long time, so he lost all his money. Ahmed had to work at an early age. He worked as a driver, a cook and a builder. He liked films, so he always went to the cinema. One day he met a famous film star who took him to work in a film. Since that time he has become famous and rich.

## A. Answer the following questions:

1. He was Ahmed's childhood?
2. Why did Ahmed's father lose all his money?
3. Where did Ahmed always go?

## B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "cook" means a person who ..... food.  
a. takes                      b. finds                      c. cleans                      d. makes
5. The opposite of the word "rich" is .....  
a. poor                      b. famous                      c. sad                      d. late

## 5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. own - dad - restaurant - My - and mom - Paris - in ..
2. you - like - sugar - Do - your - tea - in ?
3. eat - I - vegetables - like to - fruits - and ..
4. some - Wash - them - beans - and - in a pan - put ..

## E

## 6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

"What you can eat to stay healthy"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإشائية.

- Is healthy food important for everyone?
- How does healthy food help us?
- What should we eat to be healthy?
- What are healthy snacks?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Healthy food is .....
- Healthy food helps us to .....
- If you want to be healthy, you should eat .....
- ..... are healthy snacks



## Paragraphs & Emails

مقررات الشافيه برسائل البريد الإلكتروني وردت بالوحدة

### Paragraphs

#### 1- Some unusual food I have tried

Once I travelled abroad with my friends. We decided to have lunch at a famous restaurant. We tried a very interesting snack. It was called "Durian fruits" "Durian fruits" grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. They're soft and yellow on the inside. We liked to eat them very much. They were very healthy and tasted delicious. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.

#### 2- Egyptian food

There is a lot of delicious, healthy Egyptian food. Fout mudammas is a dish made of beans. People usually eat this with a little bread. They usually eat beans for breakfast. They like fatafel as well. Egyptian people like kashari. It contains rice, pasta, onions and tomatoes. They eat it at home or at special restaurants. People in Egypt eat kebab and kofta. It's a very popular meal. It's very delicious. They eat them with salad and bread. Tourists who come to Egypt like to try Egyptian food. It's very popular in many countries all over the world.

#### 3- Indian diet

I'm from India. The diet in my country is very healthy for many reasons. Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple and yellow vegetables. Furthermore, we don't have much fat in our diet. Another important thing is that we eat very healthy breakfast. This gives us lots of energy to start the day. That's why Indians live long lives. We don't eat much meat and dairy products. Our food is usually spicy. Many people all over the world like to try Indian food.

#### 4- What I can eat to stay healthy

Healthy food is really important for everyone. We should eat all types of food. Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. People need to eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day.

#### 5- My favourite meal

My favourite food is cheese omelette. It's very delicious. I found the recipe on the internet. I liked to try it very much. I asked my mother about it. She knew the meal and helped me make it. I make it by beating eggs in a bowl. I use some cheese. I heat the eggs in a pan. I don't add salt because the cheese is salty enough. I can eat the meal with tomatoes and hot bread. It tastes delicious. Why don't you try it?

### Emails

#### - My favourite snack

**From** : judy88@hotmail.com.

**To** : hanaa77@gmail.com.

**Subject** : My favourite snack

Dear Hanaa,

How are you? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack. I love hawawshi and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need some nice bread. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put some salt on it, too. I don't like to have any salt, though because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven. It is delicious! Do you have any favourite snacks? Describe them to me in your next email!

Best wishes.

Yours,

Judy



### A

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and .....  
 a. England                      b. Malaysia                      c. Egypt                      d. France
2. Some fruits can be .....centimetres long.  
 a. thirty                      b. forty                      c. fifty                      d. sixty
3. Durian fruits are hard and ..... on the outside.  
 a. yellow                      b. blue                      c. green                      d. white
4. Durian fruits are very ..... and taste delicious.  
 a. good                      b. nice                      c. well                      d. healthy

### B

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is talking to Nada about a meal in a restaurant.

- Nada : Hello Mona, ① ..... ?
- Mona : I'm going to the restaurant.
- Nada : Do they serve fast food?
- Mona : ②. .... They serve healthy food
- Nada : ③ ..... ?
- Mona : I usually eat chicken and salad.
- Nada : Is it expensive?
- Mona : ④ ..... It's cheap.
- Nada : Can I come with you?
- Mona : ⑤ .....

### C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our bodies need food like meat, rice, fruit, salt and sugar to be healthy. Food gives us energy, but we need a healthy diet to give us the right quantities of energy. When we do sports, our bodies use more energy and need more food than when we watch

IV. To be healthy, the quantity of food that we eat should be the same as the energy which our bodies use.

If we often eat much fast food, we will start to put on weight. Every day we should eat fruit and vegetables.

**A** Answer the following questions :

1. Why do our bodies need food?
2. What should we eat every day?
3. How much energy do our bodies use when we do sports?

**B** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Food gives us

- a. wealth      b. energy      c. heat      d. juice

5. We put on ..... if we eat much fast food.

- a. height      b. high      c. length      d. weight

6. Our bodies need ..... kinds of food.

- a. all      b. little      c. few      d. no

### D Vocabulary and structure

**A** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I should buy some ..... products from the supermarket.

- a. day      b. diary      c. dairy      d. paper

2. A : " ..... you like a little sugar in your coffee?"

B : "No, thank you."

- a. Would      b. Are      c. Does      d. Were

3. Use a knife to ..... vegetables and meat.

- a. boil      b. heat      c. pour      d. chop

4. .... a little cheese to the pizza, please.

- a. Adding      b. Add      c. Adds      d. To add

5. I can't do my homework because I'm .....

- a. happy      b. active      c. tired      d. clever

6. Many people are ..... to nuts, so they shouldn't eat any of them.

- a. addicted      b. popular      c. allergic      d. ready

7. Putting too much sugar makes food .....

- a. sweet                      b. spicy                      c. salty                      d. juicy

8. We should have a ..... diet to be healthy.

- a. translated                      b. horrible                      c. balanced                      d. bitter

9. We sometimes eat sfenj with ..... tea.

- a. on                      b. some                      c. many                      d. a lot

10. We ..... things when we put them in our mouths.

- a. see                      b. smell                      c. taste                      d. hear

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Hassan eats ..... (a lot) fava beans every day.

2. Dad got ..... (any) food from the market.

3. .... (Beats) two eggs in a bowl with little milk.

4. We haven't got ..... (some) juice.

### Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite meal"

مفحات عنه قبل الاضهار

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة العقرة الإنشائية:

- What's your favourite meal?
- Where did you find the recipe?
- How do you make it?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My favourite meal is .....
- I found the recipe .....
- I make it by .....
- I use ..... to make this meal.



2

New  
Hello!

9

# Watch, listen and make

## Objectives

### Reading:

An internet chat message; a review of an art gallery; Little Women; a review of a film

### Writing:

A short review, a paragraph on a musician

### Listening:

A report about an orchestra, an invitation on the telephone

### Speaking

Saying what people can do talking about preferences and giving recommendations; inviting a person somewhere

### Language:

Talking about ability *can know how to and be able to*

### Life Skills:

Collaboration respect for diversity

# Key



استمع إلى المفردات

show	عرض (مسرحي مثلا)	century	قرن   أ- عام
cool	رائع	point of view	وجهة نظر / رأي
cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيري (رسم ساخر)	art	الفن
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	artist	رسام / فنان
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافي	favourite	مفضل
drawing	الرسم بالقلم	idea	فكرة
portrait	لوحة فنية (وجه إنسان)	free	مجان / حر
pottery	أواني فخار	think (thought)	يعتقد
sculpture	تمثال منحوت / فن النحت	recommend (ed)	يوصي بـ / يرشح

## Activities

painting scenery

رسم خلفية خشبية للمسرح



sewing costumes

خياطة أزياء (ملابس)



playing instruments

عزف على آلات موسيقية



doing make-up

عمل تجميل (مكياج)



writing a script

كتابة نص (سيناريو)



acting in a play

تمثيل في مسرحية



make sculptures

يصنع تماثيل



make pottery

يصنع أواني فخارية



take photos

يلقط صور



do calligraphy

يدرس فن الخط



## Vocabulary

concert hall	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	colourful	رائع / ملون / مشرق
theatre	مسرح	normal	عادي / طبيعي
end-of-year	نهاية العام	recommendation	توصية / اقتراح
drama club	نادي التمثيل	TV programme	برنامج تلفزيوني
review	مقال نقدي	ancient	قديم / قديم
statue	تمثال	musical	موسيقى
painting	لوحة مرسومة	calligraphy	فن الخط
preference	تفضيل	act (ed)	يمثل / يعبّر / مسرحية
Islamic area	المنطقة الإسلامية	point (ed)	يزايد / ينقص

## Expressions & Prepositions

such as	على سبيل المثال	help with	يساعد في
get ready	يستعد	(be) able to	قادر على
make me feel happy	يجعلني أشعر بسعادة	the best at	الأفضل في
It sounds fun.	يبدو ممتعاً	interested in	مهتم بـ
quite dark	مظلم إلى حد ما	famous for	مشهور بـ
talk to	يتحدث إلى	from my point of view	من وجهة نظري

## Conjugations

### Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewed / sewn
show	يعرض	showed	shown
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn

## Word

## Meaning

## Opposite

famous	مشهور	popular	unknown	غير معروف
normal	عادي	ordinary	abnormal	غير عادي
ancient	قديم / قديم	very old	modern	حديث



## Definitions

<b>cartoon</b>	رسم كاريكاتيري (ساخر)	a <b>funny</b> drawing usually showing people or animals	
<b>costume</b>	لب (ملابس لمدى خاصة)	clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else	١- مضحك ٢- ملصق
<b>script</b>	نص مكتوب (سيناريو)	the words of a film or play which the actors learn	٣- طباق ٤- نص ٥- خلفية
<b>photography</b>	تصوير فوتوغرافي	the type of art you need a camera to do	٦- خشبة المسرح
<b>artist</b>	رسام/ فنان	a person who paints or draws for a job	٧- إيقة
<b>free</b>	مجانى	without paying money	٨- داء
<b>portrait</b>	لوحة فنية (الوجه إنسان)	a painting or photograph of a person's face	
<b>pottery</b>	أواني فخار	things that are made from <b>clay</b> , such as cups and <b>plates</b>	
<b>sculpture</b>	تمثال منحوت / فن النحت	art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things	
<b>cool</b>	رائع	great, fantastic	
<b>instrument</b>	آلة موسيقية	an <b>object</b> that is used for playing music	
<b>make-up</b>	تجميل (مكياج)	what people put on their faces in order to make themselves look nice or different	
<b>recommend</b>	يوصي بـ / يشرح	advise someone to do something or go somewhere because it is good or you like it	
<b>scenery</b>	خلفية لخشبة المسرح	the painted <b>background</b> of a <b>theatre stage</b>	
<b>sew</b>	يخيط	join two pieces of material together using a metal <b>needle</b>	
<b>show</b>	عرض	a play or <b>performance</b> for people to watch	

## Language Notes

## ① time / times

• time (n)

وقت (لا بعد)

Ex. What's the time?

• times

مرات / عصور

Ex. I have seen that film three times.

Ex. The pyramids were built in ancient times.



## ② clothes / costume

### • clothes (n)

ملابس (جمع دائما)

Ex. This shop sells expensive

• costume (n) زي يرتديه للتبدو في هيئة معينة في مناسبة معينة (حفلة/ مسرحية)

Ex. The clown is wearing a colourful costume.

## ③ scenery / scene / view

• scenery (n) منظر طبيعي (اسم لا يُعد)  
(يستخدم للحديث عن خامية لخشبة المسرح / الأماكن الطبيعية التي نراها من حولك وخاصة عندما تكون جميلة)

Ex. The scenery behind the actors of the play was wonderful.

Ex. They drive slowly down the road to enjoy the scenery.

• scene (n) مشهد في مسرحية / موقع جريمة (اسم يُعد)

Ex. The final scene of the play was very funny.

Ex. The police arrived at the scene of the crime.

• view (n) مشهد / منظر (اسم يُعد)

(يستخدم للحديث عن الأشياء التي يمكن أن نراها من مكان ما)

Ex. The view of the Nile from the Cairo Tower is fantastic.

## ④ help

• help + object + (to) + inf.  
يساعد .... أن

Ex. I helped my mother (to) make the birthday cake

يمكن أن نستخدم (to) بعد المفعول أو نحذفها

• help .... with + اسم  
يساعد .... في

Ex. Will you help me with my homework?

## ⑤ cartoon / carton

• cartoon  
رسم كاريكاتيري (رسم ساخر) / فيلم كارتون

Ex. This magazine includes funny cartoons.

Ex. Micky Mousa is a cartoon character.

• carton  
عبوة من ورق مقوى (كرتونة)

Ex. This carton contains some books.

Ex. We need to buy a carton of eggs.

## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What ..... do you get up?  
a. times                      b. time                      c. timing                      d. a time
- The actors are wearing colourful .....  
a. costumes                      b. instruments                      c. customs                      d. scenes
- This painting shows a lovely ..... of the sea coast.  
a. scene                      b. scenery                      c. review                      d. tool
- Jana helped a blind man ..... the street.  
a. crossed                      b. to crossing                      c. crosses                      d. cross
- My kids like Disney ..... characters.  
a. cartoon                      b. cart                      c. carton                      d. car

## Reading

SB page (23)

استمع إلى النصوص



Habiba

Mrs Medhat says we can have an end-of-year show <sup>(1)</sup>! It will be about the play <sup>(2)</sup> we read in the English class. I'm very excited <sup>(3)</sup>, but I need help! Can anyone act <sup>(4)</sup> or write scripts <sup>(5)</sup>? We also need people who are able to do make-up <sup>(6)</sup> sew\* costumes <sup>(7)</sup>, paint scenery <sup>(8)</sup> and play instruments <sup>(9)</sup>.

١- عرض

٢- مسرحية

٣- ممثل / متشوق

٤- يمثل

٥- نصوص (سيناريوهات)

٦- تجميل (مكياج)

٧- يخط ملابس

٨- يرسم منظر

طبيعي

٩- يعرف على آلات

موسيقية

١٠- رائع!

١١- نادي التمثيل

١٢- التمثيل

١٣- يبدو ممتعا

Cool! <sup>(10)</sup> I can talk to the people at drama club <sup>(11)</sup> about acting <sup>(12)</sup>.

Lamar



Mariam and I know how to sew costumes! We love clothes and Lara is THE BEST at doing make-up!



Azza

YES!! I can do make-up.

Lara



I can paint scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up. Are you able to help with music, Talia?



Mand

Yes, I can play the music! It sounds fun <sup>(13)</sup>. Habiba, you are the best at writing, can you write the script?

Talia



OK, I can try to write something... You are all amazing!! Thanks so much!

Habiba



Say it correctly

w

(g)

تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة w مع اختلاف نطق الحرف الأول (g)

## Review of the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art

By Wogdy Badr

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> centuries.

From my point of view, the artists were really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There were portraits of both important and normal Egyptian people. I thought the paintings were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures, both big and small.

My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called *Al Madina* by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very colourful.

The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit! I recommend visiting it if you are in Cairo, but it's a good idea to go early when it is not very busy.



- ١- مغل بقدر
- ٢- متحف الفن المصري
- ٣- المعاصر
- ٤- فن قديم
- ٥- فن (١٠ عام)
- ٦- رسامين / فنانين
- ٧- عروض
- ٨- لوحات فنية الوجه
- ٩- انسان
- ١٠- علق
- ١١- رسم كاريكاتيري
- ١٢- منحوتات
- ١٣- لوحة فنية
- ١٤- زاهي فنانين
- ١٥- عجائ
- ١٦- يوصى

Say it correctly

• sculpture

• ينطق حرف ال أول في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة cup  
وينطق المقطع ture مثلما ينطق في كلمة nature

## Review of the Textile Museum in Cairo

by Injy Zoki

Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. From my point of view, the statues showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past. My favourite thing was the Islamic area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran. They are very interesting. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.



- ١- متحف نسج
- ٢- عصر
- ٣- اعتقدت
- ٤- مصر القديمة
- ٥- تماثيل
- ٦- مفضل
- ٧- إسلامي
- ٨- فن الخط
- ٩- دولة إيران
- ١٠- فكرة
- ١١- مظهر إلى حد ما

## on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exam Exercises

1. My dress is damaged, so my mother is \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
a. acting                      b. sewing                      c. painting                      d. playing
2. There are many amazing \_\_\_\_\_ of people in this museum.  
a. sculptures                      b. pottery                      c. scripts                      d. views
3. The opposite of "famous" is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. popular                      b. known                      c. unknown                      d. possible
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals.  
a. cartoon                      b. costume                      c. script                      d. carton
5. The children all wore funny \_\_\_\_\_ to the family party. Ahmed was a firefighter!  
a. contents                      b. costumes                      c. concerts                      d. customs
6. Which \_\_\_\_\_ can you play?  
a. device                      b. tool                      c. instrument                      d. concert
7. Mona can't answer the phone. She is doing her \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. scenery                      b. museum                      c. wake up                      d. make-up
8. We need someone to \_\_\_\_\_ a scenery for the play.  
a. write                      b. paint                      c. show                      d. sew
9. A \_\_\_\_\_ is the words for a play.  
a. trip                      b. step                      c. script                      d. scenery
10. The guitar is a musical \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. instrument                      b. tool                      c. show                      d. concert
11. A / An \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who draws or paints as a job.  
a. vet                      b. cartoon                      c. artist                      d. scientist
12. The \_\_\_\_\_ which the actors are wearing are wonderful.  
a. costumes                      b. instruments                      c. customs                      d. scenes
13. \_\_\_\_\_ means without paying money.  
a. Tree                      b. Free                      c. See                      d. Be

### Bit by Bit Exercises

14. The \_\_\_\_\_ starts at 10.00 p.m. on Channel Two today.  
a. show                      b. portrait                      c. sculpture                      d. check



15. The students are \_\_\_\_\_ the play well on the stage.  
a. making                      b. writing                      c. acting                      d. sewing
16. The art museum includes sculptures, \_\_\_\_\_ and paintings.  
a. pottery                      b. poetry                      c. century                      d. country
17. You don't need to pay for this pen. It is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. busy                      b. free                      c. expensive                      d. cheap
18. This magazine has lots of funny \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. cartons                      b. carpets                      c. carts                      d. cartoons
19. Osama painted a fantastic \_\_\_\_\_ of his wife's face.  
a. costume                      b. portrait                      c. show                      d. sculpture
20. My father will take us to the funfair next month. It \_\_\_\_\_ fun.  
a. talks                      b. acts                      c. plays                      d. sounds



## Language

### Ability

### القدرة

#### Affirmative

#### الإيجابية

• للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

مصدر الفعل + can + inf. + فاعل

فاعل + know(s) how to + inf.

فاعل + am/is/are able to + inf.

Ex. I can paint scenery.

Ex. Ola knows how to write scripts.

Ex. The girls are able to sew costumes.

#### Negative

#### النفى

• للتعبير عن عدم القدرة في المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

مصدر الفعل + can't (cannot) + inf. + فاعل

فاعل + don't / doesn't know how to + inf.

فاعل + am not / isn't / aren't able to + inf.

Ex. I can't do make-up.

Ex. Ola can't play musical instruments

Ex. The girls aren't able to act.

## Question السؤال

السؤال عن القدرة في المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

Can + فاعل + Inf. مصدر الفعل .....?

Do/Does + فاعل + know how to + Inf...?

Am/Is/Are + فاعل + able to + Inf...?

Ex. Can you make-up?

Ex. Does Ola know how to play instruments?

Ex. Are the girls able to ...?

## Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Ayman ..... able to play basketball. He's very tall. 2022  
a. are b. can c. is d. will
2. Amal knows how to ..... well. She is an excellent cook. 2022  
a. cooks b. cook c. cooked d. cooking
3. Do you know ..... to use a computer? WB  
a. what b. who c. how d. which
4. .... you able to speak French? 2022 WB  
a. Do b. Can c. Can't d. Are
5. A: .... you know how to play an instrument? B: Yes, I do. SB  
a. Do b. Are c. Is d. Does
6. .... play tennis? 2023  
a. Are you can b. Do you know c. Are you able to d. You can
7. We ..... travel to another country without a passport. 2023  
a. can b. are able to c. can't d. know how
8. I ..... talk to people at the drama club about acting. 2023  
a. is able to b. can c. am able d. able
9. .... you able to carry the heavy box? 2023  
a. Do b. Is c. Are d. Can
10. I know how ..... a review about a story. 2023  
a. writing b. writes c. wrote d. to write

### Bit by Bit Exercises

11. .... your father able to drive a car?  
a. Does b. Are c. Is d. Can
12. Hens have got wings, but they ..... fly.  
a. can't b. able to c. can d. aren't able

13. Leila knows \_\_\_\_\_ write a script.  
a. how b. how to c. can d. to be able
14. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ how to cook. She is too young.  
a. can't b. isn't c. doesn't know d. knows
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ able to play well today. I trained well yesterday.  
a. can b. can't c. know how d. am
16. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you able to swim? B: No, I'm not, but I can play tennis.  
a. Can b. Are c. Do d. Is
17. Mr Saber is blind. He \_\_\_\_\_ to see.  
a. isn't able b. can c. knows how d. is able
18. This artist \_\_\_\_\_ how to paint scenery.  
a. can't b. can c. is able d. knows
19. She is able \_\_\_\_\_ her bedroom. Don't help her.  
a. to tidy b. tidying c. to tidying d. tidy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

**SB, WB & Exams Exercises**

1. I can \_\_\_\_\_ (playing) the guitar. 2022
2. A firefighter \_\_\_\_\_ (are) able to stop fires. WB
3. Yousef \_\_\_\_\_ (can) do exercise because he is too ill. 2023
4. \_\_\_\_\_ (Do) he able to do his homework? 2023
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (Be) he able to speak English? 2023
6. Rana is \_\_\_\_\_ (able) tidy her room 2023
7. \_\_\_\_\_ (You can) speak English? 2013
8. I know how \_\_\_\_\_ (sew) costumes. 2023

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

9. Do you know how \_\_\_\_\_ (use) the internet?
10. Are you \_\_\_\_\_ (ability) to understand this lesson? 2023

## Speaking

## ① Asking and answering about ability

• سؤال عن القدرة

• يجيب باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية

A: Can you + inf. .... ? هل تستطيع أن ..... ؟	B: Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
A: Do you know how to + inf. .... ? هل تعرف كيف ..... ؟	B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
A: Are you able to + inf. .... ? هل أنت قادر على ..... ؟	B: Yes, I'm. / No, I'm not, but I can .....

• ارجع الى الشرح بالتفصيل في جزء القواعد اللغوية.

## ② Talking about preferences

• سؤال عن التفضيل

• للتعبير عما يفضل باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية:

- I prefer + n / v-ing ..... أفضل .....  
أفضل أن .....
- I'd rather + inf. ....  
أفضل (شيء) أن هو .....
- My favourite (thing) is .....  
أنا مهتم بـ .....
- I'm interested in + v-ing / n .....

Ex. Watching a film is a good idea, but I prefer (watching) a play.

Ex. I'd rather stay at home tonight.

Ex. My favourite sport is football.

## ③ Asking for and giving recommendations

• طلب إعطاء توصية

• نسأل عن التوصيات كالتالي:

- Would you recommend + v-ing / n ..... ؟  
هل توصي بـ / ترشح ..... ؟
- What do you recommend + v-ing ..... ؟  
ماذا توصي بـ / ترشح ..... ؟

Ex. Would you recommend an action film or an adventure film?

Ex. What do you recommend reading, a book or a magazine?

• لإعطاء توصيات نقول:

- I recommend (that) + فاعل + inf. / v-ing / n .....  
أوصي أن .....  
أفضل شيء عن ..... هو أن .....  
إنها الفكرة جيدة أن .....
- The best thing about ..... is that ....
- It's a good idea to + inf .....

Ex. I recommend that we watch an action film.

Ex. I recommend (visiting) the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art.

Ex. It's a good idea to watch Oliver Twist.



# General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazen and Maged are talking about their hobbies.

Mazen : Where are you going, Maged?

Maged : ①

Mazen : To the club! ②

?

Maged : Because I have a tennis match today.

Mazen : Great! ③

?

Maged : I started playing it a year ago. It's my favourite. What about you?

Mazen : ④

Maged : Can you teach me how to play the piano?

Mazen : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Exercises on Vocabulary

- This artist makes fantastic ..... using stone and wood.  
a calligraphy      b. photos      c drama      d. sculptures
- Mum asked my sister to help her ..... the housework.  
a. at      b. on      c. with      d. about
- The ..... is fantastic in the play, you feel like you are in the mountains! **WB**  
a. century      b. scenery      c. make-up      d. costume
- ..... are clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else. **WB**  
a. Costumes      b. Scripts      c. Cartoons      d. Artists
- I want to know how to ..... clothes in the holidays  
a cook      b. sew      c. sing      d. think
- I ..... you this film to watch.  
a. request      b. decide      c. recommend      d. invite
- This famous ..... paints nice portraits.  
a. player      b actor      c artist      d. archaeologist

## Exercises on Language

- When I was ten, I was able to ..... ?  
a. swim      b. swimming      c swims      d. swam
- I recommend ..... this restaurant.  
a. visit      b. to visit      c visiting      d. to visiting

10. Amany ..... do her English homework alone.  
 a. can                      b. are able to                      c. know how to                      d. able to
11. Mum ..... how to make cakes at home. We don't buy any.  
 a. is able to                      b. can                      c. knows                      d. know
12. Do you know ..... this mobile?  
 a. fix                      b. how fix                      c. how to fixing                      d. how to fix
13. A film star knows how ..... well.  
 a. to act                      b. acting                      c. act                      d. acts
14. The team ..... to win this game.  
 a. can                      b. able                      c. is able                      d. know

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:**

- ..... (Are) your father able to lift this heavy weight?
- My father can ..... (repairs) things easily.
- Samy can ..... (did) karate.
- Can you ..... (sewing)?
- Maher is able ..... (play) musical instruments.
- ..... (Able) you play football or tennis?

**4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

A review of a museum you know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإستدلالية:

- When did you visit the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art?
- What's it famous for?
- Why were the artists really good?
- What was your favourite thing?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last week, I visited ..... It's famous for .....
- The artists were really good because .....
- My favourite thing is .....

## Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

orchestra	فرقة موسيقية (وركسترا)	concert	حفل موسيقي
musician	موسيقي	hide (hid / hidden)	يخفي / يختفي
blind	كفيف (اعمى)	wonder (ed)	يتساءل - يتعجب
deaf	اصم (اطرش)	cry (ied)	يبكي
disabled	معاق / من ذوي الهمم	hug (ged) ,n)	بعناق (يخص) / عناق
play	مسرحية		

## Musical instruments

violin  
آلة الكمان



piano  
آلة البيانو



flute  
آلة الناي



clarinet  
آلة المزمار



guitar  
آلة الجيتار



trumpet  
آلة البوق



cello  
آلة التشيلو



trombone  
آلة الترمبون



## Vocabulary

object	شيء	relationship	علاقة
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك (للمعاقين)	rival	منافس / ند
stairs	درجات السلم	painter	رسام
character	شخصية (في رواية)	proud	فخور
newspaper / a paper	جريدة	recently	حديثاً - مؤخرًا

traffic lights	إشارة المرور (جمع دالفا)	difficulties	صعوبات
Braille	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين	practise (d)	يمارس
special school	مدرسة لذوي الهمم	imagine (d)	يتخيل
classical	كلاسيكي	shout (ed)	يصيح / يصرخ
strange	غريب	join (ed)	ينضم إلى / يلتحق بـ
radio reporter	مراسل إذاعي	reply (ied)	يرد
skill	مهاراة		

## Prepositions

play music	يعرف موسيقى	on public transport	في المواصلات العامة
have difficulties	لدية صعوبات	in a wheelchair	على كرسي متحرك
give a hug	يعانق (يحتضن)	come into	يدخل إلى
make notes	يحدث ملاحظات	throw ... down	يلقي بـ ... أرضاً
have a good relationship	لديه علاقة جيدة	hide behind	يختبئ خلف
read music with hands	يقف موسيقى باستخدام الأيدي	proud of	فخور بـ
practise instruments	يتحرب على الآلات الموسيقية	jump up	يقفز لأعلى
		at the end	في النهاية
		shout at	يصيح على

## Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
find	يجد	found	found
leave	يغادر - يترك	left	left
throw ... down	يلقي ... أرضاً	threw ... down	thrown ... down

Word		Meaning		Opposite	
special	خاص / مميز	particular	ordinary	عادی	
hide	پنهان	disappear	appear	پدید آید	
classical	کلاسیکی	traditional	modern	جدید	



## Definitions

wonder	يتساءل	think about something and want to know why it is true
hide	يخفي / يخلف	go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found
cry	يبكي	produce water from your eyes usually because you are sad, angry or hurt
hug	يعلق	to put your <b>arms</b> around someone and hold them <b>closely</b> , usually because you love them
blind	كفيف (العمى)	not able to see
deaf	اصم (الطرش)	not able to hear
disabled	معاق	not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية (وركستر)	a large group of musicians who play many different instruments together
musician	موسيقي	someone who is very good at playing music, usually as a job

## Language Notes

### 1) feel / fall / fill / fail

• feel (felt / felt) يشعر

Ex. How do you **feel** when your father hugs you?

• fill (ed) يملأ

Ex. Mona **filled** her bag with books.

• fall (fell / fallen) يسقط / يقع

Ex. Snow began to **fall** from the sky.

• fail (ed) يفشل

Ex. He **failed** his maths test.

### 2) start + v-ing / to + inf.

يأتي بعد الفعل (start) إما (to + Inf) أو (v-ing) بدون فارق في المعنى

Ex. She sat down and **started to read / reading** the story.

### 3) paper

• a paper = a newspaper (جريدة (اسم تعدد)

Ex. Many people like to read **papers**.

• paper ورق (اسم لا تعدد)

Ex. We use **paper** in writing letters.

## 4) must + be

تستخدم (must + be) بمعنى (لابد وأنه ... / من المؤكد أنه ...) لعمل استنتاج مؤكد في الحاضر

Ex. It is very difficult to read music with your hands.

## 5) the + adj

عندما نضع (the) أمام بعض الصفات فإنها تفيد الاسم الجمع ممن يتصفون بهذه الصفة.

blind	كفيف (اعمى)	→	the blind	المكفوفين
deaf	أصم (اطرش)	→	the deaf	الصم
disabled	معاق	→	the disabled	المعاقين / ذوي الهمم
poor	فقير	→	the poor	الفقراء

## 6) orchestra / band

• orchestra      اوركسترا  
[مجموعة كبيرة من العازفين لموسيقى كلاسيكية.]

• band  
[فرقة موسيقية (تعزف موسيقى شعبية)]

Ex. I play the flute in an orchestra in the Opera House.

Ex. There was a nice band in my sister's wedding

## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I am happy when I get high marks in my exams.  
a. fill      b. fall      c. feel      d. foil
- After dinner, I started watching TV.  
a. to watch      b. to watching      c. watch      d. watched
- A reporter wrote about the accident in a daily paper.  
a. papers      b. pipe      c. pepper      d. paper
- He always gets high marks. He is clever.  
a. mustn't be      b. must be      c. won't be      d. can't be
- The rich should help poor people.  
a. Rich      b. A rich      c. The rich      d. Riches
- This band plays lovely pop music.  
a. band      b. bomb      c. pond      d. tool

# Audioscript

SB Page (26)

استمع إلى الصوت



Radio reporter:

Today I'm visiting a very special school in Cairo. This is a music school for girls. All the students study their normal subjects in the morning and then practise their instruments in the afternoon.



Many of the students at this school join an orchestra called the Al Nour Wal Amd Chamber Orchestra. This orchestra plays concerts in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world. What is most special about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are blind!

The orchestra plays international classical and Arabic music. All the students learn to read the music using Braille, a type of reading you can do with your hands. Then, they have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time. Let's go to meet some of the musicians.

- ١- مراهيل إذاعي
- ٢- خاص
- ٣- معناد
- ٤- يمارس
- ٥- يضم إلى
- ٦- أوركسترا (فرقة موسيقية)
- ٧- حفلات موسيقية
- ٨- كفيف (عمى)
- ٩- كلاسيكي
- ١٠- طريقة بريل
- للـمـمـوـفـين
- ١١- موسيقيين

Say it correctly

\* musician tion ( ينطق المقطع الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق المقطع )

WB Page (86)

The Al Nour Wal Amd Chamber Orchestra is at a school for blind girls in Cairo. Eman Badr is one of the musicians. She is able to play the violin very well. She started playing when she was six. Eman became blind when she was two years old. She likes playing in the orchestra because she loves music and being with her friends. Recently, she visited Oman and France with the orchestra.

I think the orchestra is amazing. It must be very difficult to read music with your hands and then remember it. I would like to go to one of their concerts.



- ١- آلة الكمان
- ٢- حديثا
- ٣- دولة عمان
- ٤- مذهش

# Reading

SB page (28)

## Little Women By Louisa May Alcott

Meg, Beth and Amy were sewing when Jo came into the room with a newspaper. She sat down and started to read it.

"Anything interesting?" asked Meg.

"Oh, only a story," Jo replied.

"What's it called?" asked Beth. She wondered why Jo was hiding behind the newspaper.

"It's called *The Rival Painters*," said Jo.

"Why don't you read it to us?" asked Amy.

Jo started to read it very quickly. The girls listened carefully.

The story was very sad.

"I liked it," said Meg at the end. She was crying a little.

"Isn't it strange that the characters are called two of our favourite names?"

Beth saw Jo's face. "Who wrote the story?" she asked.

Jo jumped up, threw the paper down and said, "Your sister!"

"You?" shouted Meg. "It's very good!" said Amy.

"I knew it! I knew it! Oh, I am so proud!" said Beth, hugging her sister.



١- يدخل إلى

٢- جريدة

٣- ما اسمها؟

٤- تتساءل

٥- تلتصق بـ

٦- الرسامون

المتنافسون

٧- تبكي

٨- غريب

٩- شخصيات

١٠- ألقت بالجريدة أرضاً

١١- صاحبت

١٢- فخور

١٣- تعاقب

say it  
correctly

• wonder • يبتلع حرف [C] في هذه الكلمة مثل طبق حرف [a] في كلمة [cup]

## Videoscript

SB Page (27)

Narrator:

Can you sing? Do you know to dance? Perhaps you can act. But are you able to sing and act at the same time? Actors who perform in opera can do all of these things. An opera is a type of performance in which the actors sing and sometimes dance. There is also lots of music.

People can watch an opera in a special theatre called an opera house. Like this famous one in Sydney.

١- يغنى

٢- يمثل

٣- ممثلون

٤- يظهر

٥- الأوبرا

٦- مسرحية

٧- مسرح

٨- دار الأوبرا



There are many famous operas, such as *Carmen*, *The Barber of Seville* and *Tosca*. Opera singers such as *Maria Callas*, *Placido Domingo* and *Luciano Pavarotti* are able to sing really well.

*Giuseppe Verdi* was an Italian who wrote some important operas in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. One of his most famous operas is called *Aida*.

*Aida* is set in Ancient Egypt. It is about a soldier who loves a princess. It was first performed at the Khedivial Opera House in Cairo in 1871. At this time, this opera house was the biggest in Africa and one of the most important opera houses in the world.

It was destroyed in a fire<sup>(14)</sup> in 1971, but a new opera house opened in 1988. It is called the Cairo Opera House. This is a beautiful building on Gezira Island.

Thousands of people come here every year to watch operas and other performances<sup>(15)</sup>, such as ballet<sup>(16)</sup> or music.

Do you like opera?

- ٩- جندى
- ١٠- أميرة
- ١١- بؤس
- ١٢- دار الأوبرا الخديوية
- ١٣- بدمر
- ١٤- حريق
- ١٥- عروض مسرحية
- ١٦- باليه

## Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. A \_\_\_\_\_ person is the person who can't hear. 2023 WB  
 a. blind                      b. fast                      c. tall                      d. deaf
2. Look at those people in the street. I \_\_\_\_\_ what they are looking at. WB  
 a. wander                      b. wonder                      c. answer                      d. say
3. My little sister started to \_\_\_\_\_ after she fell and hurt her hand. WB  
 a. smile                      b. hide                      c. laugh                      d. cry
4. Lara always gives her grandmother a big \_\_\_\_\_ when she sees her. WB  
 a. skill                      b. fire                      c. hug                      d. concert
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ is my favourite musical instrument. 2022 WB  
 a. carriage                      b. ruler                      c. violin                      d. hammer
6. A \_\_\_\_\_ person is the person who is not able to see. WB  
 a. blind                      b. deaf                      c. wise                      d. stupid
7. The violin, the piano and the guitar are musical \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. tools                      b. instruments                      c. machines                      d. materials
8. He had a terrible accident that left him \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. disabled                      b. messy                      c. happy                      d. noisy
9. My sister is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ in the orchestra. WB  
 a. pair                      b. musician                      c. owner                      d. musical

10. Try to help \_\_\_\_\_ people by solving the problems that they have.  
 a. sleepy                      b. lazy                      c. disabled                      d. brave
11. Ahmed was \_\_\_\_\_ behind the door, so as not to be seen.  
 a. hiding                      b. escaping                      c. coming                      d. playing

### Bit by Bit Exercises

12. Samah played the cello in the \_\_\_\_\_ last night.  
 a. court                      b. country                      c. century                      d. concert
13. We have a good \_\_\_\_\_ with our neighbours.  
 a. relative                      b. relationship                      c. transport                      d. difficulty
14. Amr likes to play the guitar in a large \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. character                      b. orchestra                      c. object                      d. musician
15. The opposite of "hide" is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. disappear                      b. leave                      c. appear                      d. disobey
16. He can't walk, so he uses a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. chair                      b. wheel                      c. wheelchair                      d. mirror
17. I \_\_\_\_\_ how the ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids.  
 a. wander                      b. promise                      c. advise                      d. wonder
18. The robbers went behind the building to \_\_\_\_\_ from the policeman.  
 a. hide                      b. show                      c. hit                      d. appear
19. The trumpet and \_\_\_\_\_ are musical instruments.  
 a. trombone                      b. tram                      c. tomb                      d. team
20. He is a famous \_\_\_\_\_. He plays music in a big orchestra.  
 a. magician                      b. architect                      c. musician                      d. dentist

### General Exercises

### on Lessons 3 & 4



#### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The girl is \_\_\_\_\_. She can't hear you. 2023  
 a. blind                      b. deaf                      c. strong                      d. rich
2. The guitar is a musical \_\_\_\_\_. 2023  
 a. instrument                      b. tool                      c. show                      d. concert
3. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. hiding                      b. laughing                      c. crying                      d. wondering
4. Al Nour Wal Amal \_\_\_\_\_ is amazing. It plays nice music.  
 a. orchestra                      b. reporter                      c. object                      d. game
5. To get a good job, you should have many \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. skulls                      b. skills                      c. scales                      d. score

6. A/An ..... person is the person who is not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can.

- a. excited      b. delighted      c. interested      d. disabled

7. The company put many advertisements in the .....

- a. carton      b. paper      c. box      d. notebook

8. Nada ..... her father when he gave her a new mobile.

- a. hugged      b. hated      c. hanged      d. harmed

9. My cousin is ..... He uses sign language.

- a. blind      b. tired      c. strong      d. deaf

2 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

WB

to your friend Salah about someone in your family that you are proud of.

- Your name is Ramy and your email address is ramypost@gmail.com

- Your friend's email address is salah566@yahoo.com

(محتاج عنه في بحر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Who is the person you're proud of?
- What does he / she do?
- Is he/she famous?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm so proud of .....
- He / she is a famous .....
- Many people know him/her .....

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



theme park	متنزه ترفيهي / مدينة ملاهي	adventure film / story	فيلم / قصة مغامرات
action	أحداث (فيلم / رواية)	invite (d)	يدعو (المناسبة)
review	مقال نقدي	escape (d)	يمرب

## Words with different meanings

star (n)	نجم (سينما) / ممثل مشهور	star (n)	نجم (في السماء)
view (n)	وجهة نظر / رأي	view (n)	منظر
park (n)	متنزه / موقف سيارات	park (v - ed)	يركن سيارة

## Vocabulary

actor	ممثل	reviewer	ناقد
invitation	دعوة (المناسبة)	main	رئيسي
request	طلب	picnic	نزهة في الهواء الطلق
offer	عرض	table tennis	لعبة تنس الطاولة
information	معلومات	wonderland	أرض العجائب
event	حدث هام	schoolboys	طلاب مدرسة
dinosaur	ديناصور	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع / يعيد تدوير
exciting	مثير	die (d)	يموت
scary	مخيف	land (ed)	يهبط
real	حقيقي / واقعي		

## Expressions & Prepositions

present a summary	يقدم ملخص	nearly dark	شبه مظلم
look very real	يبدو واقعي جداً	How's it going?	كيف تحري الأمور؟
make a film	يصنع فيلماً	instead of	بدلاً من
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	on the radio	في الراديو
See you then!	أراك حينها.	live on an island	يعيش على جزيرة
enjoy his time	يستمتع بوقته	from the top of .....	من على قمة .....
stop fires	يطفي حرائق	think about	يفكر في



Irregular Verbs			
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
bring	يُحضِر	brought	brought
ride	يركب (دراجة/آلة)	rode	ridden

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
real	واقعي / حقيقي	true	غير واقعي / غير حقيقي
exciting	مثير / شيق	interesting	ممل
main	أساسي / رئيسي	major	غير أساسي
		minor	

### Definitions

action	أحداث (فيلم / رواية)	the things that happen in a film	١- يقدم ٢- آلات
escape	يهرب	- leave a place that you should stay in - succeed in leaving a place where you don't want to be	٣- يركب (آلة) ٤- تجربة خطيرة
review	مقال نقدي	present a summary, opinion and recommendation of a film, book or play	
theme park	متنزه ترفيهي (مدينة ملاهي)	a large park that you usually pay to go in, with big machines to ride on or play games on, and with cafés, restaurants, etc.	
adventure	مغامرة	an exciting and sometimes dangerous experience	
adventure film	فيلم مغامرات	a film that has a lot of exciting events	

### Language Notes

#### 1) ride / drive

- ride (rode / ridden)  
يركب (آلة - حيوان - دراجة)

Ex. The children like riding the wheel in the theme park.

Ex. Tarek always rides his bike to school.

- drive (drove / driven)  
يقود (سيارة مثلاً)

Ex. Do you know how to drive your father's car?

#### 2) enjoy

- enjoy + V-ing / Noun يستمتع بـ

Ex. I enjoy (reading) adventure stories.

## 3) scary / scared

\* scary (adj)

مخيف

Ex This film is about dinosaurs

\* scared (adj)

خائف / مرعوب

Ex. Noura always feels of insects

## 4) nearly / nearby

\* nearly (adv)

تقريباً

Ex I finished my homework.

\* nearby (adj)

قريب

Ex. My father works in a school.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Can you ..... a bike, Ayman?  
a. drive                      b. wave                      c. ride                      d. read
- Children usually enjoy ..... cartoons.  
a. watch                      b. to watch                      c. to watching                      d. watching
- I couldn't sleep after I had watched a ..... film.  
a. scary                      b. scared                      c. funny                      d. nice
- Amira is ..... 13 years old now.  
a. near                      b. nearby                      c. nearly                      d. rarely



## Audioscript

SB Page (29)

استمع إلى النصوص



Rawia : Hi, Warda!

Warda : Hi Rawia, how's it going?

Rawia : Fine thanks, how are you?

Warda : Yeah, I'm good. I was wondering if you would like to come to watch a film at my house tonight.

Rawia : Yeah, cool, I'd love to. Which film?

Warda : I've got the film of a famous book. Would you like to watch *Little Women*?

Rawia : Oh, yes please - I love the book! Shall I bring some drinks or snacks?

Warda : I have lots of snacks but not much to drink. Could you bring some juice?

Rawia : Of course, no problem. What time should I come?

Warda : About 7 p.m?

Rawia : Great! See you then.



١- كيف الأحوال؟

٢- اتساءل

٣- وجبات خفيفة

٤- عصير فواكه

١- مشغول  
٢- فكرة جيدة

**Sami** :Hi Omar, I was wondering if you were busy tonight.

**Omar** : No, I'm not busy. Why?

**Sami** :Would you like to come to my house to listen to some music?

**Omar** : Yes, that sounds cool! Shall I bring anything?

**Sami** :Yes, could you bring your guitar and we can play some songs, too?

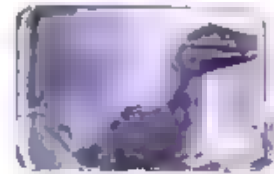
**Omar** : Good idea ! What time should I come?

**Sami** :About 8 p.m. See you then!

## Reading

SB P. (30)

### A review<sup>(1)</sup> of Jurassic World



*Jurassic World*<sup>2</sup> is an adventure film<sup>(3)</sup>. The stars<sup>(4)</sup> of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a theme park where scientists<sup>5</sup> have helped dinosaurs<sup>6</sup> to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs escape<sup>7</sup>. What will happen?

I thought the action<sup>8</sup> was exciting<sup>9</sup> and my favourite thing was the scary<sup>(10)</sup> dinosaurs, they look very real<sup>(11)</sup>. But, in my opinion the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good story.

- ١- مقال نقدي
- ٢- العالم الجوارسي
- ٣- زمن وجود
- ٤- الديناصورات
- ٥- فيلم مغامرات
- ٦- نجوم سينما
- ٧- مشهورة ترفيهي
- ٨- مدينة ملاهي
- ٩- علماء
- ١٠- ديناصورات
- ١١- يهرب
- ١٢- أحداث فيلم / رواية
- ١٣- مثير
- ١٤- مخيف
- ١٥- حقيقي / واقعي

**Salem** :Hi Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow.

- ١- لعبة تنس الطاولة
- ٢- ترحلة في الهواء الطلق

**Nader** : Yes, I would love to. It's a big house, isn't it?

**Salem** :Yes, he's got table tennis<sup>1</sup> in the garden. Would you like to play?

**Nader** : Yes, please! Shall I bring some table tennis balls?

**Salem** :No, he's got those. Could you bring some food? We'll have a picnic<sup>2</sup>.

**Nader** : Of course, I'll bring some sandwiches. What time should I come?

**Salem** :We're leaving my house at 10 a.m.

**Nader** : Great! See you then.

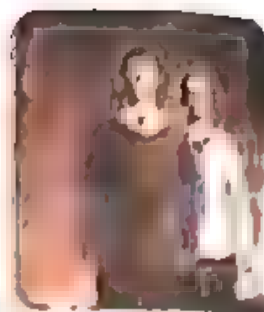
## A review of Lord of the Flies

*Lord of the Flies* is an adventure story. It is by the British writer William Golding.

It is about some who have to live on an island after their plane crashes in the sea and the teacher dies. How will the boys live on the island and will they escape?

I thought the action was exciting and many interesting things happen to the boys. My favourite part was early in the story, when the children enjoy their time on the island. But, towards the end, some of the children are cruel and I did not like them.

I recommend the book because it makes you think about what it is like to live only with other children, but it is not a very happy story.



- ١- أمير الذباب «السم»
- ٢- رواية
- ٣- قصة مغامرات
- ٤- كتاب بريطاني
- ٥- طلاب مدرسة
- ٦- جزيرة
- ٧- تعبط
- ٨- مذهل
- ٩- في رأيي
- ١٠- فطيع / سيء جدًا

## Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams Exercises

1. Don't ..... your car outside the school.

- a. bark                      b. land                      c. mark                      d. park

WB

2. .... is the things that happen in a film.

- a. Action                      b. Nation                      c. Review                      d. Picnic

WB

3. Let's go to the ..... I want to play and fly our kites.

- a. work                      b. bank                      c. park                      d. market

4. Every night I see a lot of ..... in the sky.

- a. stars                      b. reviews                      c. parks                      d. picnics

2073

5. The actor became a ..... after he was in that famous film.

- a. thief                      b. star                      c. park                      d. review

WB

6. A ..... park is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.

- a. then                      b. some                      c. scene                      d. theme

WB

7. The lions in the zoo were very .....

- a. scary                      b. proud                      c. difficult                      d. friendly



**Bit by Bit Exercises**

8. The scenery in this painting looks very ..... I like it.  
 a. real                      b. horrible                      c. scared                      d. boring
9. Policemen were everywhere, so the thief wasn't able to .....  
 a. park                      b. present                      c. offer                      d. escape
10. The big wheel is a wonderful machine you can ..... at the funfair.  
 a. drive                      b. read                      c. ride                      d. land
11. I will ..... my friends to my house for dinner.  
 a. die                      b. invite                      c. invent                      d. recycle
12. I have read a ..... of an adventure film. It showed that it is a good film.  
 a. star                      b. park                      c. picnic                      d. review
13. I want to live ..... an island with my family.  
 a. about                      b. off                      c. on                      d. form
14. I think the thief ..... from the policemen.  
 a. invited                      b. recycled                      c. enjoyed                      d. escaped
15. Many people like to watch ..... films.  
 a. memory                      b. adventure                      c. invitation                      d. rough
16. I hope we will ..... our time at the park tomorrow.  
 a. recycle                      b. escape                      c. enjoy                      d. invite

**Speaking**

**① Making invitations**

تقديم دعوات

• لتقديم دعوات نقول:

- I'd like to invite you to + inf. ....  
 اريد ان ادعوك إلى .....
- I'd like you to + inf. ....  
 اريدك أن .....
- Would you like to + inf. ....?  
 هل تريد أن .....
- I was wondering if you would like to + inf. ...  
 كنت اتساءل إذا كنت تريد أن .....



# General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sami is inviting Ali to attend his birthday party.

Ali : Hi Sami

Sami : Hi Ali. It's my birthday party tomorrow

Ali : ①

Sami : Will you come to the party?

Ali : ② .....

Sami : It starts at 7 o'clock.

Ali : ③ .....

Sami : All our friends will come.

Ali : Where will you have the party?

Sami : ④

Ali : What present would you like for your birthday?

Sami : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Exercises on Vocabulary

- This ..... encourages me to read the book.  
a. accident      b. park      c. review      d. invention
- A: What do you think ..... "Lord of the Flies"?  
B: I think it's a fantastic story.  
a. in      b. on      c. at      d. about
- A: Who should we ..... to my birthday party?  
B: All your friends.  
a. invite      b. invent      c. discover      d. call
- "Jurassic World" is an exciting ..... film. I always enjoy watching it.  
a. review      b. adventure      c. camera      d. theme
- ..... my point of view, this artist is not very good.  
a. From      b. On      c. In      d. For

## Exercises on Language

- ..... you lend me some money, Hazem?  
a. Are      b. Has      c. Could      d. Was
- Would you like me ..... this bag for you?  
a. carry      b. to carry      c. to carrying      d. carrying

## Key

show	عرض (مسرحي مثلاً)	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
cool	رائع	point of view	وجهة نظر / رأي
cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيري / رسوم متحركة	art	الفن
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	artist	رسام / فنان
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافي	favourite	مفضل
drawing	الرسم بالقلم	idea	فكرة
portrait	لوحة فلية (لوجه إنسان)	free	مجاني / حر
pottery	أواني فخار	concert	حفل موسيقي
sculpture	تمثال منحوت / فن النحت	adventure film / story	فيلم / قصة معامرات
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية / (وركسترا)	think (thought)	يعتقد
musician	موسيقيار	hide (hid / hidden)	يخفي / يختفي
blind	كفيف (اعمى)	recommend (ed)	يوصي بـ / يرشح
deaf	أصم (أطرش)	wonder (ed)	يتساءل - يتعجب
disabled	معاق (من ذوي الهمم)	cry (led)	يبكي
theme park	مسرة ترفيهية (مدينة ملاهي)	hug (ged) (n)	بعناق (يحصن) / عناق
action	أحداث (فيلم / رواية)	invite (d)	يدعو (المناسبة)
review	مقال نقدي	escape (d)	يهرب
play	مسرحية		

## Activities

painting scenery	رسم «خلفية لخشبة المسرح»	sewing costumes	حياطة أزياء (ملابس)
playing instruments	عزف على آلات موسيقية	doing make-up	عمل تجميل (مكياج)
writing a script	كتابة نص (سيناريو)	acting in a play	تمثيل في مسرحية
make sculptures	ينحت تماثيل	make pottery	يصنع أواني فخار
take photos	يلقط صور	colligraphy	يدرس فن الخط

## Musical Instruments

violin	آلة الكمان	guitar	آلة الجيتار
piano	آلة البيانو	trumpet	آلة البوق
flute	آلة الفاي	cello	آلة التشيللو
clarinet	آلة المزمار	trombone	آلة الترمبون



## Words with different meanings

star (n)

نجم (في السماء)

star (n)

نجم (في السماء)

view (n)

وجهة نظر / رأي

view (n)

منظر

park (n)

موقف سيارات

park (v - ed)

يركن سيارة



## Language

## Ability

القدرة

Can

am  
is  
are

able to

know(s)  
how to

Ex. I can play music.

Ex. The boys are able to act.

Ex. Amal knows how to sew clothes.

## Negative

Can't

am  
is  
are+ not  
able todon't know how to  
doesn't know how to

Ex. I can't swim.

Ex. The girls aren't able to drive cars.

Ex. Ola doesn't know how to write scripts.

## Question

Can

+ فاعل + Inf...?

Am / Is / Are

+ فاعل + able to + Inf...?

Does \ Do

+ فاعل + know how to + Inf...?

Ex. Can you ride a bike?

Ex. Are the girls able to act?

Ex. Does Ola know how to paint scenery?

## Speaking

### 1) Asking about and answering about ability

• السؤال بطرق عن القدرة

• يسأل عن القدرة ونجيب باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية.

A: Can you + inf. ....? B: Yes, I can / No, I can't.

A: Do you know how to + inf. ....? B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

A: Are you able to + inf. ....? B: Yes, I'm. / No, I'm not, but I can.. ....

### 2) Talking about preferences

يحدث عن التفصيل

• للتعبير عما نفضله نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية:

- I prefer + n / v-ing . ....

- I'd rather + inf.

- My favourite (thing) is . ....

- I'm interested in + v-ing / n.

### 3) Asking for and giving recommendations

طلب واعطاء توصيات

• تسأل عن التوصيات كالآتي:

- Would you recommend (n / v-ing) ....?

- What do you recommend + v-ing. ....?

• لعمل التوصيات نقول:

- I recommend (that) فاعل + inf. / v-ing / n .....

- The best thing about + noun ..... is that .....

- It's a good idea to + inf. ....

### 4) Making invitations

تقديم الدعوات

• لتقديم دعوات نقول:

- I'd like to invite you to + inf. ....

- I'd like you to + inf. ....

- Would you like to + inf. ....?

- I was wondering if you would like to + inf. ....

#### Accepting

- I'd love to.

- That / It sounds great.

- OK, with pleasure.

#### Refusing

- I'm afraid. It won't be possible.

- I'd love to, but I can't because . ....

## 6) Asking about and giving opinion

السؤال عن واداء ابراء

• تسال عن الراى كالتالى:

- Do you think (that) .....? - What do you think of / about .....?  
 - What is your view of / about .....?

• للتعبير عن الراى نقول:

- In my view, / From my point of view, .....  
 - In my opinion, ..... - I think ...  
 - No, I don't think so.

## 6) Making offers

تقديم عروض

• لتقديم عرض نقول:

- Shall I + inf .....? - Would you like me to + inf .....?

## 7) Making requests

تقديم طلبات

• للطلب نقول:

- Could you + inf .....? - I was wondering if you could + inf .....

# General Exercises on Unit 9

## 1) Complete the following dialogue:

2023 ع

Ali is asking Ahmed about his favourite hobby.

Ali : What's your favourite hobby, Ahmed?

Ahmed : ① .....

Ali : What musical instrument do you play?

Ahmed : ② .....

Ali : ③ .....

Ahmed : I started playing the violin last year.

Ali : ④ .....

Ahmed : No, it's very easy to play.

Ali : Could you teach me how to play it?

Ahmed : ⑤ ..... Let's start tomorrow.

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Exercises on Vocabulary

1. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ of the king at the entrance of the museum.  
a. sculpture      b. skill      c. view      d. show
2. This museum was built in the 18<sup>th</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. country      b. concert      c. century      d. character
3. It is nearly dark. Look, I can see a/an \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. star      b. review      c. sun      d. picnic
4. The blind man is not able to \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic lights.  
a. hear      b. smell      c. see      d. taste
5. Mr Ali gave his children a quick \_\_\_\_\_, then he got into his car.  
a. hug      b. hair      c. heart      d. head
6. We want to eat outside. Which restaurant do you \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. burn      b. recover      c. mend      d. recommend
7. Is it all right to \_\_\_\_\_ my car here?  
a. mark      b. park      c. bark      d. escape
8. Mickey Mouse is a \_\_\_\_\_ character.  
a. cartoon      b. musical      c. real      d. true

### Exercises on Language

9. A clever student knows how \_\_\_\_\_ an exam easily.  
a. to pass      b. pass      c. to passing      d. passes
10. Our teacher \_\_\_\_\_ explain the lessons wonderfully.  
a. is able      b. can      c. knows how      d. able to
11. \_\_\_\_\_ you read this English word; I can't read it?  
a. Does      b. Does      c. Can      d. Are
12. \_\_\_\_\_ you help me answer these difficult questions?  
a. Is      b. Does      c. Can      d. Are
13. I know \_\_\_\_\_ to make coffee.  
a. whose      b. what      c. which      d. how
14. \_\_\_\_\_ you able to speak English?  
a. Are      b. Do      c. Is      d. Can



③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I (can) go to school on foot, it's too far.
2. (Be) they able to write scripts?
3. (Do) your brother know how to fly a kite?
4. Mr Ashraf (can't) speak English very well. He is very good at it.
5. Do your sisters know how (sewing) clothes?
6. (Do) you able to speak German?
7. Mother is able (play) basketball.

4 Write a paragraph of about **NINETY (90)** words on:



محتاج عمله و اخي الوحيد

### "Difficulties that disabled people have"

1. The first step is to identify the problem or question that needs to be addressed. This involves understanding the context and the specific requirements of the task.

2. Next, it is essential to gather relevant information and data. This can be done through research, consultation with experts, or by analyzing existing resources.

3. Once the information is gathered, the next step is to analyze it. This involves identifying patterns, trends, and key factors that influence the outcome.

4. After analysis, a plan or strategy should be developed. This plan should outline the steps to be taken, the resources required, and the expected outcomes.

5. The final step is to implement the plan. This involves executing the tasks, monitoring progress, and making adjustments as needed.

6. Finally, the results should be evaluated. This involves comparing the actual outcomes with the expected results and identifying areas for improvement.

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة المنشائية:

- Who are disabled people?  
-How can we help them?  
-How should we treat them?  
-Are they important to our country? How?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- Disabled people can't .....  
• We can help disabled people by .....  
• We should treat them - .....



### A

- ① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب 

1. Eman Bedr is a/an .....  
 a. mechanic      b. electrician      c. musician      d. engineer
2. She started playing the violin when she was .....  
 a. six      b. seven      c. sixteen      d. eight

### B

- ② Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Taha is telling Salah that his team are playing a match next week.

Taha : We are going to play a match next week?

Salah : ① .....

Taha : We are going to play against the Red team.

Salah : ② ..... ?

Taha : The match will be at the National Club.

Salah : Will it be cool?

Taha : ③ .....

### C Usage

- ③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can't go out with you. I am very .....  
 a. lazy      b. easy      c. busy      d. free
2. He likes music. He wants to be a / an .....  
 a. engineer      b. musician      c. waiter      d. writer
3. I can't eat this food. It's .....  
 a. delicious      b. nice      c. horrible      d. healthy
4. I don't know ..... do this exercise.  
 a. what to      b. how to      c. how far      d. who to
5. I can ..... this heavy box.  
 a. comes      b. carry      c. carried      d. carrying

## D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre. The Eco-shop only sells things that are environmentally-friendly. Last week, we talked to the owner, Mariam, about her new shop. She is going to sell local fruit, vegetables and other local things that don't damage the environment. People can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling. Mariam decided to help the environment and had the idea of a shop. It is having an opening party at 1 pm. in three days' time.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where is the shop opening?  
.....
2. What is the name of the shop?  
.....
3. Why did Mariam decide to open her shop?  
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The shop sells things that ..... the environment.  
a. damage                      b. protect                      c. kill                      d. carry
5. The underlined "it" refers to .....  
a. the idea                      b. the party                      c. the shop                      d. recycling

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. come - should - What - I - time? .....
2. have - dinosaurs - helped - to live - Scientists - again. ....
3. famous - is - Egypt - its - for - art - ancient .....
4. I - Last month - Cairo - in - visited - the museum. ....

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

"A review of a film you have just watched (Jurassic World)"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What's the name of the film?
- What's it about?
- What do you think of it?

أو يمكنك

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I watched a film called .....
- The film is about ..... / the story is .....
- In my opinion, the action is .....

## Paragraphs & Emails

مقررات انشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني وردت بالوحدة

### Paragraphs

#### 1- A review of a museum I know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

Last week, I visited the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art. It is in Cairo. It's famous for art in Egypt from the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> centuries. The artists were really good. They showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. The cartoons were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures. My favourite thing was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. I recommend it to all my friends.

#### 2- Difficulties that disabled people have

We see disabled people around us. There are blind people who can't see. There are deaf people who can't hear. There are some people who can't walk. They are useful to our country. Some of them do important jobs. Try to help disabled people. Do not leave bags on the floor on public means of transport. Tell a blind person about objects on the street. Shout at a person if you think they can't hear you. Ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help. We should all treat them as normal people like us.

#### 3- A review of a film I have just watched "Jurassic World" (Azhar)

I watched a film called "Jurassic World." It is an adventure film. I think the action is exciting. But, in my opinion, the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films.

### Emails

#### 1- Someone in my family that I'm proud of

**From** : ramypost@gmail.com

**To** : salah666@yahoo.com

**Subject** : Someone in my family that I am proud of

Dear Salah,

How are you? How is your family? I write this email to tell you about my family. My grandparents live with us. I am so proud of my grandfather. He doesn't work now. He was a famous musician in the past. He played the violin. He played in a famous orchestra. Many people know him. They like his music very much. You can see his shows on YouTube. I'd like to know about your family, too. Write to me soon. With my best wishes.

Yours,

Ramy

#### 2- An invitation to my birthday

**From** : hassanpost@gmail.com

**To** : emad666@yahoo.com

**Subject** : An invitation

Dear Emad,

How are you and your family? It's a pleasure to tell you that my birthday is next Sunday. I was wondering if you could come to my house on that day. I'll be very happy if you come. All our friends will be there. We are having a big party. We will spend a nice time. We will eat cakes, play games and have fun. The party will start at 8 p.m. Please, don't be late.

Yours,

Hassan





### Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



- The speaker visited a ..... last month.  
a. theatre                      b. museum                      c. pyramid                      d. temple
- The place that the speaker visited was in .....  
a. Cairo                      b. Aswan                      c. Luxor                      d. Giza
- Egypt is famous for its ancient .....  
a. music                      b. history                      c. art                      d. monuments
- The speaker was interested in seeing art by .....  
a. Americans                      b. Africans                      c. Japanese                      d. Egyptians

### B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Galal is inviting Mustafa to the zoo.

Galal : Hi, would you like to go to the zoo with us?

Mustafa : ① .....

Galal : We can spend a nice time there.

Mustafa : ② .....?

Galal : No, but could you bring some fruit?

Mustafa : Of course ③ .....?

Galal : At 7 a.m.

Mustafa : Where will we meet?

Galal : ④ .....

Mustafa : OK. Goodbye! ⑤ .....

### C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

I read a review of the story "Oliver Twist". The story is about a child whose mother died when he was born. Oliver was a sad boy. He worked hard when he was a child and he had no money. He escaped to London. In London, he met Fagin, the leader of some thieves, who taught children how to steal. Luckily, Oliver found people who took good care of him and helped him. My favourite character is Mr Brownlow, who took care of Oliver and loved him.

In my opinion, the story is very exciting. I liked the fact that Fagin tried to change Oliver, but Oliver continued to be a good boy. I liked the end of this story.

**A. Answer the following questions :**

1. What is the passage about?
2. Who was Fagin?
3. Why do you think Oliver escaped?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The writer read a ..... of "Oliver Twist".  
a. review                      b. letter                      c. film                      d. message
5. Oliver's mother ..... when he was born.  
a. married                      b. worked                      c. escaped                      d. died
6. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to .....  
a. the writer                      b. Fagin                      c. Oliver                      d. Mr Brownlow

**D. Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. In my ....., Egypt has the finest weather.  
a. vision                      b. view                      c. review                      d. revision
2. I ..... play music, but I can't paint.  
a. can't                      b. am not able to  
c. don't know how to                      d. am able to
3. .... people cannot walk.  
a. Disabled                      b. Deaf                      c. Dumb                      d. Strong
4. My father knows how ..... his car himself.  
a. repair                      b. repairing                      c. to repairing                      d. to repair
5. Many famous ..... act in that new film. I recommend it.  
a. moons                      b. stars                      c. writers                      d. reviewers
6. My little child is skillful at ....., he uses a pencil.  
a. drawing                      b. sewing                      c. painting                      d. acting
7. Mandi opened her arms and gave her mother a big .....  
a. harm                      b. half                      c. hug                      d. hit
8. This deaf boy is not able to ..... me.  
a. see                      b. talk                      c. walk                      d. hear

- 9 Hamid ..... able to play basketball. He is very tall.  
 a is b. are c knows d can
- 10 "Titanic" is a film that is full of  
 a act b review c action d report

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. All the students in my class know how ..... (writing) in English.
2. I ..... (can) read this English word. I'll ask Mr Ali to help me
3. Miss Walaa ..... (are) able to teach young children cleverly
4. .... (you know) how to do any of the types of arts?

### Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

WB محب عنه قبل الاجابة

to your friend Emad inviting him to your birthday party.

-Your name is Hassan and your email address is hassanpost@gmail.com

-Your friend's email address is emad666@yahoo.com

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Why do you send this email?
- What do you invite your friend to?
- Who will be in the party?

- يمكن استخدام الصيغ الآتية:

- It's a pleasure to tell you that
- I was wondering if you
- The party will start at

# Review C

SB pages 32 - 33 WB pages 91 - 92

## Key

استمع إلى المفردات



play	مسرحية	mistakes	أخطاء
acting	تمثيل	ruler	حاكم
Julius Caesar	يوليوس قيصر	mask	كمامة
COVID 19	مرض فيروس كورونا، كوفيد 19	committee	لجنة
safely	بأمان	food stall	كشك لبيع الطعام
mostly	غالباً	Handball World Championship	بطول العالم لكرة اليد
medical	طبي		



## Reading

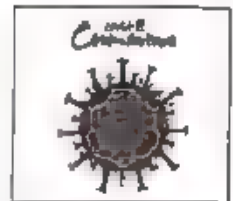
SB page (32)

استمع إلى النصوص



### Medical advice for people at the 2021 Handball World Championship

- Stand 1.5 metres from other people.
- Enter and leave the stadium through the correct doors.
- Take a test for COVID 19<sup>(2)</sup> every 72 hours.
- Only players do not need to wear a mask<sup>(3)</sup>.
- Only online interviews<sup>(4)</sup> after games.



- ١- استناد
- ٢- فيروس كورونا
- ٣- كمامة
- ٤- مقابلة شخصية

SB Page (32)

There will be a lot of players at the 2021 Men's Handball World Championship. The Championship's medical committee<sup>(1)</sup> want to make sure that all the people at the competition are able to play together safely. For that reason, they want only a few people to use the doors to the stadium at the same time. People who are not playing need to wear a mask. You can find a lot of these just outside the stadium and they are free<sup>(2)</sup> to use. All players should know how to get a COVID 19 test<sup>(3)</sup> every 72 hours.



- ١- بطولة
- ٢- لجنة طبية
- ٣- بأمان
- ٤- سبب
- ٥- مجاني
- ٦- فحص / اختبار



SB Page (32)

## Review of Julius Caesar

Last night, I went to see *Julius Caesar*. It's a play<sup>1</sup> by the English writer William Shakespeare, but it's about a Roman ruler<sup>2</sup>. Caesar's costume<sup>3</sup> made him look very important! The scenery<sup>4</sup> was amazing and it really looked like Ancient Rome.

In my opinion, the story is very sad and I cried at the end. From my point of view, the actor<sup>5</sup> who played Caesar was the best but all the acting<sup>6</sup> was very good. I will never forget this play, but there wasn't much action<sup>7</sup>: it was mostly talking. And it was three hours long! If you watch a Shakespeare play, you should know that the language of the script<sup>8</sup> is different to modern English so it can be difficult to understand, but I liked it.



- ١- مسرحية
- ٢- حاكم
- ٣- زي
- ٤- منظر طبيعي
- ٥- خلفية
- ٦- ممثل
- ٧- تمثيل
- ٨- نص / سيناريو

SB Page (33)

## HELP WITH SPECIAL CONCERT AT CHILDREN'S HOSPITAL

You don't need to know how to play an instrument<sup>1</sup> or sing, but we need people who can paint scenery, help with make-up and costumes and help the children before and after the concert<sup>2</sup>.

Email Mr Zaki, the music teacher, if you would like to help.



- ١- آلة موسيقية
- ٢- حفلة موسيقية

WB Page (92)

## (1) Review for a play

The people look like they are from Ancient Egypt because the costumes are very good, but the person who painted the scenery did not know how to paint! It was very long, and I didn't like the music. I wouldn't recommend<sup>1</sup> this.

## (2) Review for a magazine

The articles are always really interesting to read and they have fantastic photographs<sup>2</sup>, too. I really like the cartoons<sup>3</sup> because they make me laugh! If you want to learn about the world today, you should buy this!

## (3) Review for a museum

From my point of view, this is the best place to find out about life in the last century. There are interesting sculptures<sup>4</sup> of people and some amazing old technology. I loved the big, old phones<sup>5</sup>!

## (4) Review for a book

The story was very slow and there was very little action. I didn't really enjoy it because it made<sup>6</sup> me feel sad. The best<sup>7</sup> thing about it was learning what it is like to be blind. That must be very difficult.

- ١- يوصي
- ٢- صور فوتوغرافية
- ٣- رسوم كاريكاتير
- ٤- ملحونات
- ٥- هواتف
- ٦- تجعل
- ٧- أفضل



# Audioscript

SB Page (33)



١- فلافل (صمبة)

٢- طاجنة

٣- كفتك لبيخ الطعام

**Heba** : What's your favourite food, Sara? I like fruit, such as a nice juicy mango! I like fruit more than anything else ... and the fruit I like best of all ... It's difficult to decide".

**Sara** : I like fruit too Heba, but my favourite food is a nice, fresh juice. There is a food stall near my house where they are very good, and my mum sometimes cooks them, too.

**Heba** : What things do you know how to cook, Sara? I can make omelettes and salads, but I don't know how to make many things.

**Sara** : I know how to make cakes. My grandmother taught me. I love making cakes, but I eat too many of them. I should eat more fruit.

**Heba** : Yes, I eat too many cakes, too! I don't do enough exercise. I have a sports lesson at school once a week, and I go for a walk a few times a month with my cousins but that's all. What about you?

**Sara** : I play tennis twice a week and I run with my father at the weekend, so I do enough exercise, but I often spend too much time playing computer games in the evenings, so I go to bed late.

**Heba** : Yes, I spend too much time online in the evenings, too. Let's try to do more exercise next week, Sara!

**Sara** : Good idea, Heba!

WB Page (91)

**Amal** : It's Mum's birthday. Let's make her some breakfast.

**Dalida** : That's a good idea, Amal. We could make her a fruit salad.

**Amal** : I think she prefers salty food to sweet food, Dalida. What about a cheese omelette?

**Dalida** : Omelette is a good idea. Would you like to get the butter from the fridge, Amal?

**Amal** : OK.

**Dalida** : Shall I beat the eggs? I like doing that. How many eggs should I use?

**Amal** : Thanks Dalida. If there are four of us, you should use eight eggs.

**Dalida** : Do you know how to chop the cheese, Amal.

**Amal** : Of course.

**Dalida** : It's a good idea to chop the cheese really small. I'll heat some butter in the pan and pour in the eggs.

**Amal** : How long should it cook for?

**Dalida** : We'll leave it for a few minutes.

**Amal** : It looks really nice. I'd like a lot please.

**Dalida** : We can all have a little. Mum will be very pleased!

### Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. The articles in the book are always .....  
 a. boring                      b. interesting                      c. bad                      d. horrible
2. The articles have fantastic ..... too.  
 a. stories                      b. news                      c. writings                      d. photographs
3. The speaker really likes the .....  
 a. cartoons                      b. papers                      c. men                      d. writers
4. The cartoons make the speaker .....  
 a. cry                      b. study                      c. laugh                      d. speak

### Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Hossam are talking about a play.

Adel : Last night, I went to see Julius Caesar.

Hossam : What is it?

Adel : 1 ..... ?

Hossam : 2 ..... ?

Adel : The English writer William Shakespeare.

Hossam : 3 ..... ?

Adel : It's about a Roman ruler.

Hossam : What do you think about it?

Adel : 4 ..... The story is very sad.

Hossam : 5 ..... ?

### Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day a crow picked up a piece of cheese from the ground in its beak. It flew up into a tree. A hungry fox saw the crow with the cheese.

The fox wanted to make the crow get away from the cheese. He looked up and smiled at the crow. "What a beautiful bird you are," he said.

The crow said nothing.

"What lovely feathers you have got!" the fox said.

The crow said nothing.

"Have you got a beautiful voice as well?" the fox asked.

The crow opened its beak to sing so that she could show the fox. It fell to the ground. The fox ate it up greedily.

"Thank you," said the fox and ran off.

#### A. Answer the following questions :

1. What did the crow do after it picked the piece of cheese?

.....

2. What did the fox want?

.....

3. Do you think the crow had a beautiful voice?

.....

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The fox is a/an ..... animal.

- a. lazy                      b. clever                      c. fool                      d. honest

5. The underlined word "It" refers to the .....

- a. fox                      b. crow                      c. cheese                      d. ground

6. In the end, the fox ..... the piece of cheese.

- a. got                      b. lost                      c. threw                      d. sold

#### D Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you meet other people, you ..... stand 1.5 metres away from them. **SB**

- a. will                      b. should                      c. are                      d. have

2. There are ... people on the bus. **WB**

- a. a few                      b. much                      c. a lot                      d. any

3. The ..... in that magazine really make me laugh.

- a. rulers                      b. screens                      c. cartoons                      d. cartons

4. We watched really amazing ..... at the museum.

- a. tops                      b. sculptures                      c. picnics                      d. beds



5. That film isn't very interesting. I'd never \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
 a. hate                      b. dislike                      c. comment                      d. recommend
6. The best part of the play was the fantastic \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. camera                      b. scenery                      c. cartoon                      d. screen
7. All of us should wear \_\_\_\_\_ to help stop COVID19  
 a. masks                      b. glasses                      c. trousers                      d. caps
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you able to help with make-up, Leila?  
 a. Do                      b. Have                      c. Are                      d. Will
9. \_\_\_\_\_ clothes is an interesting work.  
 a. Playing                      b. Writing                      c. Acting                      d. Sewing
10. This \_\_\_\_\_ shows all the details of an old man's face.  
 a. portrait                      b. crop                      c. script                      d. scenery

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1- If you \_\_\_\_\_ (not study) well, you will get low marks
- 2- If you know how to cook, you \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in a restaurant. **SB**
- 3- There were not \_\_\_\_\_ (some) students at school yesterday
- 4- This player \_\_\_\_\_ (can't) run fast, but he can't score goals.

**Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:**

"A review of something you enjoyed"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

2

**New  
Hello!**

10

# We are what we wear

## Objectives

### Reading:

An article about Egyptian clothes now and in the past, a blog about what teenagers wear; a text about linen and cotton; an advert

### Writing:

An advert to sell something

### Listening:

People talking about their clothes;  
a conversation in a clothes shop

### Speaking:

Discussing and describing clothes;  
shopping for clothes

### Language:

Adjective order; *one, ones*  
this / that, these / those (revision)

### Life Skills:

Respect for diversity

# Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



belt

حزام



earrings

قرط (حلق)



headscarf

(headscarves)

غطاء للرأس (حجاب)



galabeya

جلباب



scarf (scarves)

شال / وشاح / كوفية



sunglasses

نظارة شمس



handbag حقيبة يد (حريمي)



sandals

صندل



trainers

حذاء رياضي



## Adjectives for clothes

smart

أنيق / مهذب

pretty

جميل

traditional

تقليدي

colourful

زاهي الألوان / ذو ملابس راحية

comfortable

مريح (الملابس) / مستريح (الشخص)

casual\*

غير رسمي (ملابس)

uncomfortable

غير مريح

nice

جميل

لطيف

loose

فضفاض / واسع

simple

بسيط

بسيط

strange

غريب

striped\*

مخطط / مخطط

## Clothes and materials

shirt	قميص	cotton	القطن
jumper	بلوفر	linen	الكتان
trousers	بنطلون	gold	الذهب
skirt	حقيبة	metal	المعدن
shorts	شورت	leather	الجلد المدبوغ
jeans	بنطلون جينز	glass	الزجاج
		plastic	البلاستيك
		wool	الصوف



## Vocabulary

sheet	ملاءة	a bit	قليلًا
material	مادة خام	necklace	عقود
boot	حذاء برفية (بوت)	similar	مشابه/متشابه
shoes	حذاء	differently	بشكل مختلف
climate	مناخ	flat	شقة
relaxed	مسترخى/مسترخ	electric	كهربائي، يعمل بالكهرباء
style	نمط/أسلوب	wooden	خشبي
size	حجم/مقاس	protect (ed)	يحمي
clothing	الملابس (الملبس)	dress (ed)(n)	يرتدي / فستان
jewellery	مجوهرات		

## Expressions &amp; Prepositions

look like	يشبه	with a belt	بحزام
keep warm / cool	يحتفظ بالدفء / بالبرودة	look for	يبحث عن
most of the time	معظم الوقت	protect... from	يحمي... من
the same as	مثل	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
feel relaxed	يشعر بالراحة	dress in a traditional style	يرتدي زي تقليدي
look smart	يبدو أنيقًا	type of	نوع من
(be) made of	مصنوع من		

## Irregular Verbs

## Irregular Verbs

## Present

## Past simple

## Past Participle

wear	يرتدي . ارتدى	wore	worn
buy	يشترى . اشترى	bought	bought
make	يصنع	made	made



Word	Meaning	Opposite
loose	واسع / فضفاض	tight
heavy	ثقيل	light
cheap	رخيص الثمن	expensive
similar	مشابه	different

## Definitions

cotton	قطن	material made from the cotton plant, used to make shirts, trousers etc.
glass	زجاج	a <b>hard</b> <sup>(1)</sup> material which is used to make windows, bottles and other objects
gold	ذهب	made of a very <b>valuable</b> <sup>(2)</sup> yellow metal used to make coins and jewellery
leather	جلد مدبوغ	a material made from an animal, used to make shoes, bags, clothes etc.
linen	كتان	a strong material made from part of the <b>flax plant</b> <sup>3</sup>
plastic	بلاستيك	an <b>artificial</b> <sup>4</sup> material which has many different uses
metal	معدن	a hard, strong material often used to make bridges, the inside of buildings, etc
wool	صوف	the soft, thick material that comes from the hair of sheep and some other animals
handbag	حقيبة يد (إرمني)	a small bag, usually carried by women, used for money, keys, make-up, etc.
casual	غير رسمي	casual clothes are not formal or not <b>suitable</b> for special <b>occasions</b>
galabeya	جلباب	a long, loose piece of clothing
earring	قرط (إحلقا)	a piece of jewellery, usually one of a pair, worn in or on an ear
headscarf	غطاء رأس (حجاب)	material that women wear to cover their hair
jewellery	مجوهرات	objects that you wear on your clothes or body that are usually made from valuable stones or metals, such as gold and silver

<b>belt</b>	حزام	a strip of leather or material that you wear to support clothes or for decoration.
<b>sandals</b>	صنادل	open shoes that you usually wear in warm weather.
<b>scarf</b>	شال	a long piece of material that you wear around the neck or shoulders.
<b>smart</b>	أنيق	looking clean and tidy.
<b>sunglasses</b>	نظارة شمس	dark glasses that you wear to protect your eyes from the sun.
<b>trainers</b>	حذاء رياضي	light, comfortable shoes that people wear for sport.

## Language Notes

### 1) cloth / clothes / clothing

• **cloth** قميش (اسم مفرد لا يعد)

• **clothes** الملابس (اسم جمع دائماً)  
\* تشير إلى الأشياء التي يرتديها الناس مثل (البلوزون - السترة)

Ex. The tailor showed me several rolls of **cloth**. Ex. My **clothes** are new.

• **clothing** ملابس / ثياب (مفرد لا يعد)

SB 37 \* تشير إلى الملابس بصفة عامة أو أنواع معينة من الملابس مثل winter / warm clothing وردت في

Ex. My favourite item of **clothing** is the jumper.

### 2) shoes / trousers / earrings / sandals / trainers / sunglasses

- تتكون بعض الملابس من جزئين غير منفصلين مثل (sunglasses - trousers) ويكون دائماً جمع.  
- أو جزئين منفصلين مثل (earrings - shoes) وهذه الكلمات جمع إذا قصدنا الجزئين ويمكن الإشارة إلى جزء واحد منهما مثل (earring - shoe).

Ex. My new **trousers** are loose. I like wearing them.

Ex. These **earrings** are made of gold.

- ونستخدم (زوج من a pair of) اسم الكلمات السابقة ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد.

Ex. I have a lovely pair of **boots**.

Ex. A pair of **sandals** is good in hot weather.

### ③ wear / dress / put on

• wear (wore / worn)

يرتدي (ملابس / مجوهرات / اكسسوارات... الخ)

Ex. I wear trousers and a T-shirt to school.

Ex. Women usually wear jewellery to look beautiful.

• dress (dressed / dressing)

يلبس (لا يأتي بعدها ملابس)

Ex. Every morning, I wash, and go to school.

• put (put / put) on

يرتدي (قطعة من الملابس / نظارة / قبعة الخ...)

Ex. I felt cold, so I put on my jacket.

Ex. Mr Ali put on his glasses to read the letter.

### ④ glass / a glass / glasses

• glass (n) زجاج (مادة خام) (اسم لا يُعد)

Ex. The window is made of wood and glass.

• a glass (n) كوب زجاجي (الاسم يُعد)

Ex. Give me a glass of water, please.

• glasses (n) نظارة

Ex. He can't read without his glasses.

### Section 1 Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I bought some nice ..... to make new kitchen curtains.  
a. cloth                      b. clothing                      c. clothes                      d. clothings
- Whose sunglasses ..... these?  
a. are                      b. is                      c. was                      d. have
- This pair of boots ..... useful when it rains.  
a. were                      b. is                      c. are                      d. have
- We ..... sunglasses on sunny days.  
a. dress                      b. dressed                      c. get dressed                      d. wear



## Audioscript

SB Page (26)

### 1. Narrator: Huda

I'm Huda. These are the types of clothes I usually wear. I like to be <sup>1</sup> and feel relaxed <sup>2</sup> in my clothes. These <sup>3</sup> were a present <sup>4</sup> from my Mum and I love them. I think I wear them outside most days!

### 2. Narrator: Tarek

I'm Tarek and I wear these clothes when I'm helping my father. It's really hot outside today and these traditional clothes <sup>5</sup> keep me cool and protect <sup>6</sup> me from the sun when I'm working.

### 3. Narrator: Sara

I'm Sara and I'm wearing my favourite colour today! I think I dress in a traditional style <sup>7</sup> but I like to be colourful <sup>8</sup>. My <sup>9</sup> is from the market. It's a cool colour, isn't it?

### 4. Narrator: Adam

My name's Adam and I'm going for a special meal <sup>10</sup> with my grandparents, which is why I'm wearing these clothes. I usually wear jeans <sup>11</sup>. I quite like looking smart <sup>12</sup>, but I think I look a bit like my father when he is going to work!

1- مستريح

2- مسترخ

3- بصورة شمسة

4- هدية

5- ملابس تقليدية

6- يحمي

7- نمط تقليدي

8- ذو ملابس زاهية

9- غطاء رأس (حجاب)

10- وجبة مميزة

11- بنطلون جينز

12- يبدو أليفاً



Say it correctly

• luxury

• ينطق حرف (u) الأول في هذه الكلمة مثلما في كلمة (but)

بينما ينطق حرف (xu) مثلما ينطق المقطع (cio) في كلمة (action)



## Reading

SB Page (28)

### Clothes in Ancient Egypt

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore <sup>(2)</sup> similar <sup>(3)</sup> clothes. They both wore loose <sup>(4)</sup>, white, linen <sup>(5)</sup> clothes with a belt <sup>(6)</sup>. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals <sup>(7)</sup>. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy <sup>(8)</sup>, metal jewelry <sup>(9)</sup>. Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces <sup>(10)</sup> and other jewellery.



1- مصر في العصر

القديم

2- برلدي

3- متشابه

4- فضفاض / واسع

5- كتان

6- حزام

7- معظم

8- صندل من الجلد

9- ثقل

10- مجوهرات

11- عقود ذهبية



# Exercises on Vocabulary

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. It is a beautiful jacket. You look very ....  
a. strange                      b. smart                      c. long                      d. intelligent
2. It's a long, blue .... You wear it around your neck. SB  
a. belt                      b. handbag                      c. sandals                      d. scarf
3. Are his clothes smart or ....? WB  
a. greedy                      b. casual                      c. clever                      d. snowy
4. Do her clothes look ..... or uncomfortable? WB  
a. comfortable                      b. similar                      c. gold                      d. electric
5. In Ancient Egypt, clothes made of ..... were popular. SB  
a. oil                      b. plastic                      c. linen                      d. wheat
6. .... are jewellery that women wear around their necks. SB  
a. Handbags                      b. Headscarves                      c. Galabeyas                      d. Necklaces
7. In Ancient Egypt, men and women didn't ..... very differently. SB  
a. call                      b. dress                      c. cost                      d. press
8. I cover my bed with a nice ..... made of linen.  
a. sheet                      b. skirt                      c. belt                      d. shell
9. Your watch isn't expensive. It's made of ..... 2023 4  
a. wool                      b. plastic                      c. linen                      d. gold
10. There are a lot of ..... flowers in the park in spring. 2023 4  
a. ugly                      b. colourful                      c. colourless                      d. funny

## Bit by Bit Exercises

11. .... clothes are usually comfortable.  
a. Tight                      b. Wooden                      c. Lost                      d. Loose
12. This ..... is made of expensive leather.  
a. handbag                      b. earrings                      c. necklace                      d. glass
13. Rasha couldn't wear these ..... because her ears hurt.  
a. trainers                      b. sandals                      c. earrings                      d. trousers
14. My grandfather likes to wear loose ..... in hot weather.  
a. galabeyas                      b. handbags                      c. sheets                      d. jumpers
15. .... are usually made of leather. 2023 4  
a. Scarves                      b. Belts                      c. Galabeyas                      d. Jewellery
16. Gamal always wears ..... in summer.  
a. earrings                      b. handbags                      c. sandals                      d. skirts

17. Famous players usually wear expensive \_\_\_\_\_ that help them run fast.  
 a. trainers                      b. galabeyas                      c. skirts                      d. scarves
18. I always wear \_\_\_\_\_ to protect my eyes from the sun  
 a. trainers                      b. earrings                      c. sunglasses                      d. sandals
19. My new pair of shoes \_\_\_\_\_ black  
 a. were                      b. is                      c. are                      d. have



## Language

### Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

• عندما نريد وصف شيء بأكثر من صفة لابد أن نضع الصفات في الترتيب الصحيح لها كالآتي:

Size / Description المقاس / الوصف	Shape الشكل	Age العمر	Colour اللون	Material المادة	Noun اسم الشيء
big / pretty	long	old	green	cotton	dress

• لاحظ استخدام الفواصل (,) بين الصفات عند الترتيب.

Ex. The ancient Egyptians wore

Description

beautiful,

Material

gold,

Noun

necklaces

١- هناك إضافات أخرى للصفات مثل [الكمية / Amount / العدد / Number]

Ex. I have got

Number

one,

Description

beautiful,

Shape

square,

Age

old,

Material

brick,

Noun

house.

٢- أحياناً يمكن استخدام مسميات أخرى للوصف مثل:

Description

= Opinion

رأي

لدرس هذا الجدول الذي يوضح الصفات المستخدمة في كل مسمى:

Description / opinion	Size	Shape	Age	Colour	Material
beautiful,	big	long	old	pink	cotton
pretty	small	loose	modern	green	linen
colourful	large	striped	new	red	wooden
expensive	medium	short	traditional	purple	plastic
cheap				colourful	gold
strange					
nice					
smart					

(shape) • long, loose

٣- عند وجود صفتين من نفس التصنيف، يمكن أن تبدأ بإي منهما:

لاحظ الأمثلة الآتية من كتاب الطالب:

Ex. I love wearing my long loose, cotton galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer. (WB 94)

Ex. She's also wearing a loose, long dress with flowers on it (WB 115)

٤- تعامل الصفة electric كنوع type وتأتي في آخر الترتيب:

Ex. Hoda's father has bought a new, red electric car. (WB 94)

٥- الصفة (colourful) يمكن أن تأتي (Description) أو تأتي (colour).

Ex. These colourful, modern carpets look amazing.

Ex. We saw a big colourful bird.

٦- الصفة (cool) بمعنى رائع لوصف (الملابس/الأثاث) وتعتبر هنا صفة (Description).

Ex. A cool, old wooden chest of drawers. (WB 98)

٧- (cool) بمعنى رطب لوصف (الملابس والمشروبات) بالأخص في وقت الحر وتعتبر صفة (حالة مادية) تأتي بعد الشكل.

Ex. loose, cool clothes for the day. (SB 64)

٨- منشأ أو بلد الشيء (origin) بعد اللون وقبل المادة الخام.

Ex. Luxury, Egyptian cotton (SB 65)

٩- يتم استخدام (and) في حالة استخدام صفتين من نفس المجموعة.

Ex. It's a beautiful brown and orange necklace. (SB 37)

- أو يمكن الاستغناء عنها.

Ex. A big, old, traditional flat in Aswan. (WB. 94)

١٠- الصفتان (light and heavy) تدرج تحت (size).

Ex. Heavy metal jewellery. (SB 36)

Ex. It's a light blue, wool scarf. (SB 43)

١١- الصفة (thin) صفة شكل (shape).

Ex. She is wearing a long, thin, leather belt. (SB 43)

## Exercises on Language

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. What a blouse!
  - a nice, cotton long
  - c long, nice, cotton
  - b nice, long, cotton
  - b cotton, long, nice
2. It's a .....
  - a beautiful necklace brown and orange
  - c beautiful brown and necklace orange
  - b necklace beautiful, brown and orange
  - a beautiful, brown and orange necklace
3. It's a ..... scarf.
  - a striped, cotton, pink
  - c pink, striped, cotton
  - b striped, pink, cotton
  - d cotton, striped, pink
4. It's a ..... skirt.
  - a beautiful, new, blue
  - c beautiful, blue, new
  - b blue, beautiful, new
  - d blue, new, beautiful
5. The American tourists were wearing ..... sunglasses
  - a big, red, plastic
  - c big, plastic, red
  - b red, plastic, big
  - d plastic, big, red
6. Ahmed bought a ..... suit.
  - a black, nice, silk
  - c nice, black, silk
  - b wool, nice, black
  - d black, nice, wool
7. I like this ..... T-shirt.
  - a small, red, cotton
  - b red, smart, cotton
  - c cotton, red
  - d cotton, smart

### Bit by Bit Exercises

8. My son likes wearing .....
  - a colourful, modern clothes
  - c a and b
  - b modern, colourful, clothes
  - d clothes modern colourful
9. They loved to wear .....
  - a metal, heavy jewellery
  - c heavy, metal jewellery
  - b heavy, jewellery, metal
  - d jewellery heavy, metal
10. This rich woman is wearing a ..... necklace.
  - a beautiful, modern, gold
  - c gold, beautiful, modern
  - b modern, beautiful, gold
  - d beautiful, gold, modern
11. Yesterday, I bought a ..... shirt.
  - a linen, loose, white
  - c loose, linen, white
  - b white, loose, linen
  - d loose, white, linen
12. Manal's mother has bought a ..... dress.
  - a green, new, smart
  - c smart, new, green
  - b green, smart, new
  - d new, smart, green
13. I always wear my ..... sunglasses.
  - a big, black, plastic
  - c plastic, black, big
  - b black, plastic, big
  - d plastic, big, black



14. Eman has a / an ..... jacket.

a. brown, strange, old

b. old, strange, brown

c. strange, old, brown

d. old, brown, strange

15. My grandparents live in a ..... house on the beach.

a. big, new, wooden

b. new, big, wooden

b. wooden, big, new

d. new, wooden, big

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. They are beautiful ..... (plastic, white, new) sunglasses.

2022

2. It's a/an ..... (cotton, old, striped) scarf.

SB

3. Look at that ..... (pretty, gold, long) necklace.

WB

4. Karma bought a ..... (brown, leather, beautiful) bag.

2023

5. I like this ..... (cotton, smart, red) T-shirt.

2023

### Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Emad loves wearing his ..... (linen, loose, red) T-shirt.

7. Ancient Egyptians wore ..... (linen, white, loose) clothes.

8. My grandfather usually wears a ..... (green, long, cotton, loose) galabeya.

9. This poor man is wearing a/an ..... (old, wool, simple) shirt.

## Speaking

### Describing clothes

وصف الملابس

- نصف الملابس من حيث الأبي:

size	المقاس	colour	اللون
shape	الشكل	material	المادة المستخدمة
age	العمر		

- ويراعى في الوصف اتباع الترتيب (ارجع الى شرح هذا الموضوع في Grammar)

- It's a striped, pink, cotton scarf.

- It's a beautiful brown and orange necklace.

كما يمكن ان نصف الملابس باستخدام صفات التفصيل كما يلي:

- This shirt is the smartest.

هذا القميص هو الأكثر أناقة.

- That dress is the nicest.

ذلك الفستان هو الأفضل.

- These trousers are the most comfortable.

هذه السراويل هي الأكثر راحة.

- That scarf is the most colourful.

ذلك الوشاح هو الأكثر ألواناً.

# General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



① Complete the following dialogue:  
Mona is talking to Soha about scarves.

- Mona : Your scarf is very pretty ① ..... ?  
Soha : Yes, it is new.  
Mona : What is it made of?  
Soha : ② .....  
Mona : Cotton! ③ ..... ?  
Soha : I bought it from the clothes shop near our house.  
Mona : ④ ..... ?  
Soha : It is 80 pounds.  
Mona : Great! Are there any more scarves like this there?  
Soha : ⑤ .....

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This cloth is made from a mixture of ..... and cotton. WB  
a wood                      b. electricity                      c. plastic                      d linen
- Hoda's father has bought a/an ..... car. WB  
a red, new, electric                      b. new, red, electric  
c. electric, red, new                      d. red, electric, new
- I usually wear a cotton ..... inside the house.  
a earrings                      b galabeya                      c. handbag                      d. trainers
- The opposite of "loose" is .....  
a heavy                      b cheap                      c. light                      d. tight
- I always ..... relaxed when I wear these clothes.  
a feel                      b fall                      c. fail                      d. fill
- The snake is ..... not spotted.  
a striped                      b. fast                      c. slow                      d. thick

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- It's a ..... (linen, beautiful, new, blue) dress. WB
- It's a ..... (blue, cotton, beautiful) skirt. 27
- She is wearing a ..... (gold / expensive / long) necklace. SB
- It's a ..... (purple, nice, wool) jumper. 27 SB

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Ihab describing the clothes you usually wear.

-Your name is Tamer and your email address is tamer505@yahoo.com

-Your friend's email address is ihabomar22@gomil.com

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What do you usually wear?
- Do your clothes look comfortable or uncomfortable?
- Are they smart or casual?
- Do you like what you wear? Why / Why not?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I usually wear .....
- My clothes are ..... clothes.
- I like .....

## Key Vocabulary

special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	soft	ناعم / لين
luxury	شيء فخم / فاخر	chemical	مادة كيميائية
industry	صناعة	crop	محصول
perfect	مثالي (في أحسن حال)	borrow (ed)	يستعير / يستلف
environment	البيئة	pick (ed)	يقطف (بساتين) / يلقط
famous	مشهور	protect (ed)	يحمي
size	مقاس / حجم		

## Vocabulary

school uniform	زي مدرسي موحد	teenager	مراهق
school day	يوم دراسي	basket	سلة
wedding	حفلة زفاف	bamboo	بسات الخيزران (البامبو)
family member	فرد في العائلة	pollution	التلوث
factory	مصنع	sports clothes	ملابس رياضية
clothes shop	محل ملابس	process	عملية إجرائية
soil	تربة زراعية	change (d)	بغير / بتغير
greener future	مستقبل أكثر حماية للبيئة	cause (d)	يسبب
relatives	أقارب	own (ed)	يملك
device	جهاز	shop (ped)	يتسوق
sewing	الخطاطة	produce (d)	يُنتج

## Expressions & Prepositions

make a lot of money	يُدّر مال كثير	instead of	بدلاً من
We are the same size.	نرتدي نفس المقاس	amazing at	مدهش في
grow crops	يررع محاصيل	good / bad for	مفيد / غير مفيد لـ
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم	perfect for	مثالي لـ
protect the environment	يحمي البيئة	famous for	مشهور بـ
use less water	يستخدم ماء أقل	for special occasions	لمناسبات خاصة
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	used to own	اعتاد أن يملك
cause pollution	يسبب تلوث	by the Nile	بحوار النيل
keep the cotton soft	يحافظ على نعومة القطن	give ... back	يرد (شيء / مال)
as good as (it is) possible	جيد قدر المستطاع	from time to time	من وقت لآخر



## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

### Present

give  
sell

يعطي  
يبيع

### Past simple

gave  
sold

### Past Participle

given  
sold

## Meaning

## Opposite

protect	يحمي	keep	damage	ينلف
perfect	مثالي	excellent	bad	سئ
near	قريب	close	far	بعيد

## Definitions

soft	ناعم	not hard to <b>touch</b> <sup>(1)</sup>	١- يلمس
luxury	شئ فخم / مترف	something expensive and of good <b>quality</b> <sup>(2)</sup>	٢- جودة ٣- يقطع .. من ٤- نلج
pick	يقطف	<b>break</b> flowers or fruit <b>off</b> <sup>3</sup> a plant	٥- عملية علمية
crop	محصول	a large amount of plants that are <b>grown</b> <sup>(4)</sup> to be sold	٦- يرد ٧- فترة من الوقت
chemical	مادة كيميائية	something produced by a <b>scientific process</b> <sup>(5)</sup>	
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	an important event for you	
perfect	مثالي	as good as it is possible to be	
industry	صناعة	- a business making things to sell - the companies and activities that produce things you can sell, especially in a factory or special area	
borrow	يستعير / يستلف	get something from someone that you plan to <b>give back</b> <sup>(6)</sup> after a <b>period of time</b> <sup>(7)</sup>	
size	مقاس / حجم	how big or small something is	
environment	البيئة	the people and things around you in your life	

## Language Notes

### ① chemical / chemistry

• chemical (adj)

صفة بمعنى كيميائي

Ex. This **chemical** liquid kills insects.

• chemical (s)

اسم يعد بمعنى مادة / مواد كيميائية

Ex. Farmers shouldn't use **chemicals**, they're harmful.

• **chemistry** (n) اسم لا يعد بمعنى الكيمياء

**Ex.** We study **chemistry** at the school this year.

## (2) borrow.. (from) / lend... (to)

• **borrow... (from)** يستعير/ يستلف ... من

**Ex.** I sometimes **borrow** clothes from my brother.

• **lend... (to)** يعير/ يسلف ... إلى

**Ex.** Do you usually **lend** money to people?

## (3) soil / land / ground / floor

• **soil**

تربة زراعية (الطبقة العليا التي تزرع فيها)

**Ex.** The climate and **soil** in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton

• **ground**

أرض (خارج المنزل) (أرضية الشارع)

**Ex.** My mobile fell to the **ground** and broke.

• **land**

أبوابسة

**Ex.** The ship reached **land** after sailing for ten days.

• **floor**

أرضية الحجر/ طابق في مبنى

**Ex.** She cleaned the **floor** with water and soap.

**Ex.** The library is on the first **floor**.

## (4) a / an

- يضع (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن ونضع (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

a uniform / a university - an hour

### Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Medicines usually contain many .....  
a. chemicals      b. chemistry      c. chemical      d. chemically
- Could I ..... your dictionary, please?  
a. lend      b. burn      c. park      d. borrow
- The ..... by the Nile is very good for growing crops.  
a. floor      b. roof      c. soil      d. wall
- Mr Hamdy is ..... honest man.  
a. a      b. no article      c. these      d. an

# Reading

SB Page (38)



استمع إلى النصوص

What do you wear?

This week, we asked three Egyptian teenagers what they wear and why.

**Noha** : I bought this shirt from a shop in Cairo, but I'm trying to buy fewer<sup>1</sup> clothes. Clothes factories cause<sup>2</sup> a lot of pollution<sup>3</sup>, so they are bad for the environment<sup>4</sup>. So sometimes I borrow<sup>5</sup> my sister's clothes. She borrows mine, too, because we are the same size<sup>6</sup>.



- ١- أقل
- ٢- بسبب
- ٣- التلوث
- ٤- البيئة
- ٥- يستلف
- ٦- مقاس
- ٧- هذا رياضي
- ٨- أفضل كثيراً
- ٩- اعتاد أن
- ١٠- مريح
- ١١- زي مدرسي مودع
- ١٢- يوم دراسي
- ١٣- حفل زفاف
- ١٤- مدهش في
- ١٥- مناسبات خاصة

**Ayman** : These trainers<sup>7</sup> were my dad's. He never wore them, so I asked if I could have them. I like doing sport and these trainers are much better<sup>8</sup> than the ones I used to<sup>9</sup> wear. I usually wear sports clothes because they are comfortable<sup>10</sup>.



**Dalida** : This is my school uniform<sup>11</sup>. I have to wear it every school day<sup>12</sup>. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me for my cousin's wedding<sup>13</sup>. She's amazing at<sup>14</sup> sewing. She always makes us clothes for special occasions<sup>15</sup>.



Say it correctly

• تنطق حروف [cc] مثل حرف (k) في هذه الكلمة وينطق حرف occasion  
[s] مثلما ينطق في كلمة [television]

SB Page (40)

## Egyptian linen and cotton



### 1- Linen in the past

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material<sup>1</sup>. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost<sup>2</sup> everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets<sup>3</sup>.

- ١- زراعة المحاصيل
- ٢- مادة خام
- ٣- الكتان
- ٤- تقريباً
- ٥- سلال، مجموع سلة

## 2- Modern cotton

Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry, from farmers to people making or sewing clothes and material.

## 3- Why cotton is grown in Egypt

The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect<sup>(11)</sup> for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked<sup>(12)</sup> by hand to keep it soft<sup>(13)</sup>.

## 4- A greener future

When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of water and chemicals<sup>(14)</sup>. Now, the government is trying to help farmers to protect<sup>(15)</sup> the environment and use less water<sup>(16)</sup>.

- ٦- قطن مصرى
- ٧- ملابس فضمة
- ٨- صناعة
- ٩- مزرعة
- ١٠- يده
- ١١- مثالى
- ١٢- يقطف
- ١٣- ناعم
- ١٤- مواد كيميائية
- ١٥- يحمى
- ١٦- ماء أقل

Say it correctly

luxury

٦ ينطق حرف (u) الأول في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة (bust)  
بينما ينطق حرفي (xl) مثلما ينطق المقطع (ctol) في كلمة (action)

WB Page (96)

## Is bamboo the new cotton?

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo instead of<sup>٢</sup> cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry makes a lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect plant. After the bamboo is picked, people often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. These are bad for nature. Also, the material made from bamboo is not very soft. As a result, it is not used for expensive, luxury clothes which are usually made from cotton.



- ١- الخيزران
- ٢- بدلا من
- ٣- نتيجة لذلك

## Videoscript

SB Page (39)

Narrator:

Do you have to wear any special clothes for school? Do your parents have to wear any special clothes when they go to work?

Many people wear a uniform. This is so people know what school they go to or what job they do.

Some workers wear special clothes to keep them safe at work.

- ١- ملابس خاصة
- ٢- لهم



These men are repairing a road. They are wearing bright yellow jackets so that car drivers can see them easily. This is a hard hat. Construction workers wear these strong, plastic hats to protect their heads.

٣- عامل البناء  
٤- رجل المصنع  
٥- خوذة  
٦- خوذة

Firefighters also wear special clothes while they are working. The jacket and trousers that they wear are made from a material that protects firefighters from the dangerous, hot temperatures. The helmet protects a firefighter's head and eyes from the fire and the gloves protect their hands.

Do you know of any other jobs in which the workers have to wear special clothes?

## Exercises on Vocabulary

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- The desert is a difficult ..... to live in! من الصعب العيش في الصحراء 2023  
a. park                      b. city                      c. village                      d. environment
- The cotton ..... makes cotton clothes. منسوجة من القطن 2023  
a. electricity                      b. industry                      c. occasion                      d. environment
- If something is a special ....., it means it is an important event for you. WB  
a. size                      b. environment                      c. hobby                      d. occasion
- When you wear the same ..... clothes as your sister, it means you can wear the same clothes. WB  
a. size                      b. occasion                      c. price                      d. environment
- ..... are a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold. SB  
a. Chemicals                      b. Baskets                      c. Crops                      d. Soils
- The farm with good ..... gives its owner high quality crops. الأرض 2023  
a. soil                      b. sand                      c. floor                      d. ground

### Bit by Bit Exercises

- Can I ..... your pen, please?  
a. advise                      b. build                      c. cause                      d. borrow
- It's not good to ..... flowers from a garden. أخذ 2023  
a. pick                      b. borrow                      c. shop                      d. protect

9. It is a \_\_\_\_\_ hotel, with big swimming pools and restaurants.  
 a patient                      b poor                      c luxury                      d very big
10. Using fewer chemicals may help \_\_\_\_\_ the environment.  
 a protect                      b borrow                      c damage                      d save
11. The soil in Egypt is \_\_\_\_\_ for growing crops. There is a lot of water.  
 a luxury                      b modern                      c bad                      d very good
12. We don't use many \_\_\_\_\_ on our farm these days.  
 a chemicals                      b classical                      c electrical                      d modern
13. Cotton is a \_\_\_\_\_ material.  
 a hard                      b rough                      c wet                      d soft
14. Eating much fat is bad \_\_\_\_\_ your health.  
 a at                      b on                      c from                      d for



## Language

### 1- one / ones

• استخدام one / ones مع الاسم المفرد و الجمع بدلاً من الاسم الجمع عندما نريد ألا نكرر الاسم / الاسم المذكر، نذكر شيئاً في الجملة:

Ex. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me.

Ex. These trainers are much better than the ones I had before.

• يتكرر يبنى one كلمة another بمعنى (أخر).

Ex. This handbag is small. Please, show me another one.

• متكرر يبنى one كلمة the other، بمعنى (الأخر / الآخرين).

Ex. This is my friend Omar. The other one is his brother.

Ex. These books are Class 1B books. Please, get the other ones.

### Check

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I don't like this T-shirt. Please, show me another .....  
 a one                      b only                      c once                      d ones
- Samah has got new CDs and old .....  
 a one                      b none                      c ones                      d no one

② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- This is my seat. Would you sit on another ..... (ones)?
- My glasses are broken. I need new ..... (one)

## 2- this - that / these - those

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة **this / these** عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص / الأشياء القريبة منا.

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة **that / those** عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص / الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

<b>this</b> هذا / هذه (للمفرد القريب)	<b>these</b> هؤلاء (للمجمع القريب)	<b>that</b> ذلك / ذلك (للمفرد البعيد)	<b>those</b> أولئك (للمجمع البعيد)
--	---------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------



**Ex.** Take **this** book, it's yours.

**Ex.** **These** books on the shelf **are** my dad's.

**Ex.** **That** car over there is mine.

**Ex.** Can you see **those** people standing there?



• الكلمات **news / information / advice / equipment etc.** هي كلمات لا تعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد ولذلك يأتي قبلها **this / that**.

**Ex.** I hope you will find **this** information useful.

**Ex.** Are you sure **this** news is true?

• نستخدم **this / that** مع التعبير (زوج من pair of)

**Ex.** I like **this** pair of shoes.

## Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- |  |          |          |          |          |    |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----|
| 1. .... birds are flying very high.                  | a. These | b. This  | c. Those | d. That  | WB |
| 2. Should I buy the red chairs or the black .....    | a. ones  | b. once  | c. one   | d. twice | WB |
| 3. I bought ..... shoes last week.                   | a. that  | b. this  | c. these | d. they  | SB |
| 4. I really like ..... pairs of trousers.            | a. these | b. this  | c. that  | d. a     | WB |
| 5. I like ..... smart, red, cotton T-shirt.          | a. these | b. those | c. that  | d. some  | SB |
| 6. How much are ..... necklaces in the window?       | a. this  | b. that  | c. a     | d. those | WB |
| 7. Shall I buy this blue T-shirt or that green ..... | a. ones  | b. one   | c. two   | d. once  | SB |
| 8. These stories are funny, but those .....          | a. one   | b. ones  | c. only  | d. once  |    |

## Bit by Bit Exercises

9. Don't do these exercises, do the other  
 a once                      b. it                      c. ones                      d one
10. This bag is yours. The other                      is mine.  
 a ones                      b. one                      c. bags                      d none
11.                      pair of black boots is better than the brown pair. I'll take it  
 a Those                      b This                      c. These                      d They
12. These shoes are small, can I try the other                      ?  
 a. one                      b. once                      c. ones                      d. none
13.                      is my car.  
 a These                      b. This                      c. Then                      d. Those
14. Which of                      books would you like?  
 a those                      b that                      c this                      d. then

② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. This ring is silver, but this                      (ones) is gold.
2. These trousers are short; I want taller                      (one).
3. I don't know                      (these) people over there.
4. This man is the                      (ones) who helped me.
5. Look at                      (this) bird in the sky!
6. Look at                      (this) books they are very useful.
7. I don't like this meal, I want the other                      (ones).
8. Wear                      (that) sunglasses to protect your eyes from the sun.
9. Samir has got a blue bag. I have a red                      (ones).

Shopping for clothes

شراء الملابس

- تستخدم الأسئلة التالية للسؤال عن (عدد) الملابس التي يملكها/ يشتريها شخص ما:

- How many (pairs of) ..... do you have/own? كم عدد (زوج من) ..... التي تملكها؟  
 - Which ..... is / are your favourite? أي ..... هو/ هم المفضل / المفضلون لديك؟

- How many shirts / pairs of shoes do you have / own?  
 - Which one / ones is / are your favourite?

- ويجب عن الأسئلة السابقة كالتالي:

- I have about four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite ones.

أمتلك حوالي أربعة أزواج من الأحذية، لكن حذائي الرياضي هو المفضل لدى.

- وسال عن المحل الذي تحب الشراء منه بالصيغة التالية

- Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?

أي محلات الملابس تحب؟ أيهما المفضل لديك؟



# General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya wants a dress for a special occasion.

Assistant : How can I help you?

Aya : 1 .....

Assistant : What special occasion do you want a dress for?

Aya : 2 .....

Assistant : Congratulations! 3 .....

Aya : I'd like pink, please.

Assistant : 4 .....

Aya : Oh! It's wonderful. I'll take it.

Assistant : Anything else?

Aya : 5 .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Exercises on Vocabulary

- When you ... something from a friend, you take something and give it back. **WB**  
 a. give                      b. borrow                      c. check                      d. lend
- The ... is the people and things around you in your life. **SB**  
 a. crop                      b. environment                      c. industry                      d. wedding
- ... means expensive and of good quality. **SB**  
 a. Week                      b. Strong                      c. Luxury                      d. Silly
- Chemicals ... the environment. We don't have to use them. **SB**  
 a. collect                      b. protect                      c. pollute                      d. pick

## Exercises on Language

- Where did you get ... sunglasses? **SB**  
 a. those                      b. that                      c. this                      d. then
- Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black ... ? **SB**  
 a. once                      b. one                      c. two                      d. ones
- ... are my dad's shoes. They are brown. **SB**  
 a. This                      b. That                      c. Those                      d. It

3B

- 56

\$B

100

مراجعة على امتحان الوحدة)

السيرة - حريق - انا انا انا

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



customer	زبون	cool	رائع
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات ادراج	useful	مفيد
fantastic	رائع	help (ed)	يساعد
jacket	جاكيت	fit (ted)	يناسب / يلائم
tool	أداة (يدوية)	try (ied) ... on	يقيس ملابس
headphones	سماعات الرأس		

## Vocabulary

What colour..?	ما لون...؟	changing room	حجرة تغيير الملابس
advert (advertisement)	إعلان	great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر
extra	زائد / إضافي	(be) interested	مهتم
shopkeeper	تاجر في محل	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
socks	جوارب (شرابات)	include (d)	يتضمن / يشتمل على
perfectly	بشكل متقن	email (ed)	يرسل رسالة بريد الكتروني

## Expressions &amp; Prepositions

What type....?	ما نوع...؟	buy online	يشترى عبر الإنترنت
get married	يتزوج	for sale	للبيع
looks nice	يبدو لطيفاً	for more information	لمزيد من المعلومات
a bit big	كبير بعض الشيء	look for	يبحث عن
move house	يلتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزل)	keep things in	يحتفظ بالأشياء بداخله
discuss the price	يناقش السعر	in + colour	ملون باللون.....
Let me look.	دعني أنظر / أبحث.	at the top	في أعلاه / قمته

## Conjugations of

## Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
take	ياخذ	took	taken
fly	يطير	flew	flown

Word	Meaning	Opposite
useful	مفيد	useless
boring	ممل	interesting
big	كبير	small



## Definitions

## changing room

حجرة تغيير الملابس

a room where people can change their clothes, for example, in a shop

## fit

يناسب / يلائم

be the correct size or shape for someone or something

## try .. on

يقيس ملابس

put on a piece of clothing to check if it fits you or if you like it

- ١- شكل
- ٢- يراى
- ٣- الملابس
- ٤- يتأكد



## Language Notes

## ① Adjectives ending in (-ed) or (-ing)

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) والصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.

- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) إلى أن الموصوف يشعر أو لديه هذه الصفة.

Ex. If you are interested, email me and we can discuss the price.

- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) إلى من / ما يسبب الصفة.

Ex. The shop has got good clothes. They are very interesting.



- The lion was frightening.
- The lion was frightened when it saw the hunters.

- في المثال الأول الأسد مخيف (هو من يسبب الصفة).

- في المثال الثاني الأسد خائف (هو من يشعر بالصفة).



## 2) would ('d) like

• would ('d) like to = want to + Inf. / n

يرغب - يود لي / يريد لي

Ex. I **would ('d) like** / **want to** shopping tonight.

Ex. I **would ('d) like** a new bag, please.

## 3) Which

نسال بكلمة الاستفهام للتخيير بين شيئين أو عدة أشياء.

Ex. **Which** would you like to buy, the blue one or the green one?

Ex. **Which** bag is yours?

## 4) tool / device

• tool  
أداة يحملها في يدك لعمل شيء  
[فأس / شاكوش / مقص الخ...]

Ex. Carpenters use **tools** like hammers and saws.

• device  
آلة أو جهاز (لعمل وظيفة معينة)

Ex. Scientists use different **devices** in laboratories.

## 5) include / contain

• contain  
يحتوي على: [بداخله - شيء داخل شيء]

Ex. The box **contains** a mobile, charger and headphones.

• include  
يشتمل على [من ضمن محتوياته - معه - ليس بداخله]

Ex. The phone **include** a charger and headphones.



### Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Wafaa showed Maha her new dress, but Maha wasn't .....  
a interest      b. interested      c interesting      d interests
- What would you like ..... for lunch?  
a. eating      b. eat      c. to eat      d. to eating
- ..... colour do you like most?  
a. Where      b. Whose      c. Who      d Which
- Carpenters use different ..... like hammers and saws.  
a. devices      b. tools      c. pools      d. advice
- The list ..... my name.  
a consists      b. contains      c includes      d writes

# Audioscript

SB Page (41)

انضم إلى النصوص



**Shopkeeper**: Hello, can I help you?

**Eman**: Hi, yes, I'm looking for a dress for a special occasion. It's my brother's birthday party next week.

**Shopkeeper**: Oh, nice. What type of dress would you like?

**Eman**: I'd like something like this one.. but do you have a different colour? I don't like yellow.

**Shopkeeper**: We have this one in blue.

**Eman**: That's beautiful! Could I try it on?

**Shopkeeper**: Of course. The changing room is here... What do you think? Does it fit?

**Eman**: It's a bit big. Do you have a smaller size?

**Shopkeeper**: Let me look. Yes, here's a smaller one. Try this on.

**Eman**: Thank you. It fits perfectly, I'll take it!

**Shopkeeper**: Great!



- ١- بلوزة في محب
- ٢- مناسبة خاصة
- ٣- صفة عبد ميلاد
- ٤- مانوع
- ٥- بلوزة الزرق
- ٦- يقين من ملابس
- ٧- حجرة تغيير
- ٨- الملابس
- ٩- قبيل
- ١٠- مفاس
- ١١- بشكل مثلي

WB Page (97)

**Shopkeeper**: Hello, can I help you?

**Ayman**: Hi, yes, I'm looking for a jacket for a special occasion. My cousin is getting married next week.

**Shopkeeper**: That's nice. What type of jacket would you like?

**Ayman**: I'd like something loose but smart.

**Shopkeeper**: We have this black jacket, or that red one in the window.

**Ayman**: They're both nice. Could I try on the blue one?

**Shopkeeper**: Of course. The changing room is there.

**Ayman**: What do you think? Does it fit?

**Shopkeeper**: It's bit big. I have a smaller one you can try on.

**Ayman**: Thank you. Yes, this one fits perfectly. I'll take it!

**Shopkeeper**: Good.

- ١- سبتروج
- ٢- قضا
- ٣- بلاتاكيد

## Reading

SB Page (42)

### BAG FOR SALE

I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather handbag. It was a present for my birthday but I already have one that is the same! It is very large and perfect for work or school. The price is LE500. Email me for more information.



- ١- حقيبة
- ٢- عبد ميلاد
- ٣- كبيرة الحجم
- ٤- سعر
- ٥- يرسل رسالة بريد
- ٦- الكتروني
- ٧- معلومات

SB Page (43)

**Shopkeeper** : Can I help you?

**Customer** : Yes, I'd like to buy these jeans, but could I try them on first?

**Shopkeeper** : Of course, the changing room is over there.

**Customer** : Thank you.

**Shopkeeper** : Do they fit you?

**Customer** : No, they're too small. Do you have a bigger size?

**Shopkeeper** : Yes, here you are.

**Customer** : They're great. I'll take them.

WB Page (98)

I'm selling a cool, old wooden chest of drawers . It was made in 1910 for my great-grandfather! It's large and perfect for keeping things in, but we have moved house and our new home is too small for it. If you are interested , email me and we can discuss the price <sup>5)</sup>

Would you like to buy a really useful tool<sup>6)</sup>?

I'm selling a nice strong one that you can use in the garden. It is made of metal with wood at the top. It's perfect for people who want to grow vegetables <sup>7)</sup> and the price is not expensive<sup>8)</sup>.

It's very cheap!

Email me if you are interested.

- 1- خزانة ذات ادراج
- 2- الجد الأكبر
- 3- يتلقى من المبلر
- 4- يعمل
- 5- مهتم
- 6- يناقش السعر
- 7- أداة مفيدة
- 8- يبيع الخضروات
- 9- غالي الثمن



WB Page (99)

Usually, Hamdi and his sister Lama like wearing casual clothes such as T-shirts and trainers. Today, they are wearing clothes for a special occasion. It is their grandfather's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday! Hamdi is wearing a smart, blue jacket. Lama is wearing a loose, cotton dress with a pretty pair of earrings.

Hamdi also has a new pair of trousers. He bought them online, so he did not try them on first. They are a bit big, so he is wearing a leather belt, too.

- 1- مثل
- 2- جميل

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is using ..... to listen to music.  
a. glasses      b. time machines      c. bowls      d. headphones
1. There is a big chest of ..... in my room.  
a. adverts      b. drawers      c. drums      d. drawings
2. The prices in that shop are ..... I can buy many things.  
a. useless      b. terrible      c. fantastic      d. loose
3. We wear ..... in winter to keep warm.  
a. jackets      b. earrings      c. sandals      d. glasses
4. I succeeded because I followed your ..... advice.  
a. bad      b. careless      c. useless      d. useful
5. When I ..... the dress on, I found it very big.  
a. kept      b. tried      c. helped      d. tired
6. There are many ..... rooms in that clothes shop.  
a. changing      b. charging      c. choosing      d. sharing
7. A hammer is one of a carpenter's .....  
a. devices      b. programs      c. machines      d. tools
8. These trousers don't ..... me very well. They are too tight.  
a. fit      b. try      c. check      d. discuss
9. The shopkeeper gave the ..... the right size.  
a. concert      b. custom      c. customer      d. costume
10. .... colour do you want the jacket?  
a. Who      b. What      c. Why      d. Whose
11. She was listening to the radio through .....  
a. phones      b. heads      c. headphones      d. tools

## Speaking

### At a clothes shop

في محل ملابس

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها بائع في محل للزبون:

- Can I help you?
- Does it fit you?
- The changing room is there.
- It's .... pounds.

هل أستطيع مساعدتك؟  
هل يناسبك المقاس؟  
حجرة تغيير الملابس هناك.  
نميتها ..... جيبها.



- العبارات الآتية عادة ما بقولها الربون للناثق:

- I'd like ..... like this.
- Could I try it on?
- Do you have a smaller size?
- How much is it / does it cost?
- I'll take it.

أربف ..... مثل هفا.  
هل أستطبع ففاسها؟  
هل لافك مقاس اصغر؟  
كم ثمنها؟  
سوف آفءها.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

SB

Ali is at a clothes shop.

**Shopkeeper** : Hello sir, can I help you?

**Ali** : ① ..... I want a T-shirt like this, please.

**Shopkeeper** : Here you are, sir.

**Ali** : ② ..... ?

**Shopkeeper** : Sure. The changing room is there.

**Ali** : It's a bit big. ③ ..... ?

**Shopkeeper** : ④ .....

**Ali** : How much is it?

**Shopkeeper** : ⑤ .....

**Ali** : OK! I'll take it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The shopkeeper asked me to try the shirt. .... in the changing room.

- a. of                      b. on                      c. off                      d. over

2. .... book is Sameh's?

- a. Which                      b. When                      c. Who                      d. Where

3. My parents ..... married twenty years ago.

- a. included                      b. gave                      c. got                      d. took

4. If you are interested, email us and we can ..... the price.

- a. talk                      b. speak                      c. discuss                      d. skip

5. I was talking to Ali, but he wasn't .... in my talk.

- a. interested                      b. interest                      c. interests                      d. interesting

## Key Words

belt	حزام	chemical	مادة كيميائية
headscarf	غطاء للرأس (حجاب)	crop	محصول
scarf	شال / وشاح / كوفية	customer	زبون
handbag	حقيرة يد (حريمي)	chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج
trainers	حذاء رياضي	fantastic	رائع
earrings	قرط (حلق)	jacket	جاكيت
galabeya	جلباب	tool	أداة (يدوية)
sunglasses	نظارة شممس	headphones	سماعات الرأس
sandals	صندل	cool	رائع
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	useful	مفيد
luxury	شيء فخيم / فاخر	borrow (ed)	يستعير / يستلف
industry	صناعة	pick (ed)	يقطف (نبات) / يلتقط
perfect	مثالي (في أحسن حال)	protect (ed)	يحمي
environment	البيئة	help (ed)	يساعد
famous	مشهور	fit (ted)	يناسب / يلائم
soft	ناعيم / لين	try (ied) ... on	يقيس ملابس

## Adjectives for clothes

smart	أنيق / مهندم	pretty	جميل
traditional	تقليدي	colourful	رائع الألوان / ذو ملابس زاهية
comfortable	مريح (للملابس) / مستريح (للشخص)	casual	غير رسمي (ملابس)
uncomfortable	غير مريح	nice	لطيف
loose	فضفاض / واسع	simple	بسيط
cheap	رخيص	striped	مقلم / مخطط
expensive	غالي الثمن	heavy	ثقيل
strange	غريب		



## Language

### 1- Adjective order

ترتيب الصفات

• يراعى الترتيب الآتي عند وصف شيء:

Size / Description	Shape	Age	Colour	Material	Noun
big / lovely	square	new	black	leather	bag

Ex. He wore a long, green, cotton shirt

### 2- one / ones

• نستخدم (one) بدلاً من الاسم المفرد و (ones) بدلاً من الاسم الجمع عندما نريد ألا نكرر الاسم / الأسماء التي ذكرت سابقاً في الجملة:

Ex. This watch is the one my father bought me.

Ex. These books are the ones I borrowed from the library.

### 3- this - that / these - those

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة الآتية عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص / الأشياء القريبة منا.

this هؤلاء (للجمع القريب) these هذا/هذه (للمفرد القريب)

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة الآتية عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص / الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

that أولئك (للجمع البعيد) those تلك/ذلك (للمفرد البعيد)

## Speaking

وصف الملابس

### ① Describing clothes

- نصف الملابس من حيث الآتي:

size	المقاس	colour	اللون
shape	الشكل	material	المادة المستخدمة
age	العمر		

- ويراعى في الوصف اتباع ترتيب الصفات كما سبق شرحه:

Ex. It's a beautiful, big modern house.

كما يمكن أن نصف الملابس باستخدام صفات التفضيل كما يلي:

- This jacket is the nicest.
- This striped galabeya is the most traditional.

## 2) Shopping for clothes

شراء الملابس

- سنستخدم الأسئلة التالية لتدرب على (عدد) الملابس التي يمتلكها / يشتريها شخص ما:

- How many (pairs of) ..... do you have / own?
- Which ..... is / are your favourite?

- ونجيب عن الأسئلة السابقة كالتالي:

- I have four pairs of socks, but the yellow pair is my favourite.
- ونسأل عن المحل الذي نحب الشراء منه بالصيغة التالية:
- Which clothes shop do you like? Which one is your favourite?

## 3) At a clothes shop

في محل ملابس

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها بائع في محل للزبون:

- Can I help you?
- Does it fit you?
- The changing room is there.
- It's .... pounds.

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها الزبون للبائع:

- I'd like ..... like this.
- Could I try it on?
- Do you have a smaller size?
- How much is it / does it cost?
- I'll take it.

# General Exercises on Unit 10

## 1) Complete the following dialogue:

Noura is asking Jana about her clothes.

Noura : Do you have dresses, Jana?

Jana : ① .....

Noura : ② ..... ?

Jana : I have two, a yellow one and a blue one.

Noura : ③ ..... ?

Jana : The blue one is my favourite.

Noura : How many pairs of shoes do you have?

Jana : ④ ..... (3)

Noura : Do you have any trainers?

Jana : ⑤ .....



② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Exercises on Vocabulary

- Plastic, linen and glass are all  
a. foods                      b. plants                      c. subjects                      d. materials
- The price is not ..... It's very cheap. WB  
a. funny                      b. inexpensive                      c. expensive                      d. loose
- I can't find clothes to ..... me in this shop.  
a. keep                      b. fit                      c. hit                      d. try
- We ..... house to a bigger one last week.  
a. grew                      b. turned                      c. moved                      d. helped
- I'm saving these clothes for a special .....  
a. occasion                      b. crop                      c. industry                      d. equipment

### Exercises on Language

- We went to the island in a/an ..... boat. SB  
a. long, old, wooden                      b. wooden, long, old  
c. old, wooden, long                      d. old, long, wooden
- We saw a / an ..... statue in the museum. WB  
a. old, gold, big                      b. big, gold, old  
c. gold, big, old                      d. big, old, gold
- ..... market it amazing! There are so many cool things here. SB  
a. These                      b. That                      c. Those                      d. They
- The man wore ..... sunglasses. WB  
a. green, pretty, plastic                      b. pretty, plastic, green  
c. pretty, green, plastic                      d. plastic, green, pretty
- Those earrings are the ..... my mum gave me. SB  
a. ones                      b. none                      c. once                      d. one

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- These glasses don't fit me. I want the red ..... (one).
- Where did you buy ..... (these) pair of socks?

3. He wore a \_\_\_\_\_ (blue, nice, wool) jumper.

4. How much (be) that necklace in the window?

WB

**4** Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

SB

إجابة عنه في آخر الوحدة )

**"An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell"**

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة فقره الإنشائية:

- What is the advert about?
- What is the description of what you want to sell?
- How did you get it?
- How much is it?

- What is the description of what you want to sell?

- **How did you get it?**

- How much is it?

.. يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm selling a/an**

• It's

- It was a present from <sup>his father</sup>

- It is

**pounds.**



### A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Leila has ... pairs of sandals.

- a. three                      b. two                      c. four                      d. five

2. Leila bought them last .....

- a. year                      b. month                      c. week                      d. summer

### B Language Functions

② Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Sara is talking to Mona who bought some clothes last weekend.

Sara : Hi! Mona, where did you go last weekend?

Mona : ① .....

Sara : Shopping! ② .....

Mona : I bought a T-shirt and a pair of sunglasses.

Sara : ③ .....

Mona : I went with my brother and sister.

### C Grammar

③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look at these trousers. Which ... do you like more?

- a. one                      b. ones                      c. one's                      d. once

2. He ... some flowers and gave them to his mum.

- a. picked                      b. backed                      c. broke                      d. booked

3. Some people still like ... clothes.

- a. white, linen, loose                      b. linen, loose, white  
c. loose, white, linen                      d. loose, linen, white

4. Women prefer wearing ... in their ears.

- a. necklaces                      b. rings                      c. sunglasses                      d. earrings

5. He began to look ... a new job after he left his old one.

- a. forward                      b. up                      c. at                      d. for

## Reading Comprehension

### 4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The computer is widely used these days. you can find one in every house. Old people and kids use it. People use computers to help them with their work. Teachers, nowadays, use it in teaching different subjects. They can prepare their lessons by using the PowerPoint program. Students, also use it for their studies. The young use it to make friends all over the world using the internet. Businessmen use it in their trade to import and export their goods. They can do agreements from their offices instead of travelling long distances. By using the internet, you can read news from all over the world through any website.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do students use computers?
2. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
3. How are computers useful?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. \_\_\_\_\_ people can use computers.  
 a. Old                      b. Young                      c. Old and young      d. No
5. According to the passage, teachers can use the \_\_\_\_\_ program in teaching.  
 a. Access                      b. PowerPoint                      c. Excel                      d. Windows

### 5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. selling - a cool, - chest of drawers - I'm - old - wooden.
2. have - a - size - Do - have - you - smaller? ..
3. if - you - interested - Email - are - me. ....
4. a beautiful, - leather - , new, - black - I'm selling - handbag,...

## Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

امتاب عنه في اعر الوحدة ١

"Industry in Egypt"



# Paragraphs & Email

مشارك لمتابعة من مقال رويد الخارجي بروتال بالحددة

## Paragraph

### 1- An advert for a mobile phone I want to sell

I'm selling a mobile phone. It's new. I didn't use it. I already have one that is the same. It is very modern. It is black with a large touch screen. It can go on the internet. It has got an MP3. You can listen to music and watch videos on it. It can store 3000 phone numbers. It has got a wonderful camera. It can take many photos at one time. It's perfect for work or study. The price is LE 5000. If you are interested, email me for more information "hero55@yahoo.com".

### 2. Industry in Egypt

Egypt has many types of industry. Cotton industry is one of these. Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry.

### 3- A special occasion I am going to

I am going to a special occasion next week. My friend's sister is getting married next Sunday. He invited me to the wedding. It will be a big party. It will be at a big hotel. Unfortunately, I don't have something new to wear. I want to look smart in the party. I will go to a clothes shop tomorrow. I will buy a jacket. I saw it in its window last week. I will buy a new pair of shoes, too. I like black, leather shoes. I think these items will be perfect for this occasion.

## Paragraph

### 1- A description of the clothes I usually wear

**From** : tamer505@yahoo.com

**To** : ihabomar22@gmail.com

**Subject** : A description of my clothes

Dear Ihab,

How are you and your family? I want to tell you something about the clothes I wear. I usually wear casual clothes. They are very comfortable. They look nice. I don't like wearing traditional clothes. I need clothes that help me move freely. I buy my clothes by myself at the clothes shops. They are a little expensive, but I like that. I want to hear from you soon.

Yours,

Tamer

### 2- A description of a room in my house

**From** : hani(a)@yahoo.com

**To** : redamail@gmail.com

**Subject** : A room in my house

Dear Hani(a),

How are you and your family? I want to describe my bedroom. My room looks great, especially when I moved the furniture around. Now, the first thing you see when you walk into the room is my bed. There's a bookshelf above my bed where I put my school books. To the right of my bed, there is a desk with a lamp on top. On the floor there is a yellow carpet. I hope you enjoyed this description of my room! Please, write to me about your bedroom.

Best wishes

Yours,

Reda



### Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. .... is famous for growing crops to make material.  
 a. England                      b. Lebanon                      c. Egypt                      d. France
2. The Ancient Egyptians grew ... by the Nile.  
 a. fruit                      b. vegetables                      c. trees                      d. plants
3. Almost everyone in Ancient Egypt wore clothes made of ....  
 a. linen                      b. leather                      c. cotton                      d. string
4. The Ancient Egyptians also used the plants to make .....  
 a. boxes                      b. baskets                      c. bags                      d. shoes

### Dialogue Completion

② Complete the following dialogue:

Belal is at a clothes shop. He wants to buy a shirt.

Assistant : Can I help you?

Belal : ① .....

Assistant : What would you like to buy?

Belal : ② .....

Assistant : ③ .....

Belal : I want it blue.

Assistant : ④ .....

Belal : ⑤ .....

Assistant : It's 200 pounds.

Belal : Here you are. Thank you.

### Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

The type of clothes that is worn usually depends on the occasion. People that attend a wedding usually wear formal clothes. Men often wear suits and women wear dresses. Formal and smart clothes are often worn on special occasions. People often wear different clothes at work. Some jobs require people to wear special uniforms.

people often choose to wear comfortable clothes inside their own homes. This choice of clothes may be very different to the clothes they would wear outside. People often wear clothes which match their size, style and their age.

**A. Answer the following questions :**

6. What is the main idea of the passage?  
.....
7. What do people in some jobs have to wear?  
.....
8. Do you usually wear formal or casual clothes? Why?  
.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

9. People wear clothes depending on the .....  
a. time                      b. occasion                      c. money                      d. food
10. The underlined word "they" refers to .....  
a. clothes                      b. uniforms                      c. people                      d. homes
11. People often choose to wear comfortable clothes inside their own .....  
a. homes                      b. seas                      c. streets                      d. banks

**D. Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. These books are funny, but these ..... are very boring!  
a. ones                      b. once                      c. one                      d. only
2. A necklace is made of .....  
a. wool                      b. cotton                      c. wood                      d. gold
3. I love wearing my ..... gaabeya, because it is very cool in the summer.  
a. cotton, long, loose                      b. long, cotton, loose  
c. long, loose, cotton                      d. cotton, loose, long
4. All people know Mo Salah. He is very .....  
a. greedy                      b. famous                      c. colourful                      d. unfamous
5. Could I ..... this dress on?  
a. try                      b. dry                      c. fry                      d. drought
6. My friend took my ..... as we are the same .....  
a. colour                      b. time                      c. size                      d. subject
7. She likes to wear a beautiful necklace and other .....  
a. handbag                      b. jewellery                      c. glass                      d. plastic
8. I borrowed ..... story from the library yesterday.  
a. this                      b. there                      c. these                      d. those

9. People usually wear smart clothes for occasions.  
 a special b funny c loose d tight
- 10 They have to wear clothes in that special party.  
 a traditional b electric c wooden d dirty

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets;

1. He wore a . (long, cotton, red) galabeya. **WB**
2. These shoes aren't good, I want those . (one) in the window, please.
3. I am selling . (pair) of cool, new sunglasses. **SB**
4. I like . (these) leather belt.

### Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

**WB**

(مجاب عنه قبل التفسير)

"A special occasion you are going to"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What special occasion are you going to?
- Where will it be?
- What will you wear for it?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm going to .....
- It will be in .....
- I'll buy a/an ..... to wear for it.





**New  
Hello!**



# The future of our planet

## Objectives

### Reading:

Online posts about helping the environment;  
texts about a school trip; an article about  
teenage inventors; a postcard

### Writing:

A paragraph about an environmental  
problem; a holiday postcard

### Listening:

Identifying what is going to happen: a  
radio programme about environmental  
problems; a teacher talking about drones; a  
discussion about making arrangements

### Speaking:

Making predictions and future plans;  
suggesting solutions, giving opinions

### Language:

*be going to* and *the present continuous* for  
the future

### Life skills:

Problem solving, Negotiation; Collaboration



## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	save (d)	يُوفِّر / يوفِّر
rubbish	قمامة	reduce (d)	يقلِّل
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	damage (d)	يُتلف / يدمر
wildlife*	الحياة البرية	install (ed)	يُركَّب / يُنصَّب «جهاز أو تطبيق»
roof	سطح المنزل	pick (ed) up	يُلتَقِط
drought*	جفاف	plant (ed)	يُزرع
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	repair (ed)	يُصلَح
	(مولدات الطاقة من الرياح)	melt (ed)	يذوب / ينصهر
reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير (تصنيع)

## Nouns & Adjectives

Noun		Adjective	
environment	البيئة	environmental	بيئي
tradition	تقليد	traditional	تقليدي
music	موسيقى	musical	موسيقى
nature	الطبيعة	natural	طبيعي



## Vocabulary

planet	كوكب	equipment	معدات
climate change	تغير المناخ	local people	سكان محليون
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	desert animals	حيوانات صحراوية
traffic	المركبات في حركة المرور/ المرور	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
roof garden	حديقة فوق السطح	trekking	رحلة شاقة «على الأقدام»
online post	مَشْهُور على الإنترنت	washing machine	غسالة
race	سباق	electric cars	سيارات تعمل بالكهرباء
extra	إضافي / زائد	events	أحداث
path	مسار	hunter	صياد
solution	حل	commentator	معلق التلفاز
intention	نية	approach (ed)	يقترب من
vehicle	مركبة «عربة»	flood (ed) (n)	فيض / فيضان
finishing line	خط النهاية	improve (d)	يحسِّن / يطور
wherever	في أي مكان		

\* الحياة البرية هي الكائنات التي تعيش في البرية سواء حيوانات أو نباتات

## Verbs & Nouns that go together

install solar panels	تركب ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث
recycle mobile phones	يعيد تصليح هواتف محمولة	cause pollution	يسبب التلوث
pick up rubbish	يلتقط القمامة	damage the environment	يدمر البيئة
plant trees	يلرع أشجار	use too much water	يستخدم الكثير من الماء
reuse plastic bottles	يعيد استخدام زجاجات بلاستيك	leave rubbish	يترك القمامة
save wildlife	يحفظ الحيوانات والنباتات في البرية	play music	يعرف موسيقى
		build hotels	يبني فنادق
		win a race	يفوز بسباق

## Expressions & Prepositions

get worse	يزداد سوءاً	make money	يكسب مال
later this year	في وقت لاحق هذا العام	save ....from	يلقى ..... من
keep ....safe	يحافظ على سلامة.....	stop...from	يمنع..... من
throw away	يتخلص من	on your own	بنفسك/ بمفردك
catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس	dangerous for	خطير على
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	go for h's holiday	يذهب في إجازته
go trekking	يقوم برحلة على الأقدام	at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الاسبوع
come on quick	تعال بسرعة	across the desert	عبر الصحراء
The alarm o'clock didn't go off	المنبه لم يرن	change into	يتحول إلى

## Conjugations of

### Irregular Verbs

#### Present

catch	يلحق بـ / يمسك
win	يفوز
forget	ينسى
ring	يرن
throw	يرمي - يلقي - يتخلص من

#### Past simple

caught
won
forgot
rang
threw

#### Past Participle

caught
won
forgotten
rung
thrown

## Word

## Meaning

## Opposite

drought	جفاف	dryness	flood	فيضان
repair	يصلح	fix	damage	يتلف
install	تركب/ يثبت (أجهزة/ تطبيق)	set up	uninstall	يزيل تثبيت
local	محلي	national	international	دولي
reduce	يقلل	decrease	increase	يزيد

## Definitions

install	تركب / يثبت جهاز	put + <i>something</i> somewhere so it is ready to use	١- تركيب
reduce	يقلل	make something less in <i>amount</i> or size	٢- كمالة
repair	يصالح	fix something that is <i>broken</i>	٣- يصلح
save	ينقذ	make something safe from <i>danger</i>	٤- يخلص
solar panels	الواح الطاقة الشمسية	equipment that changes the sun's light into <i>electricity</i>	٥- خطر
wind turbine	توربينات الرياح	equipment that uses the <i>wind</i> to make electricity	٦- كهرباء
roof	سطح المنزل	the top part of a building that protects it from rain, the sun, etc	٧- داء

## Language Notes

- ① environment / environmental nature / natural  
music / musical tradition / traditional

- يمكن أن تحول بعض الأسماء إلى صفات بإضافة (al) إلى الاسم:

Ex. It's a *tradition* to colour eggs in Sham el Nessim.

Ex. The *galabeya* is a *traditional* item of clothing in Egypt.

- ② because of / because

• because of + noun بسبب

Ex. I was late *because of* the bad traffic.

• because + فعل + فاعل لأن

Ex. I was late *because* the traffic was bad.

- ③ The prefix "re-"

- بصيغة البادئة "re-" لبعض الأفعال لتعطي معنى مرة أخرى "again" مثل:

reuse	يعيد استخدام	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
recycle	يعيد تدوير / تصديق	redo	يعيد فعل

- ④ electric / electricity / electronic

• electric كهربائي (يعمل بالكهرباء)

Ex. *Electric* cars are good for the environment.

• electricity كهرباء

Ex. Solar panels make *electricity*



Ex My little brother likes electronic games.

### Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Scientists are trying to solve \_\_\_\_\_ problems.  
a. environment      b. environmental      c. tradition      d. music
- I was late \_\_\_\_\_ the heavy traffic.  
a. because      b. reason      c. cause      d. because of
- We add the prefix \_\_\_\_\_ to the verb "use" to give the meaning "again".  
a. re-      b. dis-      c. un-      d. bi-
- Is your cooker \_\_\_\_\_ or gas?  
a. electronic      b. electricity      c. electric      d. electrician



## Reading

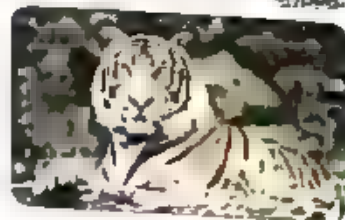
SB Page (45)

The rivers in Kaziranga National Park<sup>(1)</sup> in India often flood<sup>(2)</sup> and the problem is getting worse because of climate change<sup>(3)</sup>. Later this year, I'm going to help my father to save wildlife<sup>(4)</sup> from the flood water. This can be dangerous, but my father works in the park and he knows how to keep me safe!

There's a lot of air pollution<sup>(5)</sup> from the traffic<sup>(6)</sup> in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce<sup>(7)</sup> air pollution - so next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof<sup>(8)</sup> of our school and make a school roof garden.

I love phones, but I know that throwing away<sup>(9)</sup> old phones can be bad for the environment. I started a project<sup>(10)</sup> in school to recycle<sup>(11)</sup> mobile phones. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones and we're going to reuse<sup>(12)</sup> parts from them to repair<sup>(13)</sup> other phones.

استمع إلى النصوص



- 1- حديقة كاريرانجا
- 2- فيض
- 3- تغير المناخ
- 4- الحياة البرية
- 5- تلوث الهواء
- 6- المركبات في حركة
- 7- المزور
- 8- السطح
- 9- التخلص من
- 10- مشروع
- 11- يعيد تصنيع
- 12- يعيد استخدام
- 13- يصلح

Say it correctly

- drought      تنطق الحروف (d, r, a, u, g, h, t) في كلمة drought مثل كلمة (out).
- flood      ينطق حرفي (oo) في كلمة flood مثل حرف (u) في كلمة bus.
- pollution      ينطق حرف (u) في كلمة pollution مثل حرف (u) في كلمة (blue) وليس مثل (u) في كلمة (uniform).



# Audioscript

SB Page (46)



Narrator (1)

**Boy** : Oh no! Look at the time! It's 9 o'clock! Come on quick!

Narrator (2)

**Girl 1** : The water's **quite** cold at first but it's lovely. Come on, Huda! Come and join me!<sup>(1)</sup>

**Girl 2** : OK, I'm coming!

Narrator (3)

**Voice** : We are now approaching<sup>(2)</sup> Station Square<sup>(3)</sup>.

**Boy 1** : Is this our stop<sup>(4)</sup>?

**Boy 2** : Yes, it is. Come on.

Narrator (4)

**Commentator** : And they're near the **finishing line**<sup>(5)</sup> now and suddenly Fanda seems to be running faster. Nothing can stop her now. Just look at her go!

Narrator (5)

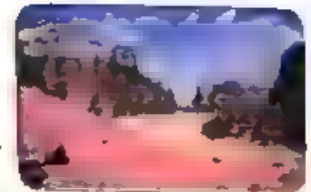
**Boy** : Oh, I'm tired. But it's only nine o'clock!

**Woman** : Yes, but you've got school in the morning, Omar.

**Boy** : You're right. Good night, Mum. Good night, Ola.

- ١- هاديا
- ٢- اقترابنا الى
- ٣- ريفلز من
- ٤- مبداء المحطة
- ٥- محطة
- ٦- هعلق للفر
- ٧- خط النهاية

SB Page (47)



**Speaker:** **Wadi Rum**<sup>(1)</sup> is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and wildlife. **Unfortunately**<sup>(2)</sup>, Wadi Rum has some **environmental**<sup>(3)</sup> problems.

Tourists help the **local**<sup>(4)</sup> people make money<sup>(5)</sup>, but when tourists go **trekking**<sup>(6)</sup> in the desert, they often leave **rubbish**<sup>(7)</sup>, too.

Some tourists drive across the desert in cars: they don't use roads or **paths**<sup>(8)</sup>, but drive **wherever**<sup>(9)</sup> they want to and this can **damage**<sup>(10)</sup> plants and wildlife.

The hotels use lots of water which can be a problem in the desert. But they are building new hotels so even more tourists will go there.

Another big problem is **hunters**<sup>(11)</sup> who kill the desert animals. They shouldn't do this but there aren't enough people to stop them. There is much less wildlife now than in the past and soon there won't be any.

- ١- وادي روم بالأردن
- ٢- لسوء الحظ
- ٣- بيئي
- ٤- محلي
- ٥- يكسب أموال
- ٦- يقوم برحلة على
- ٧- الأقدام
- ٨- فمرات / مسارات
- ٩- حيثما
- ١٠- يثقل
- ١١- صيادون

# Exercises

## on Vocabulary

Lessons 1 & 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- 1 The desert is a difficult ☐ environment ☐ to live in.  
a environment b environmental c tradition d music
- 2 There was a fire in the flats and firefighters ☐ a family.  
a recycled b saved c reduced d repaired
- 3 We like playing ☐ together.  
a tradition b musical c music d environment
- 4 My uncle helped us to ☐ a new washing machine this morning.  
a reduce b plant c leave d install
- 5 My mobile doesn't work, so I asked someone to ☐ it.  
a recycle b repeat c repair d replay
- 6 Green inventions don't ☐ the environment.  
a help b clean c need d damage
- 7 People use ☐ to make energy from the sun.  
a wind turbines b time machines c solar panels d time lines
- 8 There is a ☐ because of the heavy rain.  
a flood b drought c float d flour
- 9 There is a ☐ as it hasn't rained for a long time.  
a cloud b flood c storm d drought
- 10 I will help my father save ☐ from the flood water.  
a earthquake b life c wildlife d sun

### Bit by Bit Exercises

11. We can get electricity from ☐ turbines.  
a. wind b. grass c. wing d. window
12. We should ☐ trees to clean the air we breathe.  
a. recycle b. burn c. plant d. cut down
13. We need to ☐ the amount of salt in our food because it isn't healthy.  
a. increase b. reduce c. add d. recycle
14. The sun ☐ the snow.  
a. floated b. killed c. melted d. eaten
15. We should ☐ plastic, paper and glass to help save the environment.  
a. cycle b. burn c. recycle d. kill

16. The supermarket encourages people to plastic bags  
 a. record      b. redo      c. reuse      d. rewrite
17. Don't drop . Put it in the bin, please.  
 a. rubbish      b. music      c. tradition      d. nature
18. Malak goes up the of her house to watch the stars every night  
 a. ceiling      b. roof      c. garage      d. bathroom



## Language

### Future Tense

(be) going to + Inf. سوف

#### Form التكوين

I	am	} (be) going to + Inf. مصدر الفعل
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

#### Usage الاستخدام

1- يستخدم (be) going to + Inf للتعبير عن نية / خطة مستقبلية / قرار لفعل شيء في المستقبل ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

نية Intention - سوي Intend - يخطط / خطة plan - قرار decision - يقرر decide

Ex. I'm going to help my father.

Ex. He isn't going to throw away his old phone.

2- يستخدم (be) going to + Inf أيضا للتنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل في وجود دليل (نراه أو نعرفه) ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

دليل evidence - تنبؤ prediction - يتنبأ predict

Ex. It is going to rain. (I can see some dark clouds.)

Ex. The students are going to do very well in their exams. (They always get good marks.)

#### Question السؤال

{
   
 (كلمة استفهام) + is      + subject + going to + Inf...?
   
 are

Ex. What are you going to do?

Ex. Is she going to help the environment?



# Exercises on Vocabulary

• Lessons 1 & 2 •

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Number four is at the front. She \_\_\_\_\_ the race.  
a. will win      b. is going to win      c. is winning      d. wins
2. What are you \_\_\_\_\_ to do at the weekend?  
a. go      b. going      c. goes      d. went
3. There are many storms. The man's hat \_\_\_\_\_ come off.  
a. will      b. shall      c. going to      d. is going to
4. He is late so he \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.  
a. isn't catching      b. isn't going to catch      c. catches      d. caught
5. We are going \_\_\_\_\_ tennis next week.  
a. to playing      b. play      c. plays      d. to play

## Bit by Bit Exercises

6. The traffic is slow. We \_\_\_\_\_ to be late.  
a. gone      b. are going      c. going      d. are gone
7. It's very cold. I \_\_\_\_\_ a jacket tonight.  
a. am wearing      b. wear      c. am going to wear      d. wore
8. She \_\_\_\_\_ to the clothes shop to buy a dress. She already decided.  
a. walk      b. walking      c. are walking      d. is going to walk
9. A: "Any plans for the weekend?"  
B: "Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ some furniture for my new flat."  
a. is buying      b. am going to buy      c. buy      d. buying
10. Be careful! This old tree \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. falls      b. is fallen      c. fell      d. is going to fall
11. I can't ride a bike very well. Oh, no I \_\_\_\_\_ crash.  
a. will      b. shall      c. must      d. is going to
12. I think Magdy \_\_\_\_\_ the manager of the company. He is a hard working person.  
a. is going to become      b. is becoming      c. became      d. becomes
13. \_\_\_\_\_ to travel to Luxor?  
a. You will      b. You are going      c. Will you      d. Are you going
14. How is she \_\_\_\_\_ help the environment?  
a. gone      b. going      c. going to      d. goes

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The boy and his father are going to \_\_\_\_\_ (watching) a football match.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ (going) to do extra homework tonight.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (is going to) help in a charity. I've planned for that.
4. I feel terrible now. I think I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) sick.

## Speaking

### 1 Talking about future plans

يُستخدم **(be) going to** عن الخطط المستقبلية

يسأل باستخدام **(be) going to** عن الخطط المستقبلية كالآتي:

What are you going to do at the weekend? ماذا ستفعل في عطلة نهاية الاسبوع؟

Where are you going to go for your next holiday? اين ستذهب في اجارتك القادمة؟

How are you going to improve your English? كيف ستطور لغتك الانجليزية؟

Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?

هل ستعيد تدوير هاتفك عندما يصبح قديم؟

### 2 Making predictions

التنبؤ

يستخدم **(be) going to** للتعبير عن التنبؤ بناء على دليل كالآتي:

Evidence دليل	Prediction تنبؤ
- The students didn't do their homework.	- The teacher is going to be angry. - They are going to have to do extra homework tonight.
- My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.	- I'm going to be late for school
- It's lunchtime but I forgot my lunch.	- I'm going to be hungry.
- It's nearly the end of the hot days	- I'm going to go to school.
- Hanna's phone is ringing	- She's going to answer it

## 2) Suggesting solutions to environmental problems

### Environmental problems

ادخل ارجح حلول للمشكلات البيئية

#### المشكلات البيئية

1. Tourists leave rubbish. يترك السياح قمامة.
2. Some tourists drive across the desert which can damage plants and animals. على بعض السياح سيارتهم عبر الصحراء مما يمكن أن يتلف النباتات والحياة البرية.
3. Hotels use lots of water. تستخدم الفنادق الكثير من المياه.
4. Hunters kill desert animals. يقوم الصيادون بقتل الحيوانات الصحراوية.

نفسر عن الحلول للمشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

- Make . . . more expensive نجعل . . . . . أعلى ثمنا
- Stop people from . . -ing نمنع الناس من . . . . .
- People should stop driving across the desert. يجب أن يتوقف الناس عن القيادة عبر الصحراء .
- Use camels. . . سنستخدم الجمال . . . . .
- Recycle . نعيد تصنيع . . . . .
- Ask local people to نطلب من السكان المحليين أن . . . . .
- Build . . نقوم ببناء . . . . .

## General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Alaa are talking about holiday.

سنة 2023

Ahmed : Hi, Alaa. How are you?

Alaa : ① . . . . . , what about you?

Ahmed : Fine, thanks. ② . . . . . ?

Alaa : I'm going to travel to America next holiday.

Ahmed : America! Why?

Alaa : ③ . . . . .

Ahmed : How long are you going to stay?

Alaa : ④ . . . . .

Ahmed : ⑤ . . . . . ?

Alaa : I am going to stay at my uncle's house.

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Wadi Rum is a large \_\_\_\_\_ of desert in the south of Jordan.  
a. time                      b. stone                      c. rock                      d. area
- I think electric cars will help to \_\_\_\_\_ pollution in the future.  
a. increase                      b. add                      c. win                      d. reduce
- I got up late because my alarm clock didn't \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. throw away                      b. get off                      c. put away                      d. go off
- She has decided. She \_\_\_\_\_ abroad.  
a. travel                      b. travelling  
c. is going to travel                      d. travels
- How are you going to \_\_\_\_\_ your English?  
a. improve                      b. improv ng                      c. improves                      d. improved

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- Mum is making a lot of food. Some people \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) us today.
- My brothers and I are going to \_\_\_\_\_ (watching) Al Ahly final match at the stadium.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ (is) you going to do in the future?

④ Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Salah telling him what you think the weather's going to be today.

- Your name is Rami and your email address is ramialaa@hotmail.com.

- Your friend's email address is salahzaki@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Why do you send this email?
- How was the weather in the morning?
- I think it will be later?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- What do you think the weather \_\_\_\_\_
- The weather was \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning.
- I think it's going to be \_\_\_\_\_



## Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد	environment-friendly / green	صديق للبيئة
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	location	موقع
suitable	مناسب	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف	bacteria	بكتيريا (اسم جمع)
conservation	حماية / الحفاظ على الكائنات	invention	اختراع
lend	يقرض / يسلف	filter (ed) (n)	بفلتر - يصفى - مصفى / فلتر
system	نظام	control (led)	بتحكم في



## Vocabulary

seeds	بذور	underground water	مياه جوفية
forest	غابة	canal	قناة مائية
jungle	غابة استوائية	volunteer	متطوع
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	Egyptian tortoises	سلاحف مصرية
gate	بوابة	recycling bin	سلة إعادة التدوير
diving trips	رحلات الغطس	smart app	تطبيق ذكي
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	season	فصل من فصول السنة
sunhat	قبعة للوقاية من الشمس	irrigate (d)	بروي
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	solve (d)	يحل
ocean	محيط	determine (d)	يحدد
farmlands	أراضي زراعية	film (ed)	يصور فيلم / فيديو
sea life	حياة (حيوانات) بحرية	return (ed)	يعود
midday	منتصف النهار	kill (ed)	يقتل
form	استمارة	present (ed)	يقدم
STEM School		drop (ped)	يلقى - يسقط

مدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات

&

available for

### Irregular Verbs

### Past simple

Word

## Definitions

**filters (n)**

green	صديق للبيئة	good for the environment
conservation	حماية / الحفاظ على الكائنات	the protection of natural things such as forests, birds and animals
control	يلتحكم في	make a person or object do what you want
suitable	مناسب	acceptable or right for someone or something
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف	a tropical tree, found near water, whose roots grow partly above ground

١- مناسب  
٢- مفيد  
٣- صديق  
٤- جذور



## Language Notes

### ① Information

- تعامل كلمة **information** معاملة المفرد ولا يضع قبلها أداة نكرة (a / an) ويأتي بعدها فعل لفاعل مفرد **is / has**

Ex. The **information** he gave me was important.

- وينطبق الكلام السابق على الكلمات **news / advice / equipment**

### ② bacteria

- تعامل كلمة **bacteria** بكتيريا معاملة الجمع ويأتي بعدها فعل لفاعل جمع ومفردتها (**bacterium**).

Ex. Some **bacteria** cause diseases.

### ③ invent / discover

• **invent** يخترع شيء لم يكن موجود

Ex. Do you know who **invented** the mobile phone?

• **discover** يكتشف شيء موجود ولم يكن معروف

Ex. Dr Ahmed Zewail **discovered** the femtosecond.

### ④ look forward to

• **look forward to** يتطلع إلى - يأتي بعدها (noun / v-ing)

Ex. It's cold. I'm **looking forward to** visiting Aswan.

## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My **information** ..... that Mohammed Salah wants to stay with Liverpool.  
a. are                      b. were                      c. is                      d. have
- Bacteria** ..... usually dangerous for us.  
a. has                      b. is                      c. was                      d. are

3. Graham Bell \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone.  
 a. invented      d. recycled      c. discovered      d. hurt
4. I'm looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ to Alex.  
 a. go      d. going      c. to go      d. to going



## Additional Exercises

SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Scientist** : Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. we can use them. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

- ١- طائرة بدون طيار
- ٢- جهاز تحكم عن بعد
- ٣- توصيل الطلبات
- ٤- تطير فوق
- ٥- يفتحص
- ٦- طاقة الرياح
- ٧- يلقى بالدور

**Boy** : Really? How can we do that?

**Scientist** : Well, companies are going to use drones a lot instead of lorries to deliver goods. This is going to help the environment because drones don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

**Boy** : That's interesting.

**Scientist** : Yes, and we are also going to use drones to help wildlife. Drones can go to places where people can't go. We can see if there are any problems. For example, we can use drones to help save wildlife after floods or fires.

**Boy** : Can they help people, too?

**Scientist** : Of course! We can send drones to dangerous places. For example, we are starting to use drones to check wind turbines. This is not an easy job. It is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. We can even use drones to plant trees. Drones can drop seeds onto the ground in places that people can't go to. And they don't need to stop and have a rest!

WB Page (102)

**Khaled** : It's 12 o'clock on Saturday, but I'm going to be busy for the next few days. So, what am I doing? This evening, I'm going to the cinema to see a movie. Then tomorrow, I'm playing basketball in the park. The day after tomorrow, I'm helping my uncle in his shop after school. Then, next Saturday, we're taking my cousins to the desert. That should be fun. But I'm really looking forward to our holidays! We're flying to Dubai, but that's in nine days' time. I can't wait!

- ١- المسرح
- ٢- مسرحية
- ٣- فيلم
- ٤- يتطاول إلى
- ٥- اليونان



# Reading

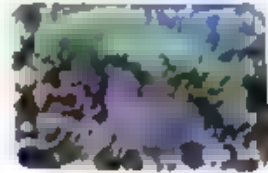
SB P. (49)

Dear parents,

The bus will be leaving for Ras Mohammad from the school tomorrow at 6.30 am and returning in five days' time at 12.30 pm on Thursday 11<sup>th</sup> June. Please make sure that your daughter has suitable clothes for the swimming and diving trips to the coral reefs on Monday and Tuesday. They will also need good trainers and a sunhat for the visit to the mangrove forest on Wednesday. We will be taking part in the conservation project in the mangrove forest and helping to plant new trees.

Hi Laila

We aren't sharing a room. Mrs Nagwa says that the older students have to help look after the younger girls. Can we meet at the school tomorrow morning at 6 am? I need to give you the trainers I'm buying you so that you can put them in your suitcase. Habiba



- ١- بنات
- ٢- ملابس
- ٣- التمتع بالمرحلية
- ٤- حذاء رياضي
- ٥- فنية واقية من الشمس
- ٦- غلة المصروف
- ٧- يشارك في
- ٨- حماية / محافظة
- ٩- يشارك
- ١٠- رويات
- ١١- نسل
- ١٢- حقيبة سفر

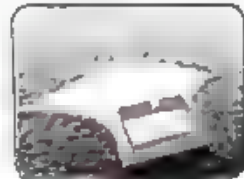
SB Page (50)

## Fantastic green inventions by teenagers

Green inventions are environment-friendly(1). These inventions present solutions(2) to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

Boyan Slat was a student in Holland<sup>TM</sup> when he invented a system to take plastic rubbish from the sea. There is a lot of plastic in our seas, which kills lots of wildlife. Boyan's system is called Ocean Cleanup Array. It uses machines whose arms have lots of filters on them. These filters take the plastic out of the sea water, without hurting sea life.

Deepika Kurup was 14 when she invented a green system for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink. When she visited her grandparents in India, Deepika saw children drinking water from a dirty canal. Before this, systems for cleaning water were expensive and used dangerous chemicals which pollute the environment. Deepika's system is cheap and uses light from the sun to kill bacteria in water.



- ١- صديقة للبيئة
- ٢- لتقديم حلول
- ٣- دولة هولندا
- ٤- نظام
- ٥- نظام تنظيف المحيط
- ٦- مصافي / فلتر
- ٧- الكائنات البحرية
- ٨- نظام صديق للبيئة
- ٩- مواد كيميائية
- ١٠- البكتيريا

Five Egyptian students from Kafr El-Shekh STEM School were able to develop an app<sup>(1)</sup> to help small farmers save water and energy. In this app, farmers complete a form<sup>(2)</sup> with information about their farmlands<sup>(3)</sup>. This form is connected to a smart app which tells farmers the right amount of water that they need to irrigate<sup>(4)</sup> their lands. The app also determines<sup>(5)</sup> the amount of energy and the number of workers the lands need, according to<sup>(6)</sup> their location<sup>(7)</sup> and the season<sup>(8)</sup>.

- ١- تطبيق / برنامج
- ٢- نموذج / ورقة
- ٣- أرض / مزرعة
- ٤- ري / سقي
- ٥- يحدد / يقرر
- ٦- يحدد / يقرر
- ٧- مكان / موقع
- ٨- فصل / موسم



Say it correctly

١- يحدد / يقرر (determine) في كلمة determine مثل نطق كلمة determine مع اختلاف اول حرف.

## Videoscript

SB Page (50)

### Narrator:

The Red Sea is very important. People visit from around the world to go scuba diving<sup>(1)</sup> and it's also home to many different species<sup>(2)</sup> of wildlife, such as fish, turtles and birds.

The Red Sea also contains many coral reefs. A coral reef is a collection<sup>(3)</sup> of colourful plants, animals and rocks that you can find under the sea near the coast<sup>(4)</sup>. Coral reefs are important because they are a habitat<sup>(5)</sup> for lots of underwater animals, like this sea anemone<sup>(6)</sup> and this shark. But many coral reefs around the world are in danger. They are going to disappear because the water in the seas and oceans is getting warmer. The water in seas and oceans is going to be too hot for coral reefs in the future. Plastic is also damaging the reefs.

There are conservation groups that want to conserve<sup>(7)</sup> the world's coral reefs. One of these is the Red Sea Environment Centre in Egypt. Scuba divers go to the coral reefs in the Red Sea twice a year to investigate<sup>(8)</sup> their condition<sup>(9)</sup>.

The coral reefs in the Red Sea and all around the world are beautiful. We are going to lose them if we don't look after them.

- ١- الغطس / سباحة
- ٢- أنواع
- ٣- مجموعة
- ٤- الشاطئ
- ٥- موطن
- ٦- شقائق النعمان البحر
- ٧- يحافظ على
- ٨- يتحقق من
- ٩- حالة / وضع

# Exercises on Vocabulary

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. \_\_\_\_\_ don't need pilots to fly them.  
a. Planes                      b. Jets                      c. Drones                      d. Helicopters
2. A lot of animals live in the \_\_\_\_\_ forests next to the sea. **WB**  
a. improve                      b. mangrove                      c. roof                      d. gloves
3. I love playing computer games because I can \_\_\_\_\_ what the people do on the screen. **WB**  
a. grow                      b. irrigate                      c. hurt                      d. control
4. Scientists can use a \_\_\_\_\_ to take out small pieces of plastic from rivers. **WB**  
a. filter                      b. spoon                      c. gate                      d. book
5. T-shirt and jeans are not \_\_\_\_\_ for the party.  
a. suitable                      b. suitcase                      c. cheap                      d. suit
6. Planes, mobiles and helicopters are great \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. invitations                      b. pollutions                      c. views                      d. inventions
7. I decided to join the \_\_\_\_\_ project to help the environment.  
a. conservation                      b. conversation                      c. ocean                      d. liquid
8. Green inventions are \_\_\_\_\_. **SB**  
a. environment-friendly                      b. environment-friend  
c. environmental                      d. environmentalist
9. \_\_\_\_\_ are microorganisms that are too small to see and can make you ill. **SB**  
a. Food                      b. Boys                      c. Cats                      d. Bacteria

## Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Farmers use \_\_\_\_\_ to kill insects that destroy their crops.  
a. juice                      b. soup                      c. sweets                      d. chemicals
11. He will sell his house for a good price because of its good \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. location                      b. photo                      c. situation                      d. action
12. When did people first start using a \_\_\_\_\_ for TVs?  
a. mouse                      b. remote control                      c. keyboard                      d. mirror
13. Mr Mohammed has developed a new \_\_\_\_\_ for learning English.  
a. filter                      b. match                      c. train                      d. system
14. Tap water should pass through a \_\_\_\_\_ before we drink it.  
a. fan                      b. filter                      c. phone                      d. plane



# Language

## 1- The present continuous زمن المضارع المستمر - للتعبير عن المستقبل.

### Form النظم

I	am	} (not) verb + ing.
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

### Usage الاستخدام

1- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات في المستقبل (غالبا مع الإشارة إلى وقت أو تاريخ يدل على المستقبل) ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

يعد / يحضر preparation - يعد/ يحضر prepare - ترتيبات arrangements - ترتيب arrange

Ex. I **am visiting** the dentist at half past four next Thursday.

Ex. We **are catching** our train at 12.30. We **aren't taking** the bus.

2- يستخدم المضارع المستمر أيضا للتعبير عن حدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام)

Ex. She **is drawing** a picture now.

3- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت ولم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام)

Ex. My sister **is learning** French.

4- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة.

Ex. They **are painting** the school this week.

### Question السؤال

am  
is + (كلمة استفهام)  
are } + subject + verb + ing?

Ex. When **are you painting** your house?

Ex. **Are you travelling** to Luxor tomorrow?

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Look!	انظر	Listen!	استمع
now	الآن	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة/ في الوقت الحالي
at present	في الوقت الحاضر	tomorrow	غدا
next (week-month-year)	(الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم		



## (The) going to / The present continuous



الزمن الفرق بينهما هو الاستخدام

- لا يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن شيء في المستقبل  
 I'll go to London tonight? ✓ ✓ ✓  
 Is it coming tonight? ✗ ✗ ✗

الجملة صحيحة

• يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية حيث تحدث عن معلومات غير مهمة وخطط غير مؤكدة أما المضارع المستمر يعبر عن خطط مستقبلية مؤكدة ومرتبطة بقرينة كحجز تذكرة سفر أو حجرة في فندق.

- I'm going to travel to Alexandria next month.  
 (هذه بنية المتحدث ولم يتخذ أي ترتيبات للسفر)
- I'm traveling to Alexandria next month  
 (هذا يعبر عن أن المتحدث أجرى ترتيبات السفر مثل حجز تذكرة السفر ومكان الإقامة)

- لا يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث خارج سيطرة البشر في المستقبل  
 - Summer will be next month and the snow is going to melt. ✓ ✓ ✓

الجملة صحيحة

~~Summer will be next month and the snow is melting.~~ ✗ ✗ ✗

الجملة خطأ

**Ex. I'm travelling to Aswan now.**

هذا المتحدث يقصد أنه يسافر إلى أسوان في الوقت الحاضر

**Ex. I'm travelling to Aswan tomorrow.**

هذا المتحدث يقصد أنه سيسافر إلى أسوان غدا

- لاحظ الفرق بين الجملتين السابقتين في المضارع المستمر حيث تعبر الأولى عن حدث في الوقت الحاضر ويدل على ذلك وجود كلمات مثل:

at the moment / now / Look! / Listen!

والجملة الثانية تعبر عن مستقبل ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

next (week-month-year) tomorrow - in ten minutes

### 2- Time Expressions      التعبيرات الزمنية

- إدرس الشكل الآتي ولاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية المستخدمة من الحاضر حتى المستقبل:

<b>Now</b>	in five minutes →	this afternoon / evening →	tomorrow →
	the day after tomorrow →	next week →	in 10 days' time →
	in three weeks	<b>Future</b>	



- حرف الجر (in) في التعبيرات السابقة يعطى معنى (في خلال فترة) [.....]
- تأتي عادة التعبيرات الزمنية إما في آخر الجملة أو في أولها.

**Ex. I'm going to New York next week**  
**OR. Next week I'm going to New York.**

# **Exercises on Language**

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## **SB, WB & Exams Exercises**

1. It's 1.55. Ayman \_\_\_\_\_ to his 2 pm music lesson in five minutes.  
a. goes                      b. was going                      c. went                      d. is going
2. Judy is working on her project .....  
a. tomorrow                      b. yesterday                      c. in the past                      d. ago
3. My cousins ..... at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 am.  
a. arrived                      b. are arriving                      c. arrives                      d. arriving
4. It is Tuesday today, so Thursday is .....  
a. tomorrow                      b. next week  
c. the day after tomorrow                      d. tonight
5. Our class ..... a museum next week. Our teacher has bought the tickets.  
a. going to visit                      b. visits                      c. is visiting                      d. visit
6. Saliman ..... buy a new phone. It's his intention.  
a. will                      b. is                      c. going to                      d. is going to

## **Bit by Bit Exercises**

7. I ..... an interesting story at the moment.  
a. reads                      b. going to read                      c. am reading                      d. reading
8. I made all the arrangements. We ..... early tomorrow.  
a. are travelling                      b. travel  
c. are going to travel                      d. travelled
9. Mum prepared the meal. We ..... in five minutes.  
a. were eating                      b. eating                      c. are eating                      d. going to eat
10. The Minister ..... our school next week. We made all the preparations.  
a. is going to visit                      b. visits                      c. is visited                      d. is visiting
11. Sorry I can't see you tonight. I ..... my lessons.  
a. will study                      b. is going to study                      c. is studying                      d. studied
12. Look! A big bird ..... in the sky.  
a. flies                      b. is going to fly                      c. is flying                      d. flew

13. Everything is arranged, I \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport.  
 a. leaving      b. am going to leave      c. leave      d. 'm leaving
14. We \_\_\_\_\_ the Eiffel Tower next Wednesday. We booked the tickets.  
 a. are visiting      b. are going to visit      c. visit      d. visited
15. Everything is arranged, I \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport.  
 a. leaving      b. am going to leave      c. leave      d. 'm leaving
16. We \_\_\_\_\_ the Eiffel Tower next Wednesday. We booked the tickets.  
 a. are visiting      b. are going to visit      c. visit      d. visited
17. What \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment?  
 a. do you do      b. are you going to do  
 c. are you doing      d. will you do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Samy \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) to London. He's got the tickets. 2 21
2. At the moment, we \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) in a small hotel near the lake. SB
3. Let's run, because the bus \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) in ten minutes. WB
4. Ali \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) to America next week.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) the Egyptian Museum tomorrow. He bought the tickets.
6. Fawzy \_\_\_\_\_ (not work) next week because he has a holiday. WB

## Speaking

### 1 Discussing inventions and environmental problems

مناقشة الاختراعات والمشكلات البيئية:

نسال ونجيب عن الاختراعات المستخدمة لحل المشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

#### Question

#### Answer

A: Which do you think is the best or most useful invention?

ما هي أفضل / أكثر الاختراعات نفعاً في رأيك؟

B: I think drones are the best.

اعتقد الطائرات بدون طيار هي الأفضل.

A: How can drones be a useful way to solve environmental problems?

كيف يمكن أن تكون الطائرات بدون طيار مفيدة لحل المشكلات البيئية؟

B: They can be used to make deliveries.

يمكن استخدامها في توصيل الطلبات.

A: How can that help the environment?

كيف يساعد ذلك البيئة؟

B: They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

لا يحدثوا ضوضاء ولا يسببوا تلوث الهواء مثل سيارات النقل.

## ② Discussing future arrangements / plans

مناقشة الترتيبات والخطة المستقبلية.

- يستخدم (the present continuous) للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية.

- رده إلى شرح الفوائد المتوقعة.

A What are you doing this afternoon?

ماذا ستفعل بعد الظهر؟

B: I'm doing my maths lesson.

سأقوم بمذاكرة درس الرياضيات.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 3 &amp; 4



## ① Complete the following dialogue:

Aya and Manal are talking about future arrangements.

Aya : What are you doing this afternoon?

Manal : ① .....

Aya : ② .....

Manal : Because my grandmother is ill.

Aya : ③ .....

Manal : No, I'm not going out this evening.

Aya : Are you going to watch TV?

Manal : ④ .....

Aya : OK! See you tomorrow at school.

Manal : ⑤ .....

## ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People sometimes use a ..... to film animals from the sky.

WB

a washing machine    b. headphone    c. drone    d. keyboard

2. Volunteers are working on a ..... project to save Egyptian tortoises.

WB

a conversation    b communication    c. connection    d conservation

3. Mr Osman is looking for a ..... place to hold the meeting.

a. noisy    b. suitable    c. dark    d. dirty

4. The water in this lake is used to ..... the land.

a. wash    b clean    c. irrigate    d. soil

5. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of .....

WB

a location    b. bacteria    c. filter    d. system



1 The workmen  
a complete

the building now

b are completing

c will complete

d are completing

2 After 85 minutes, The Blue team live and the Red team is one. The Blue team

a winning

b going to

c going to win

d win

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Judy is visiting her grandma the day

(before) tomorrow

2 (Be/ you /walk) to the museum later? It's very far

3 We (have) a party tomorrow. We arranged everything

4 She is walking in the mountains (last) week.

5 She is visiting a museum in nine days' (clock) .

6 Lara is (play) handball now.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How to keep our environment clean"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإشتائية:

- How can we keep the environment clean?
- What are the environmental problems we face?
- How are trees good for the environment?
- What should we do with old mobile phones?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- We should do our best to
- The main environmental problems are .
- Trees help reduce .....
- Throwing old phones can be .....

## Key Vocabulary

horse riding	ركوب الخيل	bungee jumping	القفز بالخيال
bird watching	مشاهدة / مراقبة الطيور	hot-air ballooning	التحليق بالمنطاد
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	fishing	صيد السمك
star gazing	مشاهدة النجوم	sandboarding	التزلج على الرمال
hiking in the desert	التجول في الصحراء	canoeing	التجديف
diving	الغوص	free	غير مشغول - حر - مجاني

## Vocabulary

scary	مرعب / مخيف	instead	بدلاً من ذلك
sunset	غروب الشمس	towards	نحو
fresh dates	بلح طازج	bored	شاعر بالملل
beginner	شخص مبتدئ	towel	منشفة «فوطية»
afraid	خائف	temperature	درجة حرارة
actually	في الواقع	miss (ed)	يفوته / يفقد
ruins of a temple	أطلال معبد	guess (ed)	يخمن
amazing	مدهش	snorkel (ed)	غطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس تحت الماء
activity	نشاط		

## Expressions & Prepositions

go rock climbing	يذهب لتسلق الصخور	one last thing	آخر شيء
looks a bit scary	يبدو مخيف بعض الشيء	Best wishes.	أطيب الأمنيات.
get cold and bored	يشعر بالبرد والملل	decide on	يقرر
It might be fun	يمكن أن تكون ممتعة.	on the boat	في القارب
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	help with	يساعد في
give your opinion	تعطي رأيك	stay with	يقيم / يقيم مع
have a fantastic time	يقضي وقت ممتع	sit by the water	يجلس بالقرب من الماء
have a picnic	يذهب في نزهة	for breakfast	على الإفطار
It sounds really exciting / interesting!	يبدو مثيراً / شيقاً		

## Conjugations of

### Present

### Irregular Verbs

### Lessons 5 & 6

sit

get up

learn

يجلس

يستيقظ

يتعلم

### Past simple

sat

got up

learned / learnt

### Past Participle

sat

got up

learned / learnt

## Word

## Meaning

## Opposite

agree

يوافق

accept

disagree

لا يوافق



## Definitions

scary

مرعب / مخيف

frightening

star gazing

مشاهدة / مراقبة النجوم

to look at the stars in the sky as a hobby<sup>1</sup>

sunset

غروب الشمس

the time in the evening<sup>2</sup> when you last see the sun in the sky



## Language Notes

### ① snorkelling / scuba diving

• **Snorkelling** الغوص باستخدام قناع وأنبوبة للتنفس وتكون قريب من سطح الأرض

Ex. I have a mask. I can go snorkelling

• **scuba diving** اعطس للذهاب إلى أعماق البحر مرتدياً بدلة غطس واستخدام أنبوبة الأكسجين

Ex. My favourite hobby is scuba diving .

### ② picnic / trip / voyage / flight

• **picnic** نزهة خلوية (في الهواء الطلق)

Ex. We had a picnic when the weather was nice.

• **voyage** رحلة (بحرية)

Ex. The voyage along the Red Sea took a month.

• **trip** رحلة قصيرة (الاستمتاع أو لغرض معين)

a boat trip - a school trip - a business trip

Ex. We took a boat trip around the island.

• **flight** رحلة (جوية)

Ex. At last we arrived at the airport. It was a long flight.

## ③ lose / miss

• lose (lost - lost) يخسر، يفقد شيئاً

Ex. Our national team **lost** the last match.

Ex. I **lost** my keys on the bus.

• miss (ed) يفقد (مواصلة مثلاً) - يفقد شخص

Ex. I got up late this morning and **missed** the school bus.

Ex. I **miss** my old friends very much.

## ④ agree

• agree on + n يوافق على...

Ex. The two families **agreed on** a date for the wedding.

• agree to + inf يوافق أن...

Ex. They **agreed to** meet me at 6.00 pm.

• agree with يتفق مع شخص (في الرأي) .....

Ex. I **agree with** you, horse riding is interesting.

## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When you go \_\_\_\_\_, you don't go under water but you are near the surface.  
a. scuba diving      b. swim      c. snorkelling      d. walking
- My family had a \_\_\_\_\_ in the park yesterday.  
a. voyage      b. flight      c. picnic      d. lesson
- I was absent so I \_\_\_\_\_ the last English lesson.  
a. missed      b. caught      c. gained      d. lost
- Hani agreed \_\_\_\_\_ come to my birthday party.  
a. on      b. to      c. with      d. about



## Audioscript

SB Page (51)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Kamal** : Hi Amir. What are you doing this afternoon? I'm going rock climbing<sup>1</sup>. There is a special activity for beginners<sup>2</sup>. Would you like to come?

**Amir** : I don't know. Rock climbing looks a bit scary<sup>3</sup> to me! Are you going, Nasser?

**Nasser** : Yes! I've always wanted to learn rock climbing! Oh, come on, don't be afraid, Amir!

**Amir** : Actually<sup>4</sup>, I can't come this afternoon. I'm helping my father with something.

- 1- تسلق الصخور
- 2- المبتدئين
- 3- مرعب / مخيف
- 4- بالفعل
- 5- بدلاً من ذلك
- 6- نشاط



**Kamal** : How about tomorrow afternoon ~~in the afternoon~~ ? There's another ~~one~~ <sup>activity</sup> then at the same time.

**Amir** : OK! I'll come. You're right. It might be fun. Also, I wanted to ask you something. Are you and Nasser free this evening?

**Nasser** : I think so. Why?

**Amir** : Dad is going to take me ~~to the desert~~ into the desert with my brother Ramy and Uncle Sami and he said I could invite you, too.

**Kamal** : Thank you. We'd love to come, wouldn't we Nasser? I'd love to go to the desert at night. Is your brother Ramy going?

**Amir** : No, he doesn't want to. He thinks he'd get cold and bored!

**Nasser** : Well, I think it sounds really exciting!

**Amir** : Great! We're meeting outside my house at half past ten. See you then.

٧- مشاهدة / مراقبة  
البحر



## Reading

SB Page (52)

Dear Nahla,

I'm having a fantastic time with my family in Siwa. Today, we had a picnic <sup>١</sup> on Faganas Island <sup>٢</sup>. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset <sup>٣</sup>. It's very beautiful.

We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived the day before yesterday, it was very late. They still wanted to get up and make us dinner and they bring us fresh dates <sup>٤</sup> for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, we visited Shali Fortress <sup>٥</sup> and the Siwa Museum <sup>٦</sup>. I've always wanted to go there. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning. Tomorrow, we're going to visit the Siwa Lake <sup>٧</sup>. I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting.

Lots of love : Heba



- ١- نزهة خلوية
- ٢- جزيرة فغاناس
- ٣- غروب الشمس
- ٤- ملح طرخ
- ٥- قلعة شالي
- ٦- متحف سيوة
- ٧- البحيرة المالحة في سيوة

SB Page (53)

Hi

Are you busy? What are you doing this afternoon? Please could you call me later because I need some help with the English homework! I had to go to the dentist <sup>١</sup>, so I missed <sup>٢</sup> the last English lesson. What did you study in English class last week? One last thing <sup>٣</sup> - are you free on Saturday morning? I'm playing tennis in the park. Would you like to come?

- ١- طبيب أسنان
- ٢- فلتى
- ٣- آخر شيء

**Baher** : Would you like to come diving next weekend, Imad?  
We are going to go to a **cool** **cool** !

**Imad** : I don't know. Diving under water looks **scary** to me.

**Baher** : If you don't like going under water, you **could** stay on the boat.

**Imad** : I think I'd get **cold** and **bored** on the boat.

**Baher** : Why don't you **snorkel** ? Then you don't go under water but you can **see** the fish.

**Imad** : Yes, that might be fun<sup>(b)</sup>.

**Baher** : Great! Let's **al. snorkel**. We don't need a boat, we can go from the beach!

**Imad** : Thanks, I'd love to.

هل تريد الذهاب  
نحن ذاهبون  
أنا لا أعرف  
إذا كنت لا تحب  
الغطس  
أنا أعتقد  
لماذا لا  
نستطيع  
نستطيع  
نستطيع  
نستطيع

Hi

Guess where I am? At the moment, I'm walking in the desert in the **Nabq Nature Reserve** . It's really interesting. Yesterday, we visited the mountains. It was very hot! The day before yesterday, we went diving in the coral reefs at **Shoura al Manqala** . The fish were amazing. Tomorrow, we're going to visit **Wadi Kid** . I'm looking forward to seeing the beautiful birds that live there. We're coming home in three days' time. What are you doing? Write to me and tell me your news.

Best wishes, Hamdi

أنا ذاهب  
أنا ذاهب  
أنا ذاهب  
أنا ذاهب  
أنا ذاهب  
أنا ذاهب  
أنا ذاهب  
أنا ذاهب  
أنا ذاهب  
أنا ذاهب

## Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Deserts are the best places to go ..... because stars there are brighter.  
a. horse riding      b. rock climbing      c. star gazing      d. bungee jumping
- The ..... at the Karnak Temple were amazing.  
a. rings      b. ruins      c. trains      d. trainers
- If the weather's fine, we'll go ..... in the desert this weekend.  
a. diving      b. canoeing      c. fishing      d. hiking
- ..... under water looks scary to many people.  
a. Diving      b. Climbing      c. Riding      d. Hiking
- Tourists go ..... in the Great Sand Sea in Egypt.  
a. snorkeling      b. sandboarding      c. diving      d. swimming

- 6 I enjoyed watching the \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. Then I got dark.  
a sunrise b. sun cream c. solar system d. sunset
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ needs a special kind of boats.  
a. Canoeing b. Jumping c. Riding d. Reading
- 8 Dad likes practising \_\_\_\_\_ using plastic cables.  
a. horse riding b. star gazing  
c. bungee jumping d. rock climbing
- 9 He likes horses so he goes \_\_\_\_\_ once a week.  
a. swimming b. horse riding c. fishing d. sandboarding
- 10 Going in a hot-air \_\_\_\_\_ is fantastic as the view from the top is magic  
a. cartoon b. drone c. stone d. balloon
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ means without paying money.  
a. Tree b. Free c. Sea d. Bee
- 12 Every night, I see a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in the sky.  
a. stars b. reviews c. parks d. picnics
- 13 My uncle caught a lot of fish when he went \_\_\_\_\_ last week.  
a. climbing b. fishing c. riding d. jumping
- 14 We have many activities we can do like \_\_\_\_\_  
a. watching b. birds c. bird watching d. bird killing
- 15 \_\_\_\_\_ looks a bit scary to me.  
a. Rocks b. Trees c. Sleeping d. Rock climbing

## Speaking

### 1) Doing activities

القيام بأنشطة

نسال عن رغبة شخص ما في القيام بأنشطة كالآتي:

- Would you like to come?
- I invite you to come. ....
- Why don't you.....?

هل تود ان تأتي ؟

أدعوك ان تأتي.....

لماذا لا.....؟

للإجابة بالموافقة أو الرفض نقول:

Agree	Disagree
- Yes, I've always wanted to. .... نعم، دائماً ما أردت أن.....	- I don't know. It looks a bit scary. لا أعرف، يبدو مخيفاً بعض الشيء.
- OK! I'll come. .... حسباً! سوف آتي.	- I can't come. .... لا أستطيع المجيء.
- Thank you. I'd love to come. أشكرك. أود ان آتي.	- No, I don't want to. لا، لا أود.
- Yes, that might be fun. نعم، هذا يبدو ممتعاً.	

## General Exercises

on Lessons 5 &amp; 6



## ① Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad is going to the Red Sea next week.

Ziad : I'm going to the Red Sea next week.

Adel : Really! ① ..... ?

Ziad : With my family.

Adel : ② ..... ?

Ziad : At a hotel. Would you like to come?

Adel : ③ .....

Ziad : Why? We will go diving there

Adel : ④ .....

Ziad : Why don't you stay on the boat?

Adel : OK. ⑤ .....

## ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need some help ..... the English homework.

- a. about                      b. on                      c. of                      d. in

2. I had a really ..... dream last night. I was frightened.

- a. scary                      b. nice                      c. lovely                      d. beautiful

3. I ..... my family so much during my stay abroad.

- a. lost                      b. kept                      c. missed                      d. wasted

4. I'd love to go ..... under water in the Red Sea.

- a. hiking                      b. diving                      c. climbing                      d. riding

5. In summer, tourists can go rock ..... or walking.

- a. climbing                      b. fishing                      c. jumping                      d. riding



## Key Vocabulary

solar panels	الواح الطاقة الشمسية	location	موقع
rubbish	قمامة	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	bacteria	بكتيريا (اسم جمع)
wildlife	الحياة البرية	invention	اختراع
roof	سطح المنزل	hot-air ballooning	التحليق بالمنطاد
drought	جفاف	fishing	صيد السمك
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد	sandboarding	التزلج على الرمال
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	canoeing	التجديف
suitable	مناسب	bungee jumping	القفز بالحبال
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف	free	غير مشغول - حر - مجاني
conservation	حماية / الحفاظ على الكائنات	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير (نصفيه)
lend	يقرض/يسلف	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
system	نظام	save (d)	ينقذ/يوفر
horse riding	ركوب الخيل	damage (d)	يتلف
bird watching	مشاهدة/مراقبة الطيور	reduce (d)	يقلل
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	install (ed)	يركب / يثبت «جهاز أو تطبيق»
star gazing	مشاهدة النجوم	pick (ed) up	يلتقط
hiking in the desert	التجول في الصحراء	plant (ed)	يروع
diving	الغوص	repair (ed)	يصلح
environment-friendly / green	صديق للبيئة	melt (ed)	يدوب/ينصهر
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح (مولدات الطاقة من الرياح)	filter (ed) (n)	يفلتر - يصفى - مصفى / فلتر
		control (led)	يتحكم في

## Nouns &amp; Adjectives

Noun		Adjective	
environment	البيئة	environmental	بيئي
tradition	تقليد	traditional	تقليدي
music	فوسيقى	musical	فوسبقي
nature	الطبيعة	natural	طبيعي



## 1- (be) going to &amp; The present continuous

## 1- Going to

## Form التكوين

I	am	} (not) going to + Inf. مصدر الفعل
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

• يستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن نية / خطة مستقبلية / قرار لفعل شيء في المستقبل وبدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

decide - decision - plan - intend - intention

Ex. I'm going to watch a movie.

Ex. He isn't going to take a photo.

• يستخدم (be) going to أيضا للتنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل في وجود دليل (أما دليل براه أو عرفة) وبدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

predict - prediction - evidence

Ex. It is going to rain.

(I can see some dark clouds.)

Ex. Our players are going to win the cup.

(They always train well.)

## Question السؤال

am - is - are + subject + going to + inf...? أداة استفهام

Ex. Where are you going to spend your holiday?

## 2- The present continuous

## Form التكوين

I	am	} (not) verb + ing.
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

• يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات في المستقبل (غالبا مع الإشارة إلى وقت أو تاريخ يدل على المستقبل) وبدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

arrange - arrangements - prepare - preparation

Ex. My grandma is visiting us next week.

Ex. We are going to Spain for our next holiday. We aren't going to England.

• يستخدم المضارع المستمر أيضا للتعبير عن حدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام)

Ex. She is doing her homework now.

am - is - are + subject + verb + ing...? + كلمة استخدام

Ex. (When) Are you *going* a party for your birthday?

### 3- Time Expressions التعبيرات الزمنية

Now

in five minutes → this afternoon / evening → tomorrow →  
the day after tomorrow → next week → in 10 days' time →  
in three weeks **Future**

## Speaking

### 1) Talking about future plans

تحدث عن الخطط المستقبلية

نسال باستخدام (be) going to عن الخطط المستقبلية كالآتي:

What are you going to do at the weekend?  
Where are you going to go for your next holiday?  
How are you going to improve your English?

### 2) Making predictions

التنبؤ

نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن التنبؤ بدء على دليل كالآتي:

Evidence <small>دليل</small>	Prediction <small>تنبؤ</small>
- The students didn't do their homework	- The teacher is going to be angry. - They are going to have to do extra homework tonight.
- My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.	- I'm going to be late for school.

### 3) Suggesting solutions to environmental problems

اقترح حلول للمشكلات البيئية

نعبر عن الحلول للمشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

- |                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| - Make... more expensive   | - Recycle...             |
| - Stop people from...v-ing | - Ask local people to. . |
| - Use camels...            | - Build ....             |

### 4) Discussing inventions and environmental problems

هذه أسئلة الاختراعات والمشكلات البيئية.

يبدآن ويختمون عن الاختراعات المستخدمة لحل المشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

سؤال:

Answer:

A: Which do you think is the best or most useful invention?	B: I think drones are the best.
A: How can drones be a useful way to solve environmental problems?	B: They can be used to make deliveries.
A: How can that help the environment?	B: They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

### 5) Discussing future arrangements / plans

من قسمة الترتيبات والخطط المستقبلية

- يستخدم (the present continuous) لتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية.

A: What are you doing this afternoon?

B: I'm doing my maths lesson.

### 6) Doing activities

القيام بالأنشطة

نسال عن رغبة شخص ما في القيام بأنشطة كالآتي:

- Would you like to come?
- I invite you to come. ....
- Why don't you... ..?

- للإجابة بالموافقة أو بالرفض نقول:

Agree	Disagree
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Yes, I've always wanted to...</li> <li>- OK! I'll come.</li> <li>- Thank you. I'd love to come.</li> <li>- Yes, that might be fun.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I don't know. It looks a bit scary.</li> <li>- I can't come.</li> <li>- No, I don't want to.</li> </ul>



# General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir is going to the desert next week.

Samir : I'm going to the desert next week?

Diaa : The desert, why?

Samir : ①

Diaa : Oh! Is rock climbing scary?

Samir : Yes. ② . But it's really exciting.

Diaa : ③ ?

Samir : Sure. You can come.

Diaa : ④ ?

Samir : Good idea, I'd love to go hiking, too.

Diaa : OK. ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We'll need a ladder to get up on the . . . . . of the house

- a. stairs                      b. bathroom                      c. roof                      d. ceiling

2. We are going to . . . . . solar panels. They're good for the environment.

- a. burn                      b. break                      c. pollute                      d. install

3. Habiba's bike isn't working, she is going to . . . . . it.

- a. repair                      b. redo                      c. rewrite                      d. repeat

4. Policemen do their best to . . . . . us safe.

- a. remember                      b. keep                      c. plant                      d. guess

5. It isn't a good idea to throw . . . . . old mobile phones.

- a. way                      b. road                      c. a way                      d. away

6. A . . . . . looks like a plane but it doesn't have a pilot.

- a. kite                      b. drone                      c. balloon                      d. ship

7. When we are at the park, we should . . . . . rubbish.

- a. get up                      b. wake up                      c. pick up                      d. stand up

8. Osama has a towel and is walking towards the sea. He is going swimming.

- a. to going                      b. to goes                      c. to go                      d. go

9. Iny is ten minutes from the station and the train goes in five minutes. Is she the train?

- a catching      b going to catch      c catch      d caught

10. Don't use classroom 5 because some men it this afternoon.

- a is going to paint      b paints      c are painting      d paint

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The boy and his father are going to (watching) the match. / /
- We (go) snorkelling next weekend. Would you like to come?
- I (looked) forward to having a rest next week.
- What are you (do) this afternoon?

④ Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words:

عنايه منه في آخر الوحدة

"Activities you want to do in the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What activities can you do in Egypt?
- What do you want to do in the Red Sea?
- Why is going on a hot-air balloon exciting?
- What's the most dangerous activity?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- There are many exciting activities .....
- I want to ..... in the Red Sea.
- I think the view .....
- ..... is the most dangerous activity.

## A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Drones can fly by remote  
a. tools                      b. controls                      c. people                      d. ropes
2. We can fly drones from the  
a. sky                      b. sun                      c. ground                      d. star

## B Language Functions

② Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Jana and Eman are talking about the summer holiday.

Eman : What are you going to do at the summer holiday?

Jana : ①

Eman : ②

Jana : I am going to travel to Alex by train.

Eman : ③

Jana : We will stay for two weeks.

Eman : I hope you a happy holiday.

## C Usage

③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can use solar ..... to make electricity.  
a. doors                      b. windows                      c. panels                      d. rooms
2. I'll ..... arrangements to meet you at the airport.  
a. make                      b. do                      c. spend                      d. give
3. She ..... coming to the party.  
a. isn't                      b. hasn't                      c. won't                      d. doesn't
4. What are you ..... tomorrow evening?  
a. does                      b. do                      c. did                      d. doing
5. I am going ..... the concert  
a. to join                      b. join                      c. joining                      d. to joining

## D. Reading Comprehension

### 4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday, I went with my brother Ahmed to the shopping centre. My mother asked us to do some shopping there. At the supermarket, I bought eggs, bread and butter. Then we went to a shoe shop to buy my brother Ahmed a new pair of shoes. His size is 38. He bought new black trousers, too. After that, we went to a café to have some drinks. I had some tea and my brother drank some juice. We went back home at 8 o'clock.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did they go to the shopping centre?
2. What colour are Ahmed's new trousers?
3. What size are Ahmed's shoes?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. They bought eggs, bread and butter from the .....  
 a. shoe shop                      b. supermarket                      c. café                      d. fruit shop
5. They went back home at .....  
 a. 8 o'clock                      b. 5 o'clock                      c. 11 o'clock                      d. 10 o'clock

### 5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. are - What - doing - evening - you - this?
2. meeting - outside - We - at six - are
3. are - inventions - Green - environment-friendly.
4. Sure - Make - your - daughter - that - suitable - has - clothes.

## E. Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

"Environmental problems"

(امداد عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What's the environment?
- How is the environment polluted?
- How can we keep our environment clean?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- The environment is ..... - Traffic and factories can .....
- We should reduce .....



## Paragraphs

### 1- How to keep our environment clean

There are many environmental problems that we should face. The main problems are water and air pollution and climate change. There's a lot of air pollution from the traffic in cities and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution, so we should plant more trees. We should recycle old mobile phones. Green inventions are environment-friendly. These inventions present solutions to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

### 2- Activities I want to do in the future

There are many exciting activities that I can do in Egypt. I want to go diving in the Red Sea. The coral reefs there are wonderful. Although diving is a bit scary, I want to try it. I want also to go on a hot-air balloon. I think the view from the top will be fantastic. I think it's dangerous but I'd like to try it one day. I hope I will try bungee jumping. I think it's the most dangerous activity. This activity isn't suitable for people who are afraid of high places.

### 3- Environmental problems (Azhar)

The world faces many Environmental problems. The main problem is climate change. It happens because of air pollution. All countries should do their best to solve this problem. They should reduce air pollution and plant more trees.

## Emails

### 1- What do I think the weather is going to be today?

**From** : ramialaa@hotmail.com

**To** : salahzaki@yahoo.com

**Subject** : The weather today

Dear Salah,

How are you? What do you think the weather is going to be like later today? It was sunny in the mornings but it was a bit windy. I'm looking out of the window now. It's cloudy and cold. I think it's going to rain. Could you send me an email telling me about the weather in your town? I'm waiting. My regards to your family.

Yours,

Rami

### 2- My holiday

**From** : habiba2006@hotmail.com

**To** : solma2007@gmail.com

**Subject** : My holiday

Dear Solma,

I hope you're having a good time. I'm having a good time with my family in Aswan. Today, we had a picnic on Elephantine Island. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful. We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. Yesterday morning, we visited Abu Simbel temple and the Nubian Museum. I've always wanted to go there. Tomorrow, we're going to visit Lake Nasser. I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting. See you soon.

Lots of love,

Habiba



## A

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

يُطلب الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. There's a lot of pollution from the traffic in our  
 a. school                      b. house                      c. city                      d. farm
2. Air pollution is very .....  
 a. good                      b. light                      c. healthy                      d. unhealthy
3. .... are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution  
 a. Trees                      b. Plants                      c. Apples                      d. Oranges
4. Next ....., we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school.  
 a. year                      b. month                      c. week                      d. day

## B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer is going to buy his friend Omar a present for his birthday.

Tamer : Our friend Omar's birthday will be tomorrow.

Ayman : Really! ① .....

Tamer : Yes, I'm going to buy him a present.

Ayman : What're you going to buy?

Tamer : ② .....

Ayman : Great! ③ .....

Tamer : I know a mobile shop near our house. What will you buy him?

Ayman : ④ .....

Tamer : ⑤ .....

Ayman : I hope so, too.

## C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dirty water can be dangerous to drink. It causes diseases and makes people ill. It can damage the environment, animals and fish. People often throw rubbish into rivers. This makes rivers look horrible and affects the lives of birds and fish. We must keep the water in our rivers, canals and lakes clean. Smoke and gases from factories and cars mix with water vapour in the air and cause pollution. When the water vapour falls to the ground as rain, the chemicals in the smoke and fumes mix with the rain. This can kill trees, plants, fish and animals.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. How is pollution caused?
3. In your opinion, how can we solve the problem of pollution?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "horrible" means very  
a. good                      b. friendly                      c. pleasant                      d. bad
5. The underlined word "It" refers to  
a. rubbish                      b. dirty water                      c. environment                      d. water vapour
6. Smoke and gases                      with water vapour in the air.  
a. fix                      b. stir                      c. mix                      d. plant

**D Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We should use ..... on buildings in sunny countries like Egypt. WB  
a. solar panels                      b. snowboards                      c. washing machines                      d. tablets
2. You see a lot of ..... in windy countries like England. WB  
a. rockets                      b. sewing machines                      c. wind turbines                      d. coins
3. Mona forgot her pen today, so I'll ..... her mine. WB  
a. lend                      b. install                      c. borrow                      d. mend
4. Storms and floods are ..... events. WB  
a. nature                      b. tradition                      c. musical                      d. natural
5. Scientists used the new app to determine the ..... of underground water. WB  
a. invitation                      b. location                      c. conversation                      d. station
6. We should ..... plastic and paper to help save the environment. WB  
a. cycle                      b. recycle                      c. burn                      d. damage
7. How about drinking tea in the kitchen? It's a good ..... WB  
a. meal                      b. food                      c. idea                      d. diet
8. Summer will be hotter next month and the snow ..... SB  
a. is melting                      b. melts                      c. melted                      d. is going to melt



- 9 The students \_\_\_\_\_ very well in their exam. They always get good marks. **98**  
 a will do                      b are going to do      c are doing      d doing
10. It's raining heavily and the river \_\_\_\_\_ **98**  
 a are flooding              b flood              c flooded              d is going to flood

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 Lamia's family are learning Japanese. They \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Japan. **WB**  
 2. What is the temperature going to \_\_\_\_\_ (is) this afternoon? **WB**  
 3. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis in the park.  
 4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) to school tomorrow because I'm ill.

### Writing

**6** Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

عندما كنت في الإجازة

to your friend Salma to tell her about your holiday.

-Your name is Habiba and your email address is habiba2006@hotmail.com

-Your friend's email address is salma2007@gmail.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Where was your holiday?
- Who did you travel with?
- When did you arrive?
- How did you spend your time?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I had a good time with .....
- We had a picnic on .....
- Yesterday morning, we .....





**New  
Hello!**



# Languages and learning



## Objectives

### Reading:

A quiz about learning styles; an article about languages in Africa; an advert for a language school

### Writing:

An internet post giving advice; a study plan; an application form

### Listening:

A conversation about future plans; a radio interview about animal communication

### Speaking:

Talking about learning styles; a presentation about your studies; a discussion about study tips, giving advice, opinions and suggestions

### Language:

A review of tenses

### Life skills:

Self-management; Communication skills; Critical thinking

SB / WB Answers

جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والمدرسة يمكن حلها في هذا الكتاب



## Key Vocabulary

learner	متعلم (في مرحلة التعلم)	repair (ed) = fix (ed)	إصلاح
mostly	غالباً / في الأغلب	fall (ed)	يقع / يرسف
take notes	يسجل ملاحظات	pass (ed)	يضع / يختار
disappointed	محبط	decide (d)	يقرر
proud	فخور		

## Learning styles

writing	الكتابة	listening	الاستماع
reading	القراءة	doing things	عمل الأشياء
seeing things	رؤية الأشياء		

## Vocabulary

TV show	عرض تليفزيوني	summary	ملخص
directions	اتجاهات	laboratory	معمل تحليل
dictionary	قاموس	driving test	اختبار القيادة
result	نتيجة	act (ed)	يمثل
diagram	رسم توضيحي / رسم بياني	achieve (d)	ينجز / يحقق
manager	مدير	continue (d)	يواصل
experiment	تجربة علمية	summarise (d)	يلخص
irregular	غير منظم	follow (ed)	يتبع
secondary school	مدرسة ثانوية	explain (ed)	يفسر / يشرح
podcast	نشرة صوتية (إذاعية)		

## Expressions &amp; Prepositions

(be) often talking	يتكلم كثيراً	learn by	يتعلم بواسطة
feel disappointed	يشعر بالاحباط	discuss with	يتناقش مع
work out	يستنتج	explain ..... to	يفسر / يشرح ... لـ
find out	يكتشف	in different ways	بطرق مختلفة
learn how to	يتعلم كيف	cut down	يقطع

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
make up	يؤلف	made up	made up
spell	ينهجي	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
fly	يطير / يسافر جواً	flow	flown

Word	Meaning	Opposite
pass	يحتاج / ينجح	fail
continue	يستمر	stop

يرسب / يفشل

ينوقف

## Definitions

decide	يقرر	make a choice to do something	
explain	يفسر	make something clear or easy to understand by giving reasons for it	1- اختيار 2- واضح
fail	يفشل / يرسب	not be successful	3- اسباب 4- ناجح
proud	فخور	feeling happy because you or people you know have done something well	5- حالات 6- يحدث
mostly	غالباً في الأغلب	in most cases / most of the time	
pass	يحتاج / ينجح	be successful in a test or exam	
disappointed	محبط	not happy because something you wanted did not happen or was not very good	

## Verbs and nouns that go together

watch TV show	يشاهد عرض تلفزيوني	play a video game	يلعب ألعاب فيديو
practise a language	يمارس لغة	listen to music	يسمع الى الموسيقى
summarise a text	يلخص نص	ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة
do an experiment	يجري تجربة	win medals	يفوز بميداليات
make up a song	يؤلف أغنية	take photographs	يلتقط صور
do research	يجري بحثاً	write down instructions	يدون تعليمات
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	spell a word	ينهجى كلمة
find solutions	يجد حلول	achieve a dream	يحقق حلم

## Language Notes

## ① busy

• busy + V-ing. مشغول في ....

Ex. He is busy studying his lessons.

## ② find it + صفة + to + inf.

Ex. I found it difficult / hard to learn Japanese.

Ex. I always find it hard to park my car

## ③ most / mostly

• most (of) معظم / أكثر

Ex. She plays tennis most Fridays.

Ex. Most of the shops are closed today.

• mostly في الأغلب (حال)

Ex. I am mostly interested in the history of Egypt.

• the most الأكثر

- تستخدم في المقارنة مع الصفات الطويلة

Ex. He bought the most expensive car.

## ④ fail / pass / succeed

- يأتي حرف جر (n) بعد (fail - pass) مع كلمات مثل (test - exam).

Ex. I fail my exam.

Ex. I pass my driving test.

- عند ذكر اسم المادة يمكن استخدام حرف جر (in) أو يمكن حذفها.

Ex. I passed (in) history but failed (in) chemistry.

- لابد من استخدام حرف جر (in) بعد (succeed) + (noun / v-ing).

Ex. I succeeded in my exams.

## Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother is busy ..... lunch.

a. cook

b. to cook

c. cooks

d. cooking

2. Mostafa always finds it easy ..... football.

a. play

b. to play

c. playing

d. played

3. I spend ..... of the time reading books.

a. mostly

b. must

c. most

d. mustn't

4. We ..... in repairing the engine.

a. failed

b. passed

c. slept

d. succeeded





## Quiz

What type of learner are you?

Take the quiz to find out!

1. Which of these things do you prefer to do in your free time?
  - a. Read a book
  - b. Watch a film or TV show.
  - c. Play a video game
  - d. Listen to music.
2. If you want to learn how to play a new sport, what do you do?
  - a. Read online about how to play it
  - b. Watch a video of people playing it.
  - c. Start playing and learn as you play.
  - d. Ask for advice from someone who can play it.
3. You need to tell your class about a new English book. What would you prefer to do?
  - a. Write a review<sup>(4)</sup> of it.
  - b. Make a short video about it.
  - c. Act some of the book with friends.
  - d. Read some of the book to your class.
4. Someone asks you for directions. What do you do?
  - a. Write down instructions<sup>(5)</sup>.
  - b. Draw a map.
  - c. Use your hands and body to explain<sup>(7)</sup>.
  - d. Tell them where to go.
5. If you don't know how to spell a word, what do you do?
  - a. Look in a dictionary.
  - b. Try to work out<sup>(9)</sup> how to spell it.
  - c. Write it down to see if it looks right.
  - d. Say the word slowly to hear the sounds.

١- معلم

٢- وقت الفراغ

٣- عرض تلفزيوني

٤- مقال قصير

٥- اتجاهات

٦- يدون تعليمات

٧- يشرح / يفسر

٨- يتهنى

٩- يستنتج

**I chose mostly a:**

- You learn best by reading and writing.

You like reading books or writing stories. You love words and learn best by reading about something and taking notes.

أنا  
أحب القراءة  
وأكتب القصص  
أحب الكلمات  
وأفضل تعلم  
عن شيء ما  
بالتدوين



**I chose mostly b:**

- You learn best by seeing things.

You love to watch videos and look at diagrams. You love films and art. You learn things better if you can see them.



**I chose mostly c:**

- You learn best by doing things.

You are always busy making and repairing things. You learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading.



**I chose mostly d:**

- You learn by listening.

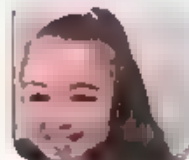
You love music and are often talking! You find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to you and by discussing things with them.



When I was young, I wanted to be a scientist. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I will be a scientist! I'm not really sure what I want to do, but my family are always telling me that school is very important and I need to study hard. I know I want to travel, so I am learning lots of languages. Next year, I am starting French classes. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I will pass!

**What sort of learners are the following?**

- 1- Habiba likes summarising<sup>(1)</sup> a text. For example, if a text is 100 words long, she writes a summary<sup>(2)</sup> in about 15 - 20 words. Habiba learns best by writing.



لشخص  
مختص

- 2- Fares remembers things easily. I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today! Fares learns by seeing things.



3. For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar\* is to **make up** a song about it! Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember **the grammar**. Dareen learns best by listening.

٣- يخلق  
١- أن تجعل غير منظم  
٥- أن تكرر كلمة  
٦- الممثل



4. Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does an **experiment** in the **laboratory**, he always understands what is happening! Marwan learns best by doing things.



Say it correctly

\* grammar      بيطق حرف g في كلمة grammar مثل نطقه في كلمة man  
وليس مثل نطقه في كلمة car.

WB Page (108)

My village didn't use to have any tourists but now lots of visitors come here every year. Today, lots of American tourists are taking photographs of the **castle**<sup>١</sup>. Last year, we had visitors from China and Japan, too! Next year, they are going to build a new hotel in the park. I am **disappointed** about this, because I think they will cut down some of the trees to build it.

١- قلعة

٢- محيط

## Audioscript

SB Page (56)

**Fares** : My name's Fares. When I was young, I didn't use to like studying. But, one day, I **failed**<sup>١</sup> an exam. My father was disappointed. He said that one day he wanted me to be the **manager**<sup>٢</sup> of our family shop. He explained about all the **skills**<sup>٣</sup> that I needed to work there: maths, reading, writing and English. Now I'm working hard to pass my exams so I can make my family **proud**<sup>٤</sup>. Next year, I'm starting **secondary school**<sup>٥</sup> and I'll continue to study hard!

١- يرسب  
٢- مدير  
٣- مهارات  
٤- فخورين  
٥- مدرسة ثانوي  
٦- يحقق

**Nevine** : When I was nine, I was playing with my sister when I fell and hurt my arm. The doctor at the hospital was so clever and kind, so I decided I wanted to be a doctor too! I know it will be hard to **achieve** my dream. I need to go to university and pass lots of exams. My **uncle** lives in the USA so I'm going to study there when I'm older and then I want to come back to Egypt and work in a hospital.

## Exercises on Vocabulary

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- 1 I always listen carefully to my teacher and \_\_\_\_\_ notes. WB  
 a. hunt                      b. talk                      c. take                      d. fill
2. If you \_\_\_\_\_ an exam, you will feel proud. SB  
 a. fail                      b. fill                      c. succeed                      d. pass
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ study science three times a week during the school term. WB  
 a. Learners                      b. Farmers                      c. Trainers                      d. Cleaners
4. If you \_\_\_\_\_ an exam, you will feel disappointed. SB  
 a. feel                      b. fail                      c. pass                      d. fall

### Bit by Bit Exercises

5. \_\_\_\_\_ books and stories is my favourite hobby.  
 a. Reading                      b. Talking                      c. Speaking                      d. Listening
6. \_\_\_\_\_ to music is enjoyable.  
 a. Reading                      b. Speaking                      c. Listening                      d. Writing
7. My laptop is broken. I want to \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
 a. fail                      b. follow                      c. decide                      d. repair
8. Noha was \_\_\_\_\_ excited by the Karnak Temple in Luxor.  
 a. mostly                      b. friendly                      c. lovely                      d. silly
9. What did you \_\_\_\_\_ to do after finishing your study?  
 a. leave                      b. decide                      c. explain                      d. act
10. Mohanad could \_\_\_\_\_ a solution to his problem.  
 a. do                      b. lose                      c. play                      d. find
11. I was \_\_\_\_\_ because I lost my favourite pen.  
 a. pleased                      b. happy                      c. disappointed                      d. glad
12. Heba's parents are very \_\_\_\_\_ of her. She is clever.  
 a. disappointed                      b. angry                      c. sorry                      d. proud
13. I like repairing things. I learn best by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. reading                      b. listening                      c. seeing                      d. doing things
14. Salem turned on his computer to \_\_\_\_\_ a video game.  
 a. play                      b. pass                      c. explain                      d. act
15. To listen to the \_\_\_\_\_, click on the link below.  
 a. pod                      b. cost                      c. podcast                      d. view





# Language

## Review on Tenses

### 1- Present simple and present continuous

	Present simple	المضارع البسيط	Present continuous	المضارع المستمر
Form	I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + inf. He / She / It / اسم مفرد + verb + (s-es-ies) يستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق أو عادات أو أفعال متكررة.		I He / She / It / اسم مفرد We / You / They / اسم جمع am is are verb + ing.	
Usage	- My uncle <b>lives</b> in the USA. - I <b>play</b> tennis every week. - The sun <b>rises</b> in the east.		- I'm <b>emailing</b> my uncle now. - يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام). - I'm <b>learning</b> French. - يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة. - They <b>are painting</b> the school this week.	
Negative	Subject + <b>don't / doesn't</b> + inf. - I <b>don't</b> like playing tennis.		Subject + <b>am/is/are not</b> + verb + ing. - She <b>isn't</b> <b>drawing</b> pictures at the moment.	
Question	<b>Do/Does</b> + فاعل + inf. ? (كلمة استفهام) - What <b>does</b> she <b>want</b> ?		<b>Am/Is/Are</b> + فاعل + verb + ing. ? (كلمة استفهام) - What <b>are</b> you <b>doing</b> ?	
Keywords	every (day - week - month - year) always - usually - often sometimes - never		Listen! / now / at the moment Look! / at present	

### Check

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The sun \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning every day.  
a. is rising                      b. rose                      c. rises                      d. will rise
- The children \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
a. are sleeping                      b. slept                      c. sleep                      d. sleeps

② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) photos at the moment.
- My name \_\_\_\_\_ (be) Osman.

## 2- Past simple and past continuous

	Past simple	الماضي البسيط	Past continuous	الماضي المستمر
Form	Subject + فعل في التصريف الثاني Subject + <b>used to</b> + inf. - نستخدم <b>used to</b> للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي وانتهت.		I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد We / You / They / اسم جمع was } verb + ing. were }	
Usage	- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي أو عادة كانت في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن. - I <b>lived</b> in Aswan when I was young. - I <b>used to like</b> tennis when I was young.		- يستخدم ليعبر عن حدوث فعل في الماضي أثناء حدوث فعل آخر. - I <b>was playing</b> chess with my sister when it <b>started to</b> rain. - يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمراً في الحدوث أثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي. - I <b>was waiting</b> for the match to start at 8 last night.	
Negative	Subject + <b>didn't</b> + inf. Subject + <b>didn't use to</b> + inf. - I <b>didn't watch</b> the match yesterday. - I <b>didn't use to</b> like tennis! I <b>used to</b> like basketball.		Subject + was/were + <b>not</b> + verb + ing. - She <b>wasn't listening</b> to music when the light <b>went out</b> .	
Question	Did + فاعل + inf. ? (كلمة استفهام) Did + فاعل + <b>use to</b> + inf. ? (كلمة استفهام) - Where <b>did</b> he <b>travel</b> ? - Where <b>did</b> he <b>use to live</b> ?		Was/Were + فاعل + verb + ing ? (كلمة استفهام) - What <b>were</b> you <b>doing</b> when the bell <b>rang</b> ?	
Keywords	last (week-month-year) / yesterday / ago / in 2019 / in the past		While / As / Just as / When	



• لا نستخدم **used to** مع حدث تم مرة واحدة في الماضي واستخدم الماضي البسيط بدلاً منه

Ex. Last Friday, we **had** visitors from China and Japan.

## Check

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I ..... pick up flowers when I was young.  
a. was using to      b. use to      c. used to      d. am used to
- They ..... TV when it started to rain.  
a. are watching      b. watch      c. watches      d. were watching

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- While she was playing, she ..... (break) the window.
- She ..... (visit) the museum yesterday.

### 3- Future: will / (be) going to / present continuous

	will	(be) going to
<b>Form</b>	Subject + will + inf.	I ..... am He / She / It / اسم مفرد ..... is We / You / They / اسم جمع ..... are going to + inf.
<b>Usage</b>	- يستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل بناء على رأي شخصي دون وجود دليل. - اتخاذ قرارات سريعة - I think it will be hard but fun at university.	- تستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل مع وجود دليل. - تستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن نوايا أو خطط مستقبلية. - I'm going to go to university. I'm not going to get a job.
<b>Negative</b>	Subject + won't + inf. - Osama won't work as a teacher.	Subject + am/is/are + not + going to + inf. - Basma isn't going to travel to Aswan because she is ill.
<b>Question</b>	Will + فاعل + inf.? (كلمة استفهام) - When will they take a test?	Am/Is/Are + فاعل + going to + Inf.? (كلمة استفهام) - Who is going to help you?
<b>Keywords</b>	next (week - month - year) / tomorrow	next (week - month - year) / tomorrow / intend / intention / decide / plan

### 4- Present continuous

• نستخدم المضارع المستمر أيضا للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية بناءً على ترتيبات (ويدل على ذلك كلمات) مثل:

**arrange - arrangements - prepare - preparation**

Ex. I'm visiting the museum next week. I arranged to do that.

Ex. Next year, I'm starting secondary school.

## Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. When I \_\_\_\_\_ young, I wanted to be a scientist. SB  
 a. am                      b. were                      c. was                      d. is
2. Ali is feeling ill, so I don't think he \_\_\_\_\_ out this evening. WB  
 a. come                      b. will come                      c. came                      d. comes
3. Next Friday, we \_\_\_\_\_ the great show at the school hall. SB  
 a. are watching                      b. watch                      c. watches                      d. watched
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ to secondary school in two years. SB  
 a. went                      b. going to go                      c. are going to go                      d. goes
5. Hala \_\_\_\_\_ like fruit, but now she loves it. WB  
 a. don't                      b. isn't                      c. won't                      d. didn't use to
6. What \_\_\_\_\_ now? 2022 امتحان + 2022 امتحان  
 a. are you doing                      b. you are doing  
 c. are you going                      d. you are going to do

### Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Mona \_\_\_\_\_ to school by bus next year.  
 a. go                      b. going                      c. goes                      d. will go
8. \_\_\_\_\_ your father work in a factory?  
 a. Is                      b. Do                      c. Does                      d. Was
9. A: Where do you live? B: I \_\_\_\_\_ in Giza.  
 a. lived                      b. live                      c. am living                      d. lives
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ my homework after school.  
 a. doing                      b. does                      c. did                      d. done
11. She isn't talking on the phone now, she \_\_\_\_\_ her homework.  
 a. is doing                      b. did                      c. does                      d. was doing
12. Listen! Salma \_\_\_\_\_ the piano.  
 a. plays                      b. played                      c. was playing                      d. is playing
13. My friends \_\_\_\_\_ to school on foot last month.  
 a. will go                      b. went                      c. goes                      d. go
14. I will \_\_\_\_\_ to France next month.  
 a. travelled                      b. travels                      c. travel                      d. travelling
15. While Leila \_\_\_\_\_ along the street, she met Ola.  
 a. walked                      b. walks                      c. will walk                      d. was walking
16. \_\_\_\_\_ your father usually come home early?  
 a. Does                      b. Do                      c. Is                      d. Have



2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Did you ..... (used) to drive a car?
2. I ..... (visit) Rome in 2010.
3. My mother ..... (look) for her keys now.
4. Just as I ..... (go) to school, it rained.
5. I want to travel so I ..... (learn) lots of languages.
6. Mona used ..... (drink) milk, but now she doesn't
7. Look! A cat ..... (climb) a tree.
8. The kids ..... (play) a video game when the bell rang.
9. Are you ..... (play) computer games right now?
10. Fatma sometimes ..... (help) her mother with the housework.
11. I ..... (reads) a funny story yesterday
12. It's very hot in here. I ..... (open) the window.

98

## Speaking

### Talking about learning styles

الحديث عن طرق التعلم

نسال ونجيب عن طرق التعلم كالآتي:

#### Question

#### Answer

A: How do you prefer to learn?

كيف تفضل أن تتعلم؟

B: I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing.

أحب التعلم بطرق مختلفة، لا أحب عمل الشيء نفسه على الدوام.

A: What type of classes are your favourite?

ما أنواع الحصص التي تفضلها؟

B: I like classes when we get to do things and don't only read or listen.

أحب الحصص التي نقوم فيها بعمل أشياء ولا تقتصر الحصة فقط على القراءة أو الاستماع.

A: What type of learning would you like to do more?

ما نوع الطرق التعليمية التي تريد القيام بالمزيد منها؟

B: I like to do listening activities more.

أحب القيام بأنشطة الاستماع بشكل أكثر.

A: What would you like to do less? Why?

ماذا تريد أن تفعل منه؟ لماذا؟

B: I'd like to do less writing activities because I'm not interested in learning by writing.

أريد أن أقول من أنشطة الكتابة لأنني غير مهتم بالتعلم عن طريق الكتابة.

# General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa is talking about his favourite singer.

Ragab : What do you prefer to do in your free time?

Mustafa : ①

Ragab : ②

Mustafa : My favourite singer is Amr Diab.

Ragab : ③

Mustafa : Because he has a very lovely singing voice.

Ragab : What kind of music do you like?

Mustafa : ④

Ragab : Do you usually go to concerts?

Mustafa : ⑤

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What ..... they doing in the garden?

a. have

b. do

c. are

d. did

2. When was the last time you ..... disappointed?

a. felt

b. fall

c. filled

d. fell

SB

3. It was ..... cloudy today. There wasn't much sun.

a. hardly

b. never

c. rarely

d. mostly

WB

4. At the moment, my brother ..... in a bank.

a. worked

b. is working

c. will work

d. work

WB

5. Students need to ..... what job they want to do.

a. travel

b. fix

c. repair

d. decide

SB

6. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I .....!

a. will pass

b. was passing

c. passed

d. passes

SB

7. When I was three years old, I didn't ..... to school.

a. use to going

b. using go

c. use to go

d. used to going

SB

8. The opposite of the word "fail" is .....

a. feel

b. fall

c. pass

d. lose

2022

9. I study grammar easily through ..... I learn best by seeing things.

a. songs

b. grams

c. experiments

d. diagrams

10. The teacher asked us to give a / an ..... to the story as it's too long.

a. presentation

b. summary

c. introduction

d. action

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I was young, I ..... (use riding) a bike.
2. Look! A cat ..... (climb) a tree.
3. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I ..... (be) a scientist!
4. Ahmed ..... (study) for his maths exam at the moment.
5. I ..... (buy) a book last week.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"What sort of learner you are"

(محتاج منه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- How many learning styles are there?
- What are they?
- How do you remember English grammar?
- How do you understand science books?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- There are many .....
- These learning styles are .....
- The best way to remember English grammar is .....

## Key Vocabulary

body language	لغة الجسد	national	قومي / محلي
eye contact	تواصل بصري (بالنظر)	dialect	لهجة
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	advantage	ميزة
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	identity	هوية
sound	صوت (شيء)	connect (ed)	يصل / يربط
voice	صوت (بشري)	touch (n) (ed)	اللمس / يلمس
expert	خبير		

## Vocabulary

difference	اختلاف	frightened	خائف / مرعوب
suggestion	اقتراح	field	ملاعب - حقل
spoken	منطوقة / فتحدث بها (لغة)	scared	خائف / مرعوب
home	وطن	lovely	جميل / فائق
community	مجتمع	Switzerland	سويسرا
international	عالمي / دولي	communication	اتصال / تواصل
normally	بشكل طبيعي	communicate (d)	يتواصل
soft voice	صوت رقيق	copy (ied)	يقلد / ينسخ
professor	أستاذ جامعي	miss (ed)	يفتقد / يفوته
bright	ساطع / لامع - ذكي	believe (d)	يعتقد / يصدق
serious	جاد - خطير	wait (ed)	ينتظر

## - Languages

French	اللغة الفرنسية	Portuguese	اللغة البرتغالية
German	اللغة الألمانية	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
Italian	اللغة الإيطالية	Romansh	اللغة الرومانشية «سويسرا»



have advantages

make (a) noise

make eye contact

home language

feel different

head down

that's true

copy sounds

bring together

from my point of view

careful about

لديه مميزات

يتحدث بصوت

يتواصل بصرياً «بالنظر»

اللغة الرسمية في البلد

يشعر بشيء مختلف (مميز)

مطاط الرأس

هذا صحيح

يقلد الأصوات

يجمع

من وجهة نظري

حريص بشأن

on a farm

on the internet

go away

spend time with

disappointed with

communicate with

walk into

connect to

different to

at the front door

في مزرعة

على الإنترنت

يذهب بعيداً

يقضي وقت مع

محبط من

يتواصل مع

يدخل مكان

يتصل بـ / يربط بـ

مختلف عن

عند الباب الأمامي

### Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

spend

يقضي وقت - يصرف مال

spent

spent

speak

يتحدث

spoke

spoken

leave

يغادر

left

left

### Word

### Meaning

### Opposite

quiet

هادئ

calm

noisy

صاخب / ضوضائي

inside

في الداخل

indoors

outside

في الخارج

advantage

ميزة

merit

disadvantage

عيب

true

حقيقي

real

untrue

غير حقيقي



### Definitions

dialect

لهجة

- a way of speaking used in one area

- a form of a language that people speak in a particular part of a country.

national

قومي / محلي

relating to or typical of a whole country and its people

١- معبر

٢- يتعلق بـ

advantage

ميزة

a good thing about something

٣- قياس / نموذجي

٤- بالكلية

expert

خبير

someone who has a lot of skill in or knowledge about something

<b>multilingual</b>	متعدد اللغات	be able to speak more than two languages	يستطيع التحدث بـ
<b>connect</b>	يربط / يصل	<b>bring</b> things / people together, join	
<b>identity</b>	هوية	the thing that makes you different to other people	
<b>body language</b>	لغة الجسد	the way you move your body, that shows people what you are feeling	
<b>touch</b>	يلمس	put your hand onto something or someone	
<b>voice</b>	صوت (بشرى)	the sounds that are made when people speak or sing	
<b>eye contact</b>	تواصل بصرى (بالنظر)	if two people make eye contact, they look at each other at the same time	
<b>facial expression</b>	تعبير الوجه	the look on someone's face showing what they feel or think	

## Language Notes

### ① voice / sound

• **voice (n)** صوت (بشرى)

**Ex.** He was ill so I could hardly hear his voice.

• **sound (v-ed)** يبدو

**Ex.** That sounds a good idea

• **sound (n)** صوت (شيء)

**Ex.** Please, turn the sound of the radio down a little.

### ② communicate / connect

• **communicate (with)** يتواصل (مع)

**Ex.** We live in different cities and we communicate with each other by email.

• **connect (to)** يتصل / يربط (بـ)

**Ex.** Our home language connects us to our country.

### ③ dialect / accent

• **dialect** لهجة (تشير إلى الاختلافات في اللهجات والمفردات لبعض اللغة من منطقة لأخرى)

**Ex.** There are many dialects in Egypt like Saidi and Bedouin.

• **accent** لحن (تشير إلى الطريقة التي ينطق بها الأفراد كلمات أو عبارات معينة)

**Ex.** Although he spoke English well, I knew he was Indian from his accent.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The kids repeated the song in high  
a. sounds                      b. voices                      c. talks                      d. touch
- Our computer is                      to the internet.  
a. connected                      b. communicated                      c. consisted                      d. contained
- People in north Egypt speak coastal  
a. voice                      b. language                      c. dialect                      d. sound



## Audioscript

SB Page (58)



استمع الى النصوص



**Munir** : What do you know about animals? Do you think they understand you? Today I'm talking to Dr Ahmed who is going to tell us about how animals communicate<sup>(1)</sup>. Hello, Dr Ahmed.



**Dr Ahmed**: Hello.

**Munir** : Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm. My brother is a farmer<sup>(2)</sup> and I think that his cat understands him sometimes. Is that possible?

**Dr Ahmed**: I'm sure the cat understands when he is angry and understands words like 'dinner', for example.

**Munir** : But of course, the cat can't talk to him.

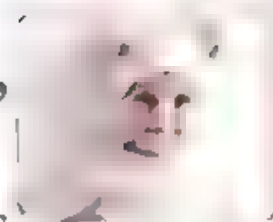
**Dr Ahmed**: No, animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can copy sounds. But animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language<sup>(3)</sup>. For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like and bees dance when they find a good flower.

**Munir** : So can I learn to communicate better with animals then?

**Dr Ahmed**: From my point of view<sup>(4)</sup>, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you. You should be careful about how you use your body and voice<sup>(5)</sup>. So, if an animal is scared<sup>(6)</sup>, you should move slowly and use a soft voice<sup>(7)</sup>. How about listening to the way your cat makes a noise? Does it sound different if it wants some food? I think it will!

- ١- يتواصل
- ٢- مزارع
- ٣- غاضب
- ٤- يفكر
- ٥- لغة الجسد
- ٦- من وجهة نظري
- ٧- صوت بشري
- ٨- جائف / مزعوب
- ٩- صوت رقيق

- Ola** : I'm looking after my baby cousin Lina today. Isn't she lovely?
- Inji** : Yes, but how can you understand what she wants?
- Ola** : From my point of view, you should first look at the baby's facial expressions, so you know if they are happy or sad.
- Inji** : That's true.
- Ola** : I think Lina's tooth is hurting her. You can see from her body language.
- Inji** : What should we do?
- Ola** : Let's try to make her laugh.
- Inji** : Good idea. How about singing a funny song!



١- جميل  
٢- تعبيرات الوجه



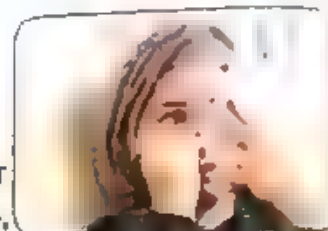
## Reading

SB Page (59)

Can anyone give me some advice? I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone. She tells me to go away if I try to talk to her. How can I get her to spend time with me again?

Please give me some advice!

Yours, Radwa.



SB Page (60)

### Multilingual Africa<sup>(1)</sup>

Experts<sup>(2)</sup> believe that there are more than 2,100 languages spoken in Africa. Many African people speak three languages: their dialect<sup>(3)</sup> (or home language), the national language and another European language such as English, French or Portuguese that they learn at school. This means they are multilingual! Of course, many people speak more than three languages!

People who speak different languages have lots of advantages<sup>(4)</sup>. If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.



- ١- أفريقيا متعددة اللغات
- ٢- خبراء
- ٣- لهجة
- ٤- لغة
- ٥- فوسى / محلي
- ٦- أوروبي
- ٧- لغة برتغالية
- ٨- مميزا



It also gives people different identities. If you speak your home language, it connects you to your country. Your national language connects you to your country and all the other people in it. An international language, like English, connects you to an international community.

- ١- تواصل
- ٢- يربط
- ٣- يربط
- ٤- يربط

WB Page (309)

### Form of communication

- 1- Shady is waiting at the front door of his friend's house. He knows someone is inside the house because he can hear sounds.
- 2- It's the end of a football match. All the players in the blue team are leaving the field very slowly. They all have their heads down. We know they are disappointed with the result by their body language.
- 3- A blind man walks into a clothes shop and buys a shirt. He chooses the shirt by touch.
- 4- Malak and Randa are sitting on different sides of a busy library. They must be quiet in the library. Randa knows that Malak wants to leave because she makes eye contact with her.
- 5- Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their facial expressions.

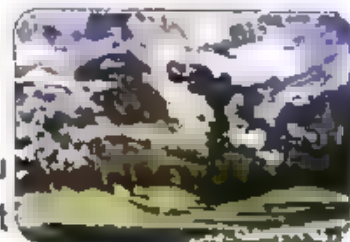
- ١- تواصل / اتصال
- ٢- يربط / يربط
- ٣- يربط
- ٤- مظهر الرأس
- ٥- نتيجة
- ٦- كفيف
- ٧- التماس
- ٨- تواصل
- ٩- تواصل بصري / بالبطر
- ١٠- مظهر / مظهر

WB Page (110)

### The languages of Switzerland

Switzerland is a small European country. Here, you do not need to be an expert to speak many languages. That is because nearly all people in Switzerland are multilingual: they speak the country's four national languages. That is because each area of Switzerland has always had its own identity and its own language.

The parts of Switzerland near Italy speak Italian, the parts near Germany speak German and the parts near France speak French. In the southwest of Switzerland, they also speak a dialect called Romansh. Each language connects the people with their area, but they are also very proud of their country.



- ١- سويسرا
- ٢- لغوية
- ٣- اللغة الإيطالية
- ٤- دولة ألمانيا
- ٥- اللغة الألمانية
- ٦- لغة الفرنسية
- ٧- جنوب غرب
- ٨- اللغة الرومانشية

## Videoscript

SB Page (86) ١

Hieroglyphs was a form of writing that was used in Ancient Egypt. It used pictures to represent letters and words. For example, this picture is the letter "A" in English.

We know how to read these pictures because of the Rosetta Stone, which was found in Rashid<sup>(١)</sup> in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. The Rosetta Stone is special. It was - perhaps - the world's first language dictionary<sup>(٢)</sup>. That is because the stone has both hieroglyphics and writing in the language of Ancient Greece<sup>(٣)</sup>.

Before they found the Rosetta Stone, people didn't understand the meaning of hieroglyphics. However experts who understood Ancient Greek could work out what the pictures meant.

But did you know that many of us still<sup>(٤)</sup> use a form of hieroglyphics today? These are emojis<sup>(٥)</sup> and people sometimes use them when they are sending text messages to their friends. Like hieroglyphics, emojis use pictures to represent letters or words. This emoji 😊 means that the writer is happy...and this one ☹️ means the writer is sad.

Some emojis even look like hieroglyphics, like this scarab beetle<sup>(٦)</sup> and this ladybird. They both mean different things, however. The scarab beetle was used to represent 'strong' and the ladybird is used to represent "good luck".



١- اللغة الهيروغليفية

٢- نمر إلى

٣- جسر رشيد

٤- مدينة رشيد

٥- قرن ١٨م

٦- قاموس

٧- حور

٨- اليونان القديمة

٩- قتل

١٠- قاتل

١١- رسوم تعبيرية

١٢- حكران فرعونى

١٣- خفساء الدعسوفة

## Exercises on Vocabulary

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams Exercises

1. The ..... are the things that make you different to other people.

- a. forms                      b. subjects                      c. identities                      d. similarities

سؤال 2022 WB

2. A sound that comes from your mouth is your .....

- a. sound                      b. hear                      c. voice                      d. touch

SB

3. What is the ..... language of Egypt?

- a. fashion                      b. occasional                      c. emotional                      d. national

WB

4. A person who speaks lots of languages is .....

- a. multilingual                      b. greedy                      c. lazy                      d. national

سؤال 2022 SB

- 5 The \_\_\_\_\_ of people in Cairo is different from those in upper Egypt  
 a. connection      b. multilingual      c. language      d. dialect
- 6 A blind man walks into a clothes shop and buys a shirt. He chooses the shirt by  
 a. sounds      b. sight      c. smell      d. touch
7. Body \_\_\_\_\_ means the way you move your body.  
 a. language      b. built      c. lantern      d. balance

### Bit by Bit Exercises

8. I knew he was scared from his \_\_\_\_\_ expressions.  
 a. station      b. nasal      c. social      d. facial
9. One of the \_\_\_\_\_ of living in the countryside is the fresh air.  
 a. disadvantages      b. damages      c. advantages      d. harm
10. Muhammad should \_\_\_\_\_ more time with his family.  
 a. go      b. wait      c. spend      d. do
11. Do you know how to \_\_\_\_\_ my mobile to a TV?  
 a. spend      b. connect      c. miss      d. communicate
12. The violin gives a lovely \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. sound      b. language      c. dialect      d. voice
13. In southern Egypt, people speak a \_\_\_\_\_ called Saidi  
 a. festival      b. game      c. tradition      d. dialect
14. The players understand each other through \_\_\_\_\_ contact.  
 a. eye      b. ear      c. nose      d. mouth
15. My friends and I \_\_\_\_\_ using "WhatsApp".  
 a. communicate      b. connect      c. copy      d. believe
16. \_\_\_\_\_ are people who know lots about a subject.  
 a. Advantages      b. Exports      c. Identities      d. Experts

## Speaking

## Giving advice, opinions and suggestions

بداء النصيح ويقدم الرأي والاقتراحات

يستخدم العبارات التالية للتعبير عن النصيحة / الرأي / الاقتراحات:

<b>Advice</b>	النصيحة	<b>You should...</b>	يجب عليك أن ...
<b>Opinion</b>	الرأي	From my point of view, ... In my opinion, ... I think...	من وجهة نظري, ... في رأيي, ... اعتقد ...
<b>Suggestion</b>	الاقتراح	Let's + inf.... Why don't you / we + inf....? How about + v-ing .....	هيا ... لماذا ...? ما رأيك في ...?

## General Exercises

on Lessons 3 &amp; 4



## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Yasser wants to buy a new laptop.

Yasser : I want to buy a laptop, dad.

Dad : ① .....

Yasser : Do you think a tablet is better?

Dad : ② ..... It's easier to use.

Yasser : Good opinion, dad. ③ .....

Dad : Today, I'm busy. ④ .....

Yasser : Tomorrow? OK! Should we buy a modern or an old one?

Dad : ⑤ .....

Yasser : But a modern one is expensive.

Dad : No problem. I have enough money.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- In Switzerland, you do not need to be an ... to speak many languages **WB**  
a. experiment      b. expert      c. experience      d. expect
- Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their ... **WB**  
a. eye contact      b. facial expressions  
c. touch      d. body language
- Shady can hear ... inside the house. **WB**  
a. sounds      b. smell      c. touch      d. taste



4. Modern technology helps people to \_\_\_\_\_ with each other.  
a. see                      b. communicate                      c. read                      d. fight
5. \_\_\_\_\_ about going out for a walk? It's fine today.  
a. When                      b. Why                      c. How                      d. Where
6. \_\_\_\_\_ my point of view, it's important to study new languages  
a. From                      b. In                      c. By                      d. for
7. Some animals can \_\_\_\_\_ sounds. The parrot is one of them.  
a. connect                      b. feel                      c. copy                      d. spend

WB

3 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

SB

عدد كلمات في رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

to your friend Radwa to advise her about the problem with her sister.

. Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma345@gmail.com

. Your friend's name is Radwa and her email address is radwa898@yahoo.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What should Radwa tell her sister?
- What's your advice to Radwa?
- What would you do if you were Radwa?
- What should Radwa advise her sister not to do?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- You should tell your sister .....
- My advice to you is .....
- If I were you, I'd .....
- You should advise your sister not to .....

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

summer school	مدرسة صيفية	spelling	التهجاء
context	سياق الكلام / سياق الحديث	punctuation	علامات الترقيم
volunteer	متطوع	pronunciation	النطق
personal statement	بيان شخصي	accent	لكنة
vocabulary	مفردات لغوية	improve (d)	يطور / يحسن
application form	استمارة / طلب تقديم	manage (d)	يدير / ينظم
study plan	خطة دراسية		

## Important phrases

manage your time	نظم وقتك	sleep well	نم جيداً
work alone	أعمل بمفردك	be organised	كن منظمًا
take a break	خذ فترة راحة		



## Vocabulary

negative meaning	معنى سلبي	flashcards	بطاقات تعليمية مصورة
title	لقب / عنوان (كتاب أو فيلم)	furniture	أثاث
timetable	جدول مواعيد	topic	موضوع
summer courses	دورات تدريبية صيفية	news article	مقال إخباري
nationality	جنسية	revise (d)	يراجع
email address	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني	test (ed) (n)	يختبر / اختبار
bilingual	ثنائي اللغة	redise (d)	يدرك
textbook	كتاب مدرسي	smoke (d) (n)	يدخن / دخان
comments	تعليقات		

## Expressions & Prepositions

make a study timetable	يعمل جدول للاستخدام	have fun	يستمتع
the best way to + inf. ....	أفضل طريقة لـ ....	do sport / activities	يمارس رياضة / أنشطة
sounds fun	يبدو ممتع	from around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
walk past	يسير مازاً بـ	at the same time	في نفس الوقت

come from	باني من (بلده)	organised by topic	منظم حسب الموضوع
look the same	بدو متطابق / متماثل	best for	الأفضل لـ
get better	يتحسن	listen for / to	يستمع لـ
English-language TV programmes	برامج تلفزيونية لتعلم الإنجليزية	good at	جيد في

### Conjugations of

#### Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
break	يكسر	broke	broken
come	يأتي	came	come
spell	ينتهي	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled

Word	Meaning	Opposite
negative	سلبي	positive
friendly	ودود	unfriendly



### Definitions

organised	منظم	- able to plan <sup>(1)</sup> things carefully <sup>(2)</sup> - arranged or planned	1- يخطط 2- بعناية
volunteer	متطوع	a person who helps others without getting anything in return <sup>(3)</sup>	3- في المقابل
improve	يحسن / يتطور	to get better at something	



### Language Notes

#### 1) The prefix (dis)

- يضاف في بداية بعض الكلمات الإنجليزية مقاطع تعطي معنى مختلف للكلمة تسمى بادئات (prefixes).
- من هذه المقاطع البادئة (dis-) حيث تعطي معنى سلبى أو عكس الكلمة الأصلية:

organised	منظم	disorganised	غير منظم
connected	متصل	disconnected	غير متصل
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage	عيب

- لاحظ في الكلمات السابقة إذا حذفنا المقطع (dis) فإن الكلمة المتبقية ستكون ذات معنى وهو عكس الكلمة لكن لا ينطبق ذلك على كلمات أخرى مثل (disappointed).

### ② too + adj (for...) + to + Inf.

• يستخدم التعبير السابق للتعبير عن شيء كثير أو رائد لدرجة ألا يتحمل سعره - حرارته

Ex. My house is too noisy to study in.

Ex. This shirt is too expensive for me to buy.

### ③ street / road

• street شارع في منطقة سكنية

Ex. We live in a quiet street.

• road طريق مخصص للسفر أو التنقل بين مكانين / مدينتين

Ex. The farm is on Cairo-Alexandria road.

### ④ Completing an application form

بيانات اكمال استمارة لتقديم طلب

• عند التقدم بطلب الوظيفة / الالتحاق بمدرسة / جامعة / دورة تدريبية ... إلخ، تكمل استمارة بالبيانات الآتية:

Name: ..... الاسم:

Age: ..... العمر:

Date of birth: ..... تاريخ الميلاد:

Nationality: ..... الجنسية:

Address: ..... العنوان:

Phone number: ..... رقم الهاتف:

Email address: ..... عنوان البريد الإلكتروني:

Personal statement: ..... بيان شخصي:

### Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of connected is .....

a. disconnected      b. connecting      c. ilconnected      d. inconnected

2. The tea is ..... hot to drink.

a. two      b. toe      c. to      d. too

3. Take Ismailia Desert ..... to travel from Cairo to Ismailia.

a. Street      b. Road      c. Ocean      d. Sky



# Reading

SB Page (62)

استلمة إلى الدروس



## English language summer school for teenagers!

Do you want to improve your English? Would you like to study in England with other young people from around the world? Come and stay at Hapstone House, in the south of England, for our summer courses! You can study every morning with our teachers, expert teachers and spend the afternoons doing sports or other activities. Every weekend we visit famous English places (like London or Oxford).  
Learn English,  
have fun,  
visit England!

For more information, visit our website.

WB Page (111)

### Study plan<sup>(1)</sup>: how to learn English vocabulary<sup>(2)</sup>

- 1- Make flashcards of words that you need to remember, organised by topic (for example, words for furniture).
- 2- Write the words in context: that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words.
- 3- Don't try to remember too many words at the same time: find how many words is best for you.
- 4- Watch English-language TV programmes or films and listen for new words.
- 5- Read as many stories and news articles as you can: it's the best way to learn vocabulary!
- 6- Work with a friend and try to test each other on important words.

- ١- خطة دراستي
- ٢- مفردات لغوية
- ٣- بطاقات تعليمية
- ٤- شطرنج / مرتب
- ٥- موضوع
- ٦- قات
- ٧- سياق الكلام
- ٨- معروف
- ٩- مشكلات اختيارية

WB Page (112)

Hi

My name's Mario. I am fourteen years old. My birthday is 14 February and I'm from Italy. My address is 7 North Road, Rome and my phone number is 889900. I don't have email (my parents don't like computers!). I want to improve my English because I want to do well in my exams next year. I think that your course sounds fun and I think I will enjoy your activities. I love playing sports such as football and tennis. I look forward to hearing from you.  
Yours,  
Mario Dollo

- ١- عنوان
- ٢- رقم الهاتف
- ٣- يولي حيداً
- ٤- مثل

When my father was younger, he used to help on his uncle's farm. One day, he was \_\_\_\_\_ the building where the horses slept when he saw some \_\_\_\_\_. He \_\_\_\_\_ there was a fire. The horses were \_\_\_\_\_ and they didn't want to leave the building. My father was very \_\_\_\_\_ and made eye contact with the horses. Then, he carefully took them from the building. When I heard this story, I decided that I wanted to become a \_\_\_\_\_. Next year, I am starting studying at university. I think it will be difficult work, but I \_\_\_\_\_ animals. I'm looking forward to working with them in the future.

## Exercises on Vocabulary

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. When you get tired, you can \_\_\_\_\_ a break. WB  
 a. make                      b. take                      c. win                      d. do
2. Successful persons always \_\_\_\_\_ their time. WB  
 a. manage                      b. damage                      c. test                      d. revise
3. Workers have to \_\_\_\_\_ their skills to get good jobs. WB  
 a. move                      b. include                      c. improve                      d. prove
4. The charity needs some \_\_\_\_\_ like you. 2022 model - WB  
 a. vans                      b. fans                      c. voluntary                      d. volunteers
5. To \_\_\_\_\_ means to join two things or places together. WB  
 a. fix                      b. connect                      c. copy                      d. explain
6. Salem must \_\_\_\_\_ well for the next exam. 2022 model - WB  
 a. fail                      b. revise                      c. pass                      d. manage
7. Mona used to \_\_\_\_\_ sports when she was young. WB  
 a. make                      b. do                      c. take                      d. wait

### Bit by Bit Exercises

8. The two cities are \_\_\_\_\_ by a bridge.  
 a. connected                      b. organised                      c. disorganised                      d. disappointed
9. We add the prefix " \_\_\_\_\_ " to give the opposite of "organised".  
 a. ir-                      b. il-                      c. dis-                      d. in-

- 10 The question is ..... difficult to answer.  
 a too b two c to d twice
- 11 We should be ..... to do better in our life.  
 a disorganised b broken c organised d known
- 12 The books are ..... alphabetically on the shelf.  
 a organised b disappointed c disconnected d closed
- 13 I felt so ..... when my parents didn't come to drive me home.  
 a connected b disconnected c disappointed d organised
- 14 One of the ..... of this job is that they offer a car to and from the factory.  
 a disadvantages b damages c bad points d advantages
- 15 We learn a lot of ..... in this lesson.  
 a volunteers b vocabulary c furniture d breaks

### Speaking

#### A discussion about study tips (for an exam)

مناقشة حول إرشادات الاستذكار

• نستخدم العبارات والنصائح الآتية عند نصح شخص ما بكيفية الاستذكار

##### Be organised

كن منظمًا

- Know what you need to do and when to do it. - اعرّف ماذا تحتاج أن تفعل ومتى.

##### Manage your time

نظم وقتك

- Make a study timetable.

- قم بعمل جدول للاستذكار.

##### Where do you study?

أين تذاكر؟

- Find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library. - اوجد مكان هادئ للاستذكار. إذا كان المنزل مزدحم يمكن أن تذهب للمكتبة.

##### Work alone or with friends.

اعمل بمفردك أو مع أصدقاءك.

##### Take breaks,

خذ فترات راحة.

##### Sleep well.

نم جيدًا.





●

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

## “How to learn English vocabulary”

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What is the problem that most learners face?
- How can flashcards be used?
- Why should we watch English-language TV programmes?
- What's the best way to learn vocabulary?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Most English-language learners face the problem of \_\_\_\_\_.
- They can make flashcards of \_\_\_\_\_.
- They should watch \_\_\_\_\_.
- The best way to learn vocabulary is \_\_\_\_\_.

## Key Vocabulary

learner	متعلم (في مرحلة التعليم)	expert	خبير
mostly	غالباً / في الغالب	national	قومي / محلي
take notes	يسجل ملاحظات	dialect	لهجة
disappointed	فحبط	advantage	ميزة
proud	فخور	identity	هوية
body language	لغة الجسد	spelling	التهجئة
eye contact	تواصل بصري (بالنظر)	punctuation	علامات الترقيم
multilingual	معدد اللغات	pronunciation	النطق
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	accent	لكنة
sound	صوت (شيء)	repair (ed) = fix (ed)	يصلح
voice	صوت (بشري)	fail (ed)	يفشل / يرسب
summer school	مدرسة صيفية	pass (ed)	يبح / يجتاز
context	سياق الكلام / سياق الحديث	decide (d)	يقرر
volunteer	متطوع	improve (d)	يطور / يحسن
personal statement	بيان شخصي	manage (d)	يدير / ينظم
vocabulary	مفردات لغوية	connect (ed)	يصل / يربط
application form	استمارة / طلب تقديم	touch (n) (ed)	اللمس / يلمس
study plan	خطة دراسية		

## Learning styles

writing	الكتابة	listening	الاستماع
reading	القراءة	doing things	عمل الأشياء
seeing things	رؤية الأشياء		

## Important phrases

manage your time	نظم وقتك	sleep well	نم جيداً
work alone	إعمل بمفردك	be organised	كن منظماً
take a break	خذ استراحة		



# Language

## 1- The present simple tense

(من المضارع البسيط)

فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	inf. مصدر الفعل	don't + inf. never + inf.	Do + (كلمة استفهام) فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	inf. + s / es / ies	doesn't + inf. never + inf + s / es / ies	Does (كلمة استفهام) + فاعل + inf.?

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

every (day - week - month - year) - always - usually - often - sometimes - never

### Usage الاستخدام

يعبر عن حقائق - أفعال متكررة وعادات

Ex. We **help** mum at home.

- Ali **lives** in Giza.

Ex. We **don't** make noise.

- Mona **doesn't** live in Giza.

Ex. Do they **have** a car?

- Does Aya **live** in Giza?

- Yes, they **do**. / No, they **don't**.

- Yes, she **does**. / No, she **doesn't**.

## 2- The past simple tense

(من الماضي البسيط)

إثبات	نفي	استفهام
فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل	didn't + inf. + فاعل	Did + (كلمة استفهام) + فاعل + inf.?

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

### Usage الاستخدام

يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي

Ex. She **cooked** fish yesterday.

Ex. She **didn't** cook meat yesterday.

Ex. Did she **cook** rice yesterday?

- Yes, she **did**. / No, she **didn't**.

## 3- The past continuous tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

فاعل	إثبات	لغي	استفهام
I He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was + v-ing	was not + v-ing	(كلمة استفهام) Was + فاعل + v-ing?
We / You / They / اسم جمع	were + v-ing	were not + v-ing	Were + فاعل + v-ing?

**Keywords:** الكلمات الدالة

when / while / as / just as

**Usage:** الاستخدام

يعبر عن حدث كان مستمراً في وقت محدد في الماضي / حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي عندما قطعته حدث آخر

Ex. I was reading a book when mum called me.

Ex. He was eating cake

Ex. Were you flying a kite?

## 4- The future simple tense

زمن المستقبل البسيط

إثبات	لغي	استفهام
فاعل + will + inf.	فاعل + will not (won't) + inf.	(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf.?

**Keywords:** الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow - in the future - next (week - month - year)

**Usage:** الاستخدام

يعبر عن شيء سوف يحدث في المستقبل

Ex. She will visit us tomorrow

Ex. They will not (won't) sing.

Ex. Will you do your homework?

- Yes, I will. / No, I won't.

**Speaking?**

## 4) Talking about learning styles

الحديث عن طرق التعلم

- نسال ونجيب عن طرق التعلم كالآتي:

A: How do you prefer to learn?

B: I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing.

A: What type of classes are your favourite?

B: I like classes when we get to do things and don't only read or listen.

A: What type of learning would you like to do more?

B: I'd like to do listening activities more.

A: What would you like to do less? Why?

B: I'd like to do less writing activities because I'm not interested in learning by writing.



## 2) Giving advice, opinions and suggestions

Review

### Advice

You should...

### Opinion

From my point of view,

In my opinion, ,

I think .

### Suggestion

Let's + Inf....

Why don't you / we + Inf.. ?

How about + v-ing ....?

## 3) A discussion about study tips (for an exam)

### Be organised

- Know what you need to do and when to do it.

### Manage your time

- Make a study timetable.

### Where do you study?

- Find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library.

### Work alone or with friends.

### Take breaks.

### Sleep well.

## General Exercises on Unit 12

### 1) Complete the following dialogue:

Ganna is talking to Aliaa about a holiday.

Ganna : Where did you go at the weekend?

Aliaa : ❶

Ganna : To the club! ❷

Aliaa : To do some sport there.

Ganna : ❸

Aliaa : I like swimming.

Ganna : When will you go next time?

Aliaa : ❹

Ganna : Can I come with you?

Aliaa : ❺

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The weather this weekend will be ..... cloudy. It is going to rain.  
a. never                      b. no                      c. hardly                      d. mostly
2. I use body ..... to express my feelings with friends.  
a. clock                      b. weight                      c. language                      d. building
3. His facial ..... showed me how he felt.  
a. revisions                      b. expressions                      c. occasions                      d. decisions
4. His strength is a big ..... to win the competition.  
a. advantage                      b. mistake                      c. disadvantage                      d. lose
5. Salma has got a lovely singing .....  
a. sight                      b. smell                      c. voice                      d. sound
6. How much will it cost to ..... the TV?  
a. destroy                      b. repeat                      c. reread                      d. repair
7. The player ..... proud when he received the gold medal.  
a. felt                      b. filled                      c. fell                      d. fall
8. About five million people ..... in Alexandria. WB  
a. are living                      b. live                      c. lives                      d. living
9. At the moment, lots of American tourists ..... photographs of the castle. WB  
a. take                      b. used to take                      c. are taking                      d. was taking
10. This old tree is going to fall. I think they ..... it down.  
a. will cut                      b. are cutting                      c. cut                      d. used to cut
11. The horses were frightened and they ..... to leave the building. WB  
a. don't want                      b. won't want                      c. didn't want                      d. wants
12. While we ..... breakfast, you phoned us. WB  
a. was have                      b. will have                      c. have                      d. were having

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The sun ..... (will set) in the west.
2. The boy is going to ..... (watching) a football match tomorrow. WB
3. I didn't use to ..... (walking) to school.

4. While my mother

5. My father

### General Exercises

(cooked), my father arrived home.

(going to) work because he's tired

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words:

30

"Your study plans"

ممكنك من اكمال التمرين

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What should you do if you have a project or an exam?
- How can you make a study plan?
- How can you be organised?
- How can you manage your time?
- Where should you study?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- You should ..... if you have a project or an exam.
- There are many steps you should follow to .....
- You should know what .....
- You should find a quiet place to .....



### A Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The speaker wanted to be a/an .....  
a. scientist      b. engineer      c. teacher      d. pilot
- The speaker finds science very ..... now.  
a. easy      b. tiring      c. difficult      d. exciting

### B Language Function

- 2 Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Tamer is telling Ahmed about his visit to a museum.

Ahmed : Hello Tamer! How are you?

Tamer : ① .....

Ahmed : ② ..... ?

Tamer : Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum.

Ahmed : ③ ..... ?

Tamer : I saw lots of statues.

Ahmed : That's a great trip

### C Usage

- 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- All the ..... about that programme are great.  
a. causes      b. reviews      c. diagrams      d. skills
- To study well, you have to ..... your time.  
a. succeed      b. manage      c. damage      d. waste
- While he was eating the phone .....  
a. ring      b. rings      c. rang      d. ringing
- Wait a minute, I ..... this box for you.  
a. will carry      b. carry      c. am going to carry      d. am carrying
- Can you tell me the ..... between the two countries?  
a. d fference      b. different      c. intelligent      d. intelligence

### D Reading Comprehension

- 4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Ali and I am in Prep 2. I live in Zagazig with my family. We are a happy family. My father works at Zagazig hospital. My mom is a housewife, she looks after



us at time I have two sisters and one bigger brother. He is an engineer. We all love spending time watching TV and having fun together. In our free time, we love to go to the parks and the cinema.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many people are there in Ali's family?
2. Where does his mom work?
3. What does the underlined word "have fun" mean?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. His father is a .....  
 a. teacher                      b. doctor                      c. chef                      d. cook
5. Ali has three .....  
 a. sisters                      b. brothers                      c. siblings                      d. cousins

5. Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. busy - always - You - making and repairing - are - things. ....
2. love to - You - watch - look at - and - diagrams - videos. ....
3. you - Do - they - think - understand? ....
4. can't - the way - in - people - Animals - can speak. ....

Writing

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

WB

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

"The importance of learning different languages"

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you like learning languages? Why / Why not?
- Which languages do you like?
- Why is it important to learn different languages?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I like / don't like learning languages because .....
- The languages I like are .....
- It's important to learn different languages because .....

## Paragraphs & Emails

### Paragraphs

#### 1- What sort of learner I am

There are many different learning styles. Some prefer to learn by hearing, seeing, doing things, reading and writing. For me the best way to remember English grammar is to make up a song about it! Then I sing the song quietly to myself. I think it is a great way to remember irregular verbs! I learn best by listening. I also find it difficult to understand science books. When I do an experiment in the laboratory, I understand what is happening! I learn best by doing things.

#### 2- How to learn English vocabulary

Most English-language learners face a problem. They find it hard to remember vocabulary. So, there are many ways that can help them. They can make flashcards of words that they need to remember. They should watch English-language TV programmes or films. They should read many stories and news articles. This is the best way to learn vocabulary. They can also work with friends and try to test each other on important words.

#### 3- Your study plans

You should make a plan if you have a project or an exam. There are many steps you should follow to make a study plan. You should be organised. You should know what you need to do and when to do it. You should manage your time. You should make a study timetable. You should find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library. You should take breaks. You should sleep well.

#### 4- The importance of learning different languages

I like learning languages. This helps me communicate with friends in different

countries. I like English and French most. Learning different languages is important. I can read books written in these languages.

### Emails

#### 1- Advice about problems with my sister

**From** : fatma345@gmail.com  
**To** : redwa898@yahoo.com  
**Subject** : Advice about problems with my sister

Dear Radwa,

I hope you are fine. You should tell your sister how you feel about her. You should tell her that you miss her so much. If I were you, I would share my hobbies and interests with her. You can read an interesting story together. You should tell her that talking on the phone for a long time is bad for her health. You should advise her not to waste her time on the internet. I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

Best wishes.

Yours,

Fatma

#### 2- Communication with animals

**From** : magda898@yahoo.com  
**To** : ola345@gmail.com  
**Subject** : Communication with animals  
 Dear O.a,

My uncle is a farmer. I visit his farm every weekend. I look after the animals there. I like them very much because I think they understand me. Animals communicate, both with us and with each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language. For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like. Bees dance when they find a good flower. Some birds can copy sounds. I will be happy if you visit my uncle's farm.

Yours,

Magda



### Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اقرأ نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker has an older .....  
 a. brother                      b. sister                      c. friend                      d. cousin
2. The speaker's sister is ..... years older than him/her.  
 a. two                              b. four                              c. three                              d. five
3. The speaker's sister doesn't want to ..... to him/her very much  
 a. listen                              b. speak                              c. write                              d. talk
4. The speaker's sister is always on the ..... or talking to people on her phone.  
 a. internet                              b. house                              c. school                              d. TV

### Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman wants to improve his English.

Ayman : I want to improve my English. What should I do?

Anwar : ① .....

Ayman : Do you think watching English films is a good way?

Anwar : ② .....

Ayman : ③ ..... ?

Anwar : Travelling to England is very useful but it costs a lot.

Ayman : ④ ..... ?

Anwar : Talking to English people on the internet is a good idea.

Ayman : ⑤ .....

Anwar : You're welcome.

### Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Learning a new language has become important recently. Learning a new language is always an exciting experience. There could be many reasons that lead to the need to learn new languages but, the advantages are great. In other words, speaking more than one language can make people's lives easier. For example, people who

can speak other languages can find jobs easily. They can work in tourism as tour guides, hotel managers and many other high paying jobs. In addition, those people can communicate with foreigners from different countries. Moreover, learning a foreign language is a great way to explore other cultures and see the world from different angles. In conclusion, learning another language has become a necessity recently.

**A. Answer the following questions :**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?  
.....
2. Who can find jobs easily?  
.....
3. What can people do to communicate with foreigners?  
.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Learning a foreign language is a great way to ..... other cultures.  
a. become                      b. explore                      ☒ c. work                      ☒ d. pay
7. Speaking more than one language can make people's lives .....  
a. simple                      b. hard                      ☒ c. harmful                      ☒ d. terrible
6. The underlined word "exciting" is the opposite of .....  
a. interesting                      b. easy                      ☒ c. amazing                      ☒ d. boring

**D. Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Our car has broken down. I think we need someone to ..... it.  
a. explain                      b. burn                      c. fail                      ☒ d. repair
2. Medhat can't drive because he ..... his driving test. WB  
a. passed                      b. succeeded                      c. failed                      ☒ d. won
3. The family were ..... when they found their hotel room was next to a factory. WB  
a. disappointed                      b. proud                      c. happy                      ☒ d. pleased
4. The teacher thinks that all the students in our class will ..... the test. WB  
a. sound                      b. lose                      c. pay                      ☒ d. pass
5. The student understood me when he / she made ..... with me.  
a. touch                      b. eye contact                      c. sounds                      ☒ d. voice
6. Many people in Switzerland are .....; they speak four languages. WB  
a. blind                      b. greedy                      c. careless                      ☒ d. multilingual



7. Our school needs \_\_\_\_\_ to take part in the festival.  
 a. volunteers b. thieves c. engines d. farmers
8. Next year, they \_\_\_\_\_ a new hotel in the park.  
 a. build b. built c. are going to build d. are going to build  
 c. were building d. are going to build on his uncle's farm
9. When my father was younger, he \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. used to help b. helps c. is helping d. will help  
 on his uncle's farm
10. When my dad arrived home, we \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.  
 a. will have b. were having c. are having d. have

WB

WB

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Sara \_\_\_\_\_ (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night. SB
2. At the moment, I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) an English exercise. WB
3. In the future, I think we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) more lessons online. WB
4. Listen! Your mobile \_\_\_\_\_ (ring).

### Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

to your friend telling her about communication with animals.

- Your friend's name is Magda and her email address is magda898@yahoo.com.
- Your name is Ola and your email address is ola345@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What do you look after? Where?
- Why do you like animals?
- Do some animals communicate? How?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I look after animals in .....
- I like animals very much because they .....
- Some animals communicate by .....

## Key

استمع إلى المفردات

geography	جغرافيا / تضاريس	opening party	حمل للضياع
Eco Shop	محل بيع منتجات صديقة للبيئة	communication	اتصال / التواصل
camping trip	رحلة تخيم	owner	ملك
luxury	شيء فاخر		

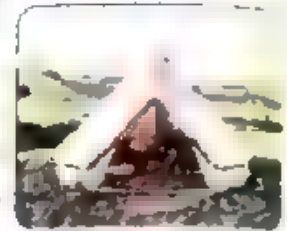


## Audioscript

SB Page (64)

استمع إلى النصوص

Next month is our school **camping trip**. We're leaving in three weeks and camping for three nights. The bus is leaving at 8 am on the 10<sup>th</sup> May and we will be back on the 13<sup>th</sup> at 6 pm. As you know, we're going to the desert and it will be hot **in the day** and cold at night. You will need to bring loose, cool clothes for the day and warm night clothes. You will also need comfortable trainers because we're going to do lots of walking. You're going to be learning about life in the desert and about the **geography** of the area. You'll also need a camera, notebook and pen. Please take this letter for your parents which has all the information that you'll need.



١- رحلة تخيم

٢- بهاراً

٣- جغرافيا / تضاريس

WB Page (114)

**Guide** : We're going to climb that big mountain today, Karim.

**Karim** : Do you mean the mountain with the snow on top?

**Guide** : No, we're going to climb the one with the tall, green trees on it.

**Karim** : It looks a bit scary to me!

**Guide** : From my point of view, it won't be scary if you wear the correct clothes.

**Karim** : OK, what should I wear?

**Guide** : You should wear these thick leather boots, and this hard, plastic hat.

**Karim** : This hat is too big. Do you have a smaller size?

**Guide** : Here you are. Does it fit?

**Karim** : Yes, thank you.

**Guide** : OK, let's go up the mountain!

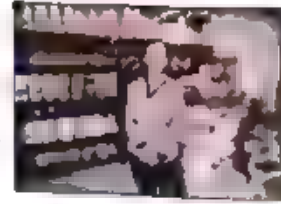




# Reading

SB page (32)

On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre. The Eco Shop<sup>1</sup> only sells things that are environment-friendly<sup>2</sup>. Last week, we talked to the owner<sup>3</sup>, Mariam EL-Soory, about her new shop. "Lots of people want to help the environment but it is sometimes difficult to know what to buy. We are working with lots of people to help local industries<sup>4</sup>, too. So, we're going to sell local fruit and vegetables, luxury<sup>5</sup>, Egyptian cotton clothes and other local things that don't damage the environment. You can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling<sup>6</sup>. We will also have cooking and sewing classes at the shop soon".



- ١- محل صديق للبيئة
- ٢- صديق للبيئة
- ٣- مالك
- ٤- صناعات محلية
- ٥- شئ فاخر
- ٦- إعادة تدوير
- ٧- مرشدة
- ٨- حفل افتتاح

Mariam worked for many years as a guide<sup>7</sup> at a beach. She was sad because she saw a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach. When she was picking up some rubbish one day, she decided she wanted to do more to help the environment and had the idea of a shop. The shop is having an opening party<sup>8</sup> at 1 pm in three days' time.

WB Page (114)

New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time.

For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages.



Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial expressions before they send a message!

WB Page (115)

Tarek is wearing a long, loose, cotton galabeya. He's also wearing a long, wool scarf.

Osama is wearing casual clothes, but I think he looks smart. He's wearing a T-shirt with a blue and white shirt over it. He's also wearing cotton trousers, but I don't think he's wearing a belt.

Deena is at a special occasion. She is wearing smart traditional clothes. I love her beautiful, white scarf. She's also wearing a loose, long, dress with flowers on it.

# Test on Units 10, 11 & 12



## A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

يسمى الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الدرس

1. There is a lot of ..... where the speaker lives.  
a. pollution      b. rubbish      c. paper      d. people
2. The speaker's ..... never recycle their rubbish.  
a. friends      b. brothers      c. sisters      d. neighbours
3. In the speaker's view, it is important to .....  
a. swim      b. live      c. recycle      d. walk
4. We should take ..... and glass out of the bin and recycle them.  
a. plastic      b. rubbish      c. leather      d. paper

## B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Amir and Hani are talking about Amir's school uniform.

Amir : What do you wear when you go to school?

Hani : ① .....

Amir : Where did you buy this uniform?

Hani : ② .....

Amir : ③ ..... ?

Hani : It costs L.E 200.

Amir : Wow! It's cheap. ④ .....

Hani : Sure. I can come with you.

Amir : ⑤ .....

Hani : You're welcome.

## C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

One summer evening, I was sitting by the window reading a story. After a time, it became too dark for me to read easily. When I got up to light the lamp, I heard a loud cry "help! help!" It seemed that the sound came from the garden. I looked out, but I couldn't see anything. I heard the cry again. I decided to go out and have a look



because there might be someone that needed help. I took my torch and a walking stick. I looked everywhere, but there was no sign of anybody. I went back to my house. I started to read my book. I was scared by the sound "help, help" behind my shoulder. I dropped my book and jumped up. There, I saw a green and red bird. It was a parrot. It flew out of my window when I went out.

**A. Answer the following questions :**

1. Why couldn't the writer see anything from the window?
2. Who / What was shouting for help?
3. Why was the writer scared?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The best title for this passage is . . . . .
- a. The Open Window                                      b. My Torch  
c. A Scary Evening                                        d. The Garden
5. The opposite of the word "dark" in line two is . . . . .
- a. heavy                                  b. light                                  c. far                                  d. cheap
6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the . . . . .
- a. garden                                  b. lamp                                  c. stick                                  d. parrot

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This material is \_\_\_\_\_ for making luxury clothes.  
a. perfect                      b. wooden                      c. interested                      d. patient
2. The government is building new factories to help the Egyptian \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. tourism                      b. education                      c. industry                      d. chemistry
3. Noha is the \_\_\_\_\_ girl in our family.  
a. as smart                      b. smartest                      c. smart                      d. smarter
4. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ car.  
a. beautiful, black, long                      b. black, beautiful, long  
c. beautiful, long, black                      d. long, beautiful, black
5. \_\_\_\_\_ to English songs will improve your English.  
a. Listening                      b. Reading                      c. Writing                      d. Speaking



- 6 The new road will \_\_\_\_\_ traffic through the town by 30%  
a. pollute                      b. add                      c. gain                      d. reduce
7. \_\_\_\_\_ use the wind to make electricity.  
a. Solar panels                      b. Wind turbines  
c. Washing machines                      d. Phones
- 8 Farida is running fast and she \_\_\_\_\_ the race.  
a. is going to win                      b. winning                      c. won                      d. win
9. I felt so \_\_\_\_\_ when my son graduated from university.  
a. angry                      b. proud                      c. sad                      d. disappointed
10. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ to music now.  
a. listened                      b. listens                      c. is listening                      d. was listening

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football in the park.  
2. It was raining when I \_\_\_\_\_ (get up) this morning.  
3. They are \_\_\_\_\_ (brown, leather, old) boots.  
4. Look out! \_\_\_\_\_ (These) tree is going to fall.

### Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

"How to learn English"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## SB & WB Exercises Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- Do you think that it is easy to \_\_\_\_\_ from Arabic to English?  
a translate      b move      c find      d stay
- The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a  
a lorry      b ship      c rocket      d motorbike
- \_\_\_\_\_ are like planes, but they do not have wings!  
a. Cars      b. Cameras      c Helicopters      d Mobiles
- Mona always wears \_\_\_\_\_ on the bus because she loves listening to music.  
a mobiles      b. headphones      c dresses      d tablets
- There's a/an \_\_\_\_\_ on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.  
a app      b. screen      c battery      d charger
- Do you think that we will \_\_\_\_\_ a car that doesn't make any pollution?  
a invention      b. predict      c prediction      d invent
- That new hotel looks \_\_\_\_\_. I really don't like it.  
a nice      b. wonderful      c horrible      d fantastic
- If you don't \_\_\_\_\_ the lesson, you should tell the teacher.  
a. swim      b. visit      c. try      d understand
- You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ in the sea if it is very cold.  
a. run      b swim      c visit      d understand
- The tourists took the road south by \_\_\_\_\_, but they wanted to go north.  
a. correction      b. lever      c. mistake      d right
- Our friends sent us some photos on \_\_\_\_\_.  
a social media      b battery      c keyboard      d mouse
- \_\_\_\_\_ my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.  
a From      b. In      c. By      d On
- Technology can be bad \_\_\_\_\_ your health.  
a. at      b. to      c. for      d about
- When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to \_\_\_\_\_ its large gardens.  
a invent      b. explore      c. expect      d export
- We can use solar \_\_\_\_\_ to make electricity.  
a. doors      b. windows      c panels      d rooms
- \_\_\_\_\_ media are websites and apps that let people talk to each other online.  
a. Social      b Careful      c Electric      d Expensive
- My little sister is \_\_\_\_\_ to sweets. She always wants to eat them!  
a. damaged      b. addicted      c broken      d hated

## General Exercises

18. Do you think that there will be many \_\_\_\_\_ in your English homework?  
a. correct                      b. corrections                      c. invent                      d. inventions
19. I think people will visit other planets one day, but it is \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the sun.  
a. possible                      b. probable                      c. easy                      d. impossible
20. The door was very heavy so we had to \_\_\_\_\_ it open.  
a. call                      b. pull                      c. lock                      d. look
21. Don't touch the \_\_\_\_\_, or the machine will start.  
a. blackboard                      b. glasses                      c. telescope                      d. lever
22. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ that the weather will get hotter in the future?  
a. predict                      b. prediction                      c. invent                      d. invention
23. It was cloudy this morning, but the clouds soon \_\_\_\_\_ when the sun came out.  
a. appeared                      b. disappeared                      c. hurt                      d. damaged
24. I asked my teacher for help because I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ a new lesson.  
a. stay                      b. visit                      c. understand                      d. try
25. You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.  
a. visit                      b. stay                      c. swim                      d. predict
26. The water in the sea is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. sweet                      b. spicy                      c. juicy                      d. salty
27. \_\_\_\_\_ is an example of fast food.  
a. Cheese                      b. Pasta                      c. Pizza                      d. Cake
28. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is very \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. high                      b. sweet                      c. salty                      d. short
29. Fatafel is really \_\_\_\_\_ and it is very popular in Egypt.  
a. horrible                      b. terrible                      c. bad                      d. delicious
30. Many people are allergic to \_\_\_\_\_, so they don't eat cakes.  
a. pizzas                      b. nuts                      c. salad                      d. salt
31. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. expensive                      b. terrible                      c. old                      d. fresh
32. You need to \_\_\_\_\_ eggs and milk before you make an omelette.  
a. chop                      b. wash                      c. beat                      d. drink
33. Humans have 210 \_\_\_\_\_ in their bodies.  
a. legs                      b. backs                      c. skeletons                      d. bones
34. Meat, fish and eggs all have \_\_\_\_\_ in them.  
a. sugar                      b. protein                      c. bones                      d. skin
35. When I had a big lunch, I felt \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. full                      b. careful                      c. empty                      d. delicious
36. \_\_\_\_\_ products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones.  
a. Dairy                      b. Dary                      c. Dry                      d. Wet
37. The soup is cold. Shall we \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
a. cool                      b. freeze                      c. heat                      d. wash
38. Which of these is not a dairy product?  
a. milk                      b. rice                      c. cheese                      d. butter



39. Do you prefer to boil or \_\_\_\_\_ your eggs?  
 a. wash                      b. pour                      c. serve                      d. fry
40. My grandparents always \_\_\_\_\_ lunch in the dining room at 4 o'clock.  
 a. serve                      b. do                      c. wash                      d. play
41. \_\_\_\_\_ is a vegetable that is very healthy.  
 a. Sugar                      b. Salt                      c. Spinach                      d. Apple
42. When Tamer is worried, he doesn't feel \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. big                      b. hungry                      c. salty                      d. cheap
43. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ can be green, red or yellow.  
 a. pepper                      b. diet                      c. omelette                      d. spinach
44. Your \_\_\_\_\_ is the kind of food that you eat every day.  
 a. work                      b. exercise                      c. diet                      d. homework
45. Eman never eats fast food or unhealthy \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. sleep                      b. exercise                      c. snacks                      d. restaurants
46. A: How about drinking tea in the garden? B: It's a good \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. idea                      b. food                      c. meal                      d. diet
47. Which of these do you use to make an omelette?  
 a. sugar                      b. rice                      c. eggs                      d. chocolate
48. Which of these is bad for your teeth?  
 a. sugar                      b. salt                      c. eggs                      d. vegetables
49. I don't put any salt on my food because I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ food.  
 a. sweet                      b. big                      c. fast                      d. salty
50. If we don't use sugar to make food \_\_\_\_\_, what other things can we use?  
 a. sweet                      b. fast                      c. salty                      d. juicy
51. Samosas have \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables inside them.  
 a. spicy                      b. careless                      c. bright                      d. fast
52. There is not protein in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. meat                      b. milk                      c. fish                      d. apples
53. You need to \_\_\_\_\_ the tomatoes into small pieces.  
 a. beat                      b. heat                      c. chop                      d. fry
54. \_\_\_\_\_ isn't a dairy product.  
 a. Milk                      b. Cheese                      c. Rice                      d. Butter
55. We \_\_\_\_\_ things when we put them in our mouths.  
 a. see                      b. smell                      c. taste                      d. hear
56. My dress is damaged, so my mother is \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
 a. acting                      b. sewing                      c. painting                      d. playing
57. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals.  
 a. cartoon                      b. costume                      c. script                      d. carton
58. The children all wore funny \_\_\_\_\_ to the family party. Ahmed was a firefighter!  
 a. contents                      b. costumes                      c. concerts                      d. customs
59. Which \_\_\_\_\_ can you play?  
 a. device                      b. tool                      c. instrument                      d. concert

## General Exercises

60. Mona can't answer the phone. She is doing her  
 a scenery b museum c wake up d make-up
61. The ..... is fantastic. In the play, you feel like you are in the 1920s.  
 a century b scenery c make-up d costume
62. .... are clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else.  
 a Costumes b Scripts c Cartoons d Artists
63. A ..... person is the person who can't hear.  
 a blind b fast c tall d deaf
64. My little sister started to ..... after she fell and hurt her hand.  
 a smile b hide c laugh d cry
65. Lara always gives her grandmother a big ..... when she sees her.  
 a skill b fire c hug d concert
66. A ..... person is the person who is not able to see.  
 a blind b deaf c wise d stupid
67. A/An ..... person is the person who is not able to use parts of the body  
 in the way other people can.  
 a excited b delighted c interested d disabled
68. Don't ..... your car outside the school.  
 a bark b land c mark d park
69. .... is the things that happen in a film.  
 a Action b Nation c Review d Picnic
70. The actor became a ..... after he was in that famous film.  
 a thief b star c park d review
71. A ..... park is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.  
 a thin b same c scene d theme
72. Let's go to the ..... and fly our kites.  
 a play b park c action d cinema
73. It is nearly dark. Look, I can see a/an .....  
 a star b review c sun d picnic
74. The blind man is not able to ..... the traffic lights.  
 a hear b smell c see d taste
75. A ..... is the words for a play.  
 a script b trip c photograph d sculpture
76. .... people cannot walk.  
 a Disabled b Deaf c Dumb d Strong
77. This deaf boy is not able to ..... me.  
 a see b talk c walk d hear
78. It's a long, blue ..... You wear it around your neck.  
 a belt b handbag c sandals d scarf
79. Are his clothes smart or ..... ?  
 a greedy b casual c clever d snowy
80. Do her clothes look ..... or uncomfortable?  
 a comfortable b similar c gold d electric
81. In Ancient Egypt, clothes made of ..... were popular.  
 a oil b plastic c linen d wheat

82. \_\_\_\_\_ are jewellery that women wear around their necks.  
a. Handbags      b. Headscarves      c. Galabeyas      d. Necklaces
83. In Ancient Egypt, men and women didn't \_\_\_\_\_ very differently.  
a. call      b. dress      c. cost      d. press
84. This cloth is made from a mixture of \_\_\_\_\_ and cotton.  
a. wood      b. electricity      c. plastic      d. linen
85. Many people in Egypt work in the cotton \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. environment      b. industry      c. occasion      d. electricity
86. If something is a special \_\_\_\_\_, it means it is an important event for you.  
a. size      b. environment      c. hobby      d. occasion
87. When you wear the same \_\_\_\_\_ clothes as your sister, it means you can wear the same clothes.  
a. size      b. occasion      c. price      d. environment
88. \_\_\_\_\_ are a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold.  
a. Chemicals      b. Baskets      c. Crops      d. Soils
89. Scientists used the new app to determine the \_\_\_\_\_ of underground water.  
a. invitation      b. location      c. conversation      d. station
90. We have a \_\_\_\_\_ for recycling in our house.  
a. system      b. wind      c. rain      d. solar
91. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of dangerous \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. vitamins      b. proteins      c. bacteria      d. suitcases
92. I always listen carefully to my teacher and \_\_\_\_\_ notes.  
a. hunt      b. talk      c. take      d. fill
93. If you \_\_\_\_\_ an exam, you will feel proud.  
a. fail      b. fill      c. succeed      d. pass
94. \_\_\_\_\_ study science three times a week during the school term.  
a. Learners      b. Farmers      c. Trainers      d. Cleaners
95. If you \_\_\_\_\_ an exam, you will feel disappointed.  
a. feel      b. fail      c. pass      d. fall
96. When was the last time you \_\_\_\_\_ disappointed?  
a. felt      b. fall      c. filled      d. fell
97. It was \_\_\_\_\_ cloudy today. There wasn't much sun.  
a. hardly      b. never      c. rarely      d. mostly
98. Students need to \_\_\_\_\_ what job they want to do.  
a. travel      b. fix      c. repair      d. decide
99. A sound that comes from your mouth is your \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. sound      b. hear      c. voice      d. touch
100. What is the \_\_\_\_\_ language of Egypt?  
a. fashion      b. occasional      c. emotional      d. national
101. A person who speaks lots of languages is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. multilingual      b. greedy      c. lazy      d. national
102. In Switzerland, you do not need to be an \_\_\_\_\_ to speak many languages.  
a. experiment      b. expert      c. experience      d. expect

104. Shady can hear \_\_\_\_\_ inside the house .  
a. sounds                  b. smell                  c. touch                  d. taste
105. A blind man chooses the shirt by .....  
a. sounds                  b. sight                  c. smell                  d. touch
106. Some animals can ..... sounds.  
a. connect                  b. feel                  c. copy                  d. spend
107. When you get tired, you can ..... a break.  
a. make                  b. take                  c. win                  d. do
108. Successful persons always ..... their time.  
a. manage                  b. damage                  c. test                  d. revise
109. I want to ... my English because I want to do well in my exams.  
a. move                  b. include                  c. improve                  d. prove
110. The Portuguese and Spanish languages are ..... in many ways.  
a. connected                  b. disappointed  
c. disadvantages                  b. disorganised
111. A ..... Is a person who helps others without getting anything In return.  
a. learner                  b. thief                  c. volunteer                  d. worker
112. Medhat can't drive because he ..... his driving test.  
a. passed                  b. succeeded                  c. failed                  d. won
113. The family were .... when they found their hotel room was next to a factory!  
a. disappointed                  b. proud                  c. happy                  d. pleased
114. The teacher thinks that all the students in our class will ..... the test.  
a. sound                  b. lose                  c. pay                  d. pass
115. Many people in Switzerland are ..... : they speak four languages.  
a. blind                  b. greedy                  c. careless                  d. multilingual
116. Our school needs ..... to take part in the festival.  
a. volunteers                  b. thieves                  c. engines                  d. farmers

**① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 292



- 5 I think there  
a will be      b be      c won't be      d was
- 6 I asked my aunt to  
a build      b check      c French internet article into Arabic
- 7 When you go to bed, you  
a won't      b will      c. translate      d damage  
turn your phone off
- 8 You should tell a parent or teacher if you  
a felt      b. will feel      c. should      d. harm  
worned about something
- 9 When you feel tired, you . . . have a break.  
a. will      b. shouldn't      c. are felt      d. feel
- 10 You shouldn't watch videos on the internet if your head  
a will hurt      b. hurting      c. not      d. should
- 11 If you someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online.  
a. didn't know      b. don't know      c. hurts      d. would hurt
- 12 If you see people being horrible online, you . . . tell your parents.  
a. should      b. won't      c. not know      d. won't know
- 13 If I go to the shops on Saturday, I some new headphones.  
a. buys      b. bought      c. are      d. shouldn't
- 14 If you want to get to the park quickly, you . the bus.  
a. would take      b. take      c. would buy      d. will buy
- 15 If you go to the Egyptian Museum, you see Ali because he is in Luxor  
a. should      b. will      c. should take      d. took
- 16 We won't go to the beach this weekend if it very windy.  
a. is      b. will be      c. was      d. don't
- 17 . . . it be cold if I travel to England?  
a. Will      b. Does      c. Is      d. should be
- 18 When you . . . online games, you should check that you can't buy anything.  
a. played      b. plays      c. playing      d. play
- 19 The tourists . . . the Pyramids if they are in Cairo for the first time.  
a. would visit      b. are visited      c. visited      d. should visit
- 20 I'm not very hungry, but I'd like . . . olives, please.  
a. a lot      b. a little      c. any      d. a few
- 21 My grandmother spends . . . time cooking in the kitchen.  
a. a lot of      b. a few      c. lots      d. many
- 22 Has samosa got . . . sugar or salt in it?  
a. some      b. any      c. a lot      d. many
- 23 She eats . . . fish because it helps to make her strong.  
a. any      b. a lot of      c. lots      d. a lot
- 24 La la likes . . . milk in her tea, but not very much.  
a. a few      b. any      c. a lot      d. a little
- 25 She drinks . . . water.  
a. a little      b. any      c. many      d. a few

# General Exercises

26. She eats sweets  
a. much                      b. a lot                      c. a few                      d. a little
27. If you meet other people, you stand 1.5 metres away from them.  
a. will                      b. should                      c. are                      d. have
28. There are people on the bus.  
a. a few                      b. much                      c. a lot                      d. any
29. Take the omelette and ... it with salad.  
a. serving                      b. serves                      c. serve                      d. doesn't serve
30. ... the eggs in the bowl and beat them with a fork.  
a. To put                      b. Puts                      c. Putting                      d. Put
31. ... the beans in the water until it boils.  
a. Heat                      b. Heats                      c. Heated                      d. Healing
32. ... some lemon juice over the hot beans.  
a. Pours                      b. Pour                      c. Poured                      d. Pouring
33. ... some beans and put them in a pan.  
a. Wash                      b. Washing                      c. Washes                      d. To wash
34. Would you like ... more beans?  
a. some                      b. lot                      c. lot of                      d. lots
35. ... the salad with the omelette.  
a. Serves                      b. Didn't serve                      c. Serve                      d. Serving
36. I'd like ... cheese, please.  
a. a lot                      b. a few                      c. many                      d. a little
37. " ... you like a sandwich?" "Thank you, but I'm really full."  
a. Are                      b. Were                      c. Would                      d. Had
38. We sometimes eat sfenj with ... tea.  
a. an                      b. some                      c. many                      d. a lot
39. Do you know ... to use a computer?  
a. what                      b. who                      c. how                      d. which
40. ... you able to speak French?  
a. Do                      b. Can                      c. Can't                      d. Are
41. A: ... you know how to play an instrument? B: Yes, I do.  
a. Do                      b. Are                      c. Is                      d. Does
42. Where did you get sunglasses?  
a. those                      b. that                      c. this                      d. then
43. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black ... ?  
a. once                      b. one                      c. two                      d. ones
44. Can I buy ... earrings in the window?  
a. an                      b. that                      c. this                      d. those
45. We went to the stand in a/an ... boat.  
a. long, old, wooden                      b. wooden, long, old  
a. old, wooden, long                      b. old, long, wooden

46. We saw a / an ..... statue in the museum.  
 a. old, gold, big      b. big, gold, old  
 c. gold, big, old      b. big, old, gold
47. ..... market is amazing! There are so many cool things here.  
 a. These      b. That      c. Those      d. They
48. The man wore ..... sunglasses.  
 a. green, pretty, plastic      b. pretty, plastic, green  
 c. pretty, green, plastic      b. plastic, green, pretty
49. Those earrings are the ..... my mum gave me.  
 a. ones      b. none      c. once      d. one
50. These books are funny, but these ..... are very boring!  
 a. ones      b. once      c. one      d. only
51. I love wearing my ..... galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer.  
 a. cotton, long, loose      b. long, cotton, loose  
 c. long, loose, cotton      b. cotton, loose, long
52. .... your mobile phone when it is old?  
 a. Are you recycling      b. Do you recycle  
 c. Did you recycle      b. Are you going to recycle
53. What are you ..... to do at the weekend?  
 a. go      b. going      c. goes      d. went
54. There ..... a drought.  
 a. is going to be      b. is being      c. is going      d. going
55. He is late so he ..... the bus.  
 a. isn't catching      b. isn't going to catch  
 c. catches      b. caught
56. Where ..... going to go for your next holiday?  
 a. you are      b. do you      c. are you      d. you do
57. How are you going to ..... your English?  
 a. improve      b. improving      c. improves      d. improved
58. It's 1:55. Ayman ..... to his 2 pm music lesson in five minutes.  
 a. goes      b. was going      c. went      d. is going
59. Judy is working on her project .....  
 a. tomorrow      b. yesterday      c. in the past      d. ago
60. My cousins ..... at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 am.  
 a. arrived      b. are arriving      c. arrives      d. arriving
61. I ..... forward to watching the stars in the desert this evening.  
 a. looks      b. looking      c. am looking      d. looked
62. Osama has a towel and is walking towards the sea. He is going ..... swimming.  
 a. to going      b. to goes      c. to go      d. go
63. Inji is ten minutes from the station and the train goes in five minutes. Is she ..... the train?  
 a. catching      b. going to catch      c. catch      d. caught

## General Exercises

64. Don't use classroom 5 because some men \_\_\_\_\_ it this afternoon.  
a. is going to paint    b. paints    c. are painting    d. paint
65. Summer will be hotter next month and the snow \_\_\_\_\_  
a. is melting    b. melts    c. melted    d. is going to melt
66. Look at the black clouds ! It's \_\_\_\_\_ soon.  
a. raining    b. going to rain    c. rains    d. rained
67. It's raining heavily and the river \_\_\_\_\_  
a. are flooding    b. flood    c. flooded    d. is going to flood
68. When I \_\_\_\_\_ young, I wanted to be a scientist.  
a. am    b. were    c. was    d. is
69. Ali is feeling ill, so I don't think he \_\_\_\_\_ out this evening.  
a. come    b. will come    c. came    d. comes
70. Next year, I \_\_\_\_\_ French classes.  
a. am going to start    b. starts    c. started    d. was starting
71. We \_\_\_\_\_ to secondary school in two years.  
a. went    b. go    c. will go    d. goes
72. Hala \_\_\_\_\_ like fruit, but now she loves it.  
a. don't    b. isn't    c. won't    d. didn't use to
73. At the moment, my brother \_\_\_\_\_ in a bank.  
a. worked    b. is working    c. will work    d. work
74. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I \_\_\_\_\_ !  
a. will pass    b. was passing    c. passed    d. passes
75. When I was three years old, I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ to school.  
a. use to going    b. us ng go    c. use to go    d. used to going
76. About five million people \_\_\_\_\_ in Alexandria.  
a. are living    b. live    c. lives    d. living
77. At the moment, lots of American tourists \_\_\_\_\_ photographs of the castle  
a. take    b. used to take    c. are taking    d. was taking
78. The horses were frightened and they \_\_\_\_\_ to leave the building  
a. don't want    b. won't want    c. didn't want    d. wants
79. Next year, they \_\_\_\_\_ a new hotel in the park.  
a. build    b. built    c. were building    d. are going to build
80. When my father was younger, he \_\_\_\_\_ on his uncle's farm.  
a. used to help    b. helps    c. is helping    d. will help
81. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ car.  
a. beautiful, black, long    b. black, beautiful, long  
c. beautiful, long, black    d. long, beautiful, black
82. Fanda is running fast and she \_\_\_\_\_ the race.  
a. is going to win    b. winning    c. won    d. win



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This machine won't ..... (being) able to fly very high
2. I won't watch TV tonight if I ..... (want) out.
3. If I buy everything online, I ..... (not be able to) go shopping with my friends
4. If we want to stop climate change, we should ..... (stopped) cutting down trees
5. A: "..... (Would) you like coffee?" B: "No, I don't. I prefer tea."
6. Wait a little. .... (Not pour) the eggs now
7. .... (Adds) some water and salt to the beans.
8. .... (Serving) it with warm bread.
9. .... (Beats) two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
10. A firefighter ..... (are) able to stop fires.
11. Can you ..... (sewing)?
12. Maher is able ..... (play) musical instruments.
13. .... (Able) you play football or tennis?
14. If you know how to cook, you ..... (work) in a restaurant.
15. The galabeya that I bought yesterday is ..... (the more comfortable).
16. It's a/an ..... (cotton, old, striped) scarf.
17. Look at that ..... (pretty, gold, long) necklace
18. It's a ..... (linen, beautiful, new, blue) dress
19. They are ..... (more expensive) sunglasses in this shop.
20. Linen clothes are ..... (nicest)
21. It's a ..... (purple, nice, wool) jumper.
22. Which socks are you going to wear? These ..... (one) or those ones?
23. I like ..... (those) black, leather handbag! Is it new?
24. I bought ..... (this) shoes last week at the market.
25. He wore a ..... (long, cotton, red) galabeya.
26. The boy and his father are going to ..... (watching) a football match.
27. Mr Medhat is going to England in January. Why is he ..... (go) to take a big coat?
28. At the moment, we ..... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake.
29. Judy is visiting her grandma the day ..... (before) tomorrow.
30. Let's run, because the bus ..... (leave) in ten minutes' time.
31. She is walking in the mountains ..... (last) week.
32. She is visiting a museum in nine days' ..... (clock) .
33. What are you ..... (do) this afternoon?
34. After 85 minutes, it is the Blue team five and the Red team one. Who is (win)?
35. What is the temperature going to ..... (is) this afternoon?
36. Lara is ..... (play) tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
37. Fawzy ..... (not work) next week because he has a holiday.
38. I want to travel so I ..... (learn) lots of languages.
39. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I ..... (be) a scientist!

## General Exercises

40. Ahmed (study) for his maths exam at the moment.
41. Last Tuesday, my uncle (fly) to Paris.
42. Sara (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night
43. At the moment, I (do) an English exercise
44. In the future, I think we (have) more lessons online.
45. They are (brown, leather, old) boots.

Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

1- "Are you for or against online shopping?"

2- How do you think life will change in the future?

3- "Positive and negative sides of using technology"

4- "Some unusual food that you have tried"

5- "What you can eat to stay healthy"

6- "Your favourite meal"

7- "A review of a museum you know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

8- "Difficulties that disabled people have"

9- "A review of a film you have just watched (Jurassic World)"

10- "An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell"

11- "A special occasion you are going to"

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

- 1- to your friend Fatma telling her about a problem you had with an online delivery
  - Your friend's email address is fatma77@gmail.com.
  - Your name is Mariam and your email address is mariam80@hotmail.com.

- 2- to your friend telling her about your favourite snack.
  - Your friend's name is Hanan and her email address is hanan77@gmail.com.
  - Your name is Judy and your email address is judy88@hotmail.com.

- 3- to your friend Salah about someone in your family that you are proud of.
  - Your name is Rami and your email address is ramipost@gmail.com
  - Your friend's email address is salah666@yahoo.com

- 4- to your friend Emad inviting him to your birthday party.
  - Your name is Hassan and your email address is hassanpost@gmail.com
  - Your friend's email address is emad666@yahoo.com

- 5- to your friend Radwa to advise her about the problem with her sister.
  - Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma345@gmail.com
  - Your friend's name is Radwa and her email address is radwa898@yahoo.com

- 6- to your friend telling her about communication with animals.
  - Your friend's name is Magda and her email address is magda898@yahoo.com.
  - Your name is Ola and your email address is ola345@gmail.com.

# End of Term Practice

امجاب علىه في آخر الكتاب

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. What does Inji know how to cook?  
a. a few things                      b. many things                      c. only cakes
2. Why do they decide to make a carrot cake?  
a. Hala only eats vegetables.  
b. Hala likes healthy food.  
c. They find a recipe for it.
3. What will Amira do to make the cake?  
a. mix the flour and sugar    b. add some eggs                      c. cut the carrots
4. How many nuts should they put on the cake?  
a. four                                      b. fourteen                                      c. ten

② Complete the following dialogue:

**Baher** : Fares, I was wondering if you would like to come to my house today to work on our school project.

**Fares** : Great. What ① \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Baher** : Around 7. We could research some information together.

**Fares** : ② \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Baher** : I think it's better if we use the computer. Books won't give us all the information we need.

**Fares** : That's true. It's a ③ \_\_\_\_\_ to look at different websites.

**Baher** : Would you bring some paper?

**Fares** : Why do you want them? We are going to do online research!

**Baher** : ④ \_\_\_\_\_

**Fares** : ⑤ \_\_\_\_\_ we need to take notes on important information.

③ Read the text. Then answer the questions:

When we taste food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. But why do some people like some types of food and not others? There are many reasons. For example, some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it.

However, it is believed that you can change what you like. We often don't like unusual food because our brain doesn't understand it. So if you want to start liking



food that is healthy, such as green vegetables, you should eat it more often. Then your brain will recognise it. You can also train your brain not to like something. For example, many people who stopped putting sugar on things found, after a time, that they didn't like sweet things.

So if you like sweets and don't like vegetables, you should train your brain to eat more healthily!

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do people often not like unusual food?
2. Why do you think people trained their brains not to like sugar?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. Some people don't eat certain food because .....  
 a. they ate it before and liked it      b. they ate it and didn't like it.  
 c. they didn't try it before.  
 d. some people told them that it wasn't tasty.
4. What do you think the word recognise means?  
 a. know because you have seen it before  
 b. photograph  
 c. learn about  
 d. like
5. If you want to stop liking unhealthy food, .....  
 a. eat healthy foods instead.      b. stop eating this type of food.  
 c. eat this type of food often.      d. a and b

**④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. If you feel ill, you ..... a doctor.  
 a. will see      b. should see      c. see      d. would see
2. My grandfather had an accident when he was younger and ..... to walk very well.  
 a. can't      b. doesn't know      c. is not able      d. won't
3. Please don't put ..... salt on my food. I don't like it.  
 a. many      b. a lot      c. a few      d. any
4. Tarek is not very hungry, so he only wants ..... rice with his chicken.  
 a. a few      b. a little      c. a lot of      d. any

5. Mona knows ..... draw. Let's ask her to draw us a picture.  
 a. how                      b. to                      c. how to                      d. able to
6. This email is in Spanish. Are you able to ..... it for me?  
 a. translate                      b. taste                      c. say                      d. waste
7. Waleed can't come out this morning because he needs to ..... for a delivery.  
 a. buy                      b. pay                      c. save                      d. spend
8. People who do sport like to eat rice and pasta because they give them lots of .....  
 a. fast food                      b. salt                      c. sugar                      d. energy
9. Before you fry food, you should ..... some oil in a pan.  
 a. make                      b. serve                      c. heat                      d. fire
10. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started .....  
 a. crying                      b. laughing                      c. hiding                      d. wondering

**5 Read and complete with the correct form of these words:**

- Ramy's ..... (invent) saves a lot of water and helps the environment.
- The story was very slow and there was very little (act) .....
- ..... (Add) too much salt. It's unhealthy.
- Reham is ..... (visit) the museum next weekend. Her mum gave her tickets.

**6 Choose one of the following:**

- Write a short review of about 90-100 words on a book, film or a place you like.
- Write an email of about 90-100 words on an environmental problem you have near you, and how you could help solve this problem.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Final Exams

## Exam 1

Cairo - Matarya



### A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نصوص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Ali is ..... than you.  
a. older                      b. younger                      c. old                      d. young
2. Ali dislikes playing .....  
a. sports                      b. the guitar                      c. music                      d. tricks
3. Ali is ..... years older than you.  
a. 2                      b. 16                      c. 5                      d. 6
4. Ali is interested in .....  
a. sports                      b. football                      c. music                      d. trick

### B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy wants to buy a pair of shoes.

Shopkeeper : Can I help you?

Ramy : Yes, ① .....

Shopkeeper : ② .....?

Ramy : I'd like the black ones.

Shopkeeper : ③ .....?

Ramy : Size 45.

Shopkeeper : Here you are. Do you like these ones?

Ramy : ④ ..... How much are they?

Shopkeeper : ⑤ .....

Ramy : Thank you. Here's the money.

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Nile is the lifeblood of Egypt, as it helps Egypt in many ways and a lot of fields. First of all, it helps the Egyptian farmers to irrigate their lands and grow a lot of plants. So, at the delta depends on it to get a variety of plants, fruits and vegetables which we all need to live on. Besides, the Nile is a way to move from a place to another. Ships and boats sail around the Nile to carry goods. Boats are also used for people to have fun and enjoy boat trips as a kind of entertainment. In addition, walking by the Nile makes you enjoy seeing the view which is wonderful.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. Do farmers benefit from the Nile?

3. What admires you most about the Nile?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to

- a. the Nile                      b. the delta                      c. Egypt                      d. variety

5. You can move from a place to another using ..... on the Nile

- a. fruits                                      b. vegetables  
c. ships and boats                      d. goods

6. The Nile is the ..... of Egypt

- a. lifeblood                      b. blood                      c. live                      d. wood

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you think we'll ..... a car that makes no pollution?

- a. prediction                      b. invent                      c. invention                      d. invite

2. He is ..... to chocolate. It makes him ill.

- a. allergic                      b. addicted                      c. interested                      d. alert

3. Let's not go to the beach. There are ..... people there today.

- a. too much                      b. too many                      c. a few                      d. little

4. The ..... is fantastic in the play. You feel like you are in the mountains.

- a. scenery                      b. reward                      c. review                      d. costumes

5. If a person is ..... he is unable to see.

- a. deaf                      b. blind                      c. strong                      d. free



6. There will be a ..... as it hasn't stopped raining for long.  
 a. flood b. drought c. draught d. cloud
7. Sami isn't very thirsty, so he only wants ..... water.  
 a. a few b. a little c. too much d. lot
8. Soha knows ..... cook meat  
 a. how b. how to c. able to d. too
9. Cheese, butter and milk are ..... products.  
 a. dairy b. dally c. dairy d. sally
10. These trousers are very big. Do you have smaller .....?  
 a. one b. ones c. once d. these

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. If you work too much, you ..... (be) tired.  
 2. (Be) ..... your brother able to drive a car?  
 3. I've invited everyone. I ..... (have) a party next Friday.  
 4. It's a ..... (linen, new, white) dress.

**E Writing**

**6** Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Online shopping"

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

**Exam-2**

Giza - Hawamdia



**Listening**

**1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali went to Luxor with his .....  
 a. friends b. school c. family d. teacher
2. They stayed in a .....  
 a. village b. hotel c. valley d. house
3. They stayed in Luxor for ..... days.  
 a. six b. three c. four d. seven
4. Ali went to Luxor .....  
 a. last month b. last year c. last summer d. yesterday

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nora and Hana are talking about the next summer holiday.

Nora : How are you, Hana?

Hana : 1

Nora : Where will you go next summer holiday?

Hana : 2

Nora : Sharm El-Sheikh! Who will go with you?

Hana : 3

Nora : 4

Hana : We will travel by bus.

Nora : 5

Hana : We will stay in a hotel

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, Manar and her family decided to go on a holiday to Sharm El-Sheikh. They wanted to spend a nice time there. They travelled by bus. They arrived at 5 in the morning. They stayed at a good hotel which is near the sea. They enjoyed diving and swimming in the sea. They spent a great time. They did some shopping in the evening. After two weeks they went back home happily. It was a nice holiday.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. Where did Manar and her family go?

3. What do you think of Manar's holiday?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to

a. Manar

b. Ali

c. Maha

d. Manar and her family

5. They went back home after \_\_\_\_\_ weeks.

a. two

b. three

c. five

d. four

6. The opposite of near is

a. big

b. small

c. far

d. short

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's healthy to eat ..... products.  
a. easy                      b. dairy                      c. fast                      d. slow
2. The blind are the people who can't .....  
a. walk                      b. hear                      c. see                      d. play
3. I can see dark clouds. It ..... rain.  
a. will                      b. can't                      c. is                      d. is going to
4. Before going to the club, I wear my ..... to do sports.  
a. necklace                      b. trainers                      c. skirt                      d. sandals
5. I took Adel's book ..... mistake.  
a. at                      b. in                      c. by                      d. on
6. You should put ..... in the bin.  
a. coral reefs                      b. wildlife                      c. solar panels                      d. rubbish
7. A : Is ..... your pen?      B : I found it under the desk.  
a. this                      b. they                      c. these                      d. those
8. Noha's favourite hobby is ..... scenery.  
a. saving                      b. reading                      c. painting                      d. playing
9. .... are things you wear over your ears to listen to music.  
a. Headphones                      b. Mobile phones                      c. Apps                      d. Screens
10. .... two eggs in a bowl with little milk.  
a. Beats                      b. Beat                      c. Beating                      d. Beaten

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Would you like ..... (any) tea?
2. If she is ill, she should ..... (sees) a doctor.
3. I lost my socks, I need to buy new ..... (one).
4. He ..... (doesn't) able to use this computer.

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Exam-3

Al Katubia - Banha



### A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar is in the school ..... team.  
a. running                      b. football                      c. swimming                      d. athletics
2. When does Omar go running?  
a. In the evening                      b. In the afternoon  
c. In the morning                      d. At night
3. Omar eats good food to give him .....  
a. money                      b. energy                      c. advice                      d. vegetables
4. Omar eats ..... for lunch.  
a. meat                      b. fish                      c. chicken                      d. fruit

### B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Lamar and Talia are talking about the place they are going to.

Lamar : Good morning. Talia. Where are you going?

Talia : ① .....

Lamar : The Opera! Fantastic ② .....

Talia : Because there is a show.

Lamar : ③ .....

Talia : It is about musical instruments.

Lamar : Can I come with you?

Talia : ④ .....

Lamar : ⑤ .....

Talia : We should meet at 9.00 before the show starts.

### C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Karim. I have got two brothers and three sisters. My father is a farmer. My mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. My father and mother work day and night to help us live happily. They bring us up to serve our country Egypt. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. In my school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals and birds. I like to study farming when I grow up.



**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. How many people are there in Karim's family?
2. What does the passage talk about?
3. Why do you think Karim likes to study farming?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The word "farming" means  
a. weaving      b. growing crops      c. making clothes      d. playing music
5. Karim's mother works  
a. in a school      b. at home      c. in a bank      d. in a company
6. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to  
a. Karim's brothers      b. Karim's uncles      c. Karim's sisters      d. Karim's parents



**Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The garden was full of ..... and fascinating flowers.  
a. active      b. ugly      c. funny      d. colorful
2. .... you able to speak French? Yes, I am.  
a. Can      b. Were      c. Are      d. Do
3. The shops are very busy today. There are too many .....  
a. assistants      b. customers      c. shopkeepers      d. sellers
4. I read a film ..... to know what the film is about.  
a. review      b. view      c. interview      d. revision
5. You must answer all ..... questions.  
a. this      b. that      c. then      d. these
6. Wind ..... generate electricity for the local community.  
a. alarms      b. machines      c. turbines      d. panels
7. My father likes to wear a suit on ..... occasions.  
a. private      b. special      c. general      d. public
8. My mother was worried ..... me when I came home late.  
a. about      b. of      c. with      d. for

9. You should ..... sure that you eat all types of healthy food.  
 a. say                      b. take                      c. do                      d. make
10. Many young people spend much time ..... their social media  
 a. looking                      b. playing                      c. checking                      d. wasting

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You should ..... (turning off) the lights when you go to bed.  
 2. I don't like this tea. There is too ..... (many) sugar in it.  
 3. I don't want the blue pen, I want the red ..... (ones).  
 4. If Heba does the housework, her mother ..... (reward) her.

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Plans for your next holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Exam 4

### Al Menofia - Ashmoun



## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The museum has lots of ..... from different times in history.  
 a. bags                      b. cars                      c. books                      d. clothes
2. The museum is in .....  
 a. Fayoum                      b. Cairo                      c. Tanta                      d. Giza
3. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were .....  
 a. boring                      b. old                      c. fantastic                      d. bad
4. I went to the museum .....  
 a. last month                      b. last year                      c. last week                      d. yesterday

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona met Salma who is going to the sports centre.

Mona : Where are you going, Mona?

Salma : ①

Mona : ②

Salma : It's next to the train station.

Mona : What sport do you play there?

Salma : ③

Mona : ④

Salma : No, it's not hard to do karate.

Mona : How often do you go there?

Salma : ⑤

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm a student in the second year at a prep school. My school is clean and beautiful. It is the biggest one in the town. I like it very much for many reasons. Firstly, I'm lucky to have good teachers, specially the teachers of English. Secondly, I can practise my hobbies in my school such as drawing, reading in its big library, playing music and playing football. Thirdly, all the students and I can learn how to use the computer and the internet. My school day starts at 8 o'clock in the morning and ends at 2 o'clock in the afternoon. Students don't go to school on Friday or Saturday every week. In short, I'm very proud of my school.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why does the writer think himself lucky?

2. What are the hobbies that the writer can practise in this school?

3. What does the underlined word "It" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer's school is a

a. primary school

b. prep school

c. secondary school

d. school for KG

- 5 The waiter and all students spend \_\_\_\_\_ hours at school every day.  
 a 2                                      b 4                                      c 8                                      d 6
- 6 The students don't go to school on \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a Friday                                      b Monday                                      c Thursday                                      d Tuesday

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a  
 a train                                      b. plane                                      c. motorbike                                      d. ferry
2. Do you think there will be many \_\_\_\_\_ in your English homework?  
 a. corrections                                      b. apps                                      c. turns                                      d. tools
3. \_\_\_\_\_ means very nice to eat.  
 a. Sour                                      b. Dirty                                      c. Delicious                                      d. Polluted
- 4 Meat, cheese and nuts have \_\_\_\_\_ in them.  
 a. salt                                      b. protein                                      c. sugar                                      d. milk
5. There were \_\_\_\_\_ of important and normal Egyptian people in the museum.  
 a. portraits                                      b. plays                                      c. cartoon                                      d. pottery
6. This \_\_\_\_\_ is made of expensive leather.  
 a. handbag                                      b. earrings                                      c. necklace                                      d. glass
7. \_\_\_\_\_ away old phones can be bad for the environment  
 a. Putting                                      b. Throwing                                      c. Reducing                                      d. Making
8. Farida is going \_\_\_\_\_ the race  
 a. win                                      b. to won                                      c. winning                                      d. to win
- 9 It's a \_\_\_\_\_ skirt.  
 a. beautiful, new, blue                                      b. blue, beautiful, new  
 c. beautiful, blue, new                                      d. blue, new, beautiful
10. Wash some beans and \_\_\_\_\_ them in a pan.  
 a. puts                                      b. to put                                      c. putting                                      d. put

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mona will look online for a new phone when she \_\_\_\_\_ (get) home.
2. Please, \_\_\_\_\_ (pouring) some tea into my cup.
3. I have four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite \_\_\_\_\_ (one's).
4. Look at the clouds! It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) soon.



**E Writing**

- 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:  
"Modern technology"

**Exam 5****Al Sharkia - Diarb Negm****A Listening**

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Make sure you have a ..... diet.  
a. balanced                      b. boiled                      c. fried                      d. grilled
2. Eat some of all the ..... of food  
a. seeds                      b. tastes                      c. types                      d. smells
3. To be healthy, you have to ..... well.  
a. play                      b. sleep                      c. study                      d. fry
4. Don't ..... too much to be healthy.  
a. worry                      b. bring                      c. practise                      d. sleep

**B Language Functions**

- 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Self is asking Omar about his opinion about tourism.

Self : 1 ..... Omar ?

Omar : In my view, it's very important .

Self : 2 ..... ?

Omar : Because it brings our country a lot of money.

Self : How should we treat tourists?

Omar : 3 .....

Self : What else can we do?

Omar : 4 .....

Self : New hotels! You are right. Do it provide a lot of jobs?

Omar : 5 .....

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

English is an international language. Millions of people are learning it all over the world. Students use it to communicate with other speakers. This means they have to be able to understand each other. Students have studied English for more than 90 years in Egyptian schools. They read English books. Teachers help their students to **develop** their language skills of listening, speaking, reading and writing. Tour guides use English to communicate with tourists who visit Egypt. To surf the internet or use the computer, we should learn English.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

3. Why do you think millions of people learn English all over the world?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "develop" can be replaced by .....  
 a. clear                      b. remove                      c. improve                      d. prove
5. Students use English to ..... with others.  
 a. help                      b. communicate                      c. stay                      d. play
6. There are ..... skills in English.  
 a. one                      b. two                      c. three                      d. four

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't use too much social media or you will be ..... to them.  
 a. worried                      b. addicted                      c. useful                      d. allergic
2. Writing ..... of films needs special skills.  
 a. sculptures                      b. scripts                      c. names                      d. views
3. We always fry eggs in .....  
 a. pin                      b. bin                      c. pan                      d. fan
4. The deaf girl isn't able to .....  
 a. talk                      b. see                      c. hear                      d. walk
5. You can't wear my shirt, we aren't the same .....  
 a. colour                      b. size                      c. age                      d. height
6. Cars and buses ..... much pollution.  
 a. prepare                      b. cause                      c. reduce                      d. stop

7. Your marks are good, I ..... why you are sad.  
a. wonder                      b. agree                      c. expect                      d. wonder
8. Where did you get ..... sunglasses?  
a. those                      b. this                      c. that                      d. there
9. It is black and cloudy. It ..... rain.  
a. will                      b. won't                      c. is going to                      d. are going to
10. If you feel tired, you ..... have a rest.  
a. shouldn't                      b. should                      c. won't                      d. shall

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sama knew how ..... (answer) the question.  
2. Youssef bought a ..... (blue, new, big) car.  
3. Ola, ..... (chopping) vegetables into small pieces.  
4. Let's not go to the beach. There are ..... (a few) people there today.

## E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on:

To your friend Ahmed to tell him about "Pollution"  
Your name is Seif and your email address is seif@gmail.com  
Your friend's email address is ahmed@gmail.com.

## Exam 6

Al Dakahlia - Mansoura



## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a lot of air ..... where the speaker lives.  
a. pollution                      b. rubbish                      c. paper                      d. people
2. The speaker's ..... never recycle their rubbish.  
a. friends                      b. brother's                      c. sisters                      d. neighbours
3. In the speaker's view, it is important to ..... rubbish  
a. swim                      b. live                      c. recycle                      d. walk
4. We should take ..... and glass out of the bin and recycle them.  
a. water                      b. juice                      c. air                      d. paper

## B Language Functions

(2) Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to a tourist who will stay three weeks in Egypt.

Ahmed : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from?

Tourist : ① .....

Ahmed : ② .....?

Tourist : I'll stay here for 3 weeks.

Ahmed : I'm sure you will enjoy your stay in Egypt.

Tourist : ③ .....

Ahmed : You can visit Luxor and Aswan.

Tourist : How can I go there?

Ahmed : ④ .....

Tourist : Thank you for your help.

Ahmed : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

(3) Read the following, then answer the questions:

Using technology is great. Most people nowadays are addicted to their mobiles and laptops. They use them to read the news, to study, to do their projects, and to have fun. Technology makes life easier and saves time, just stay at home and hold your mobile. But...!! Many people use their mobiles late at night, so they don't get enough sleep. Also, spending a lot of time on screens causes headache and eye problems. Moreover, playing video games and talking to friends on social media for hours stops you from doing sports or going out with friends. In my opinion, technology is not good all the time.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What do people use mobiles for?

.....

2. Do you like using technology? Why / Why not?

.....

3. Why shouldn't we spend much time on screens?

.....



B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4. The underlined word "they" refers to  
a. mobiles                      b. screens                      c. people                      d. games
5. The underlined word "addicted" means  
a. always use                      b. never use                      c. never need                      d. feel worried about
6. The text is mainly about  
a. social media                      b. projects                      c. eye problems                      d. technology

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If I go to the shops on Sunday, I ..... some new headphones.  
a. buy                      b. bought                      c. am buying                      d. will buy
2. Which of these isn't a dairy product?  
a. milk                      b. cheese                      c. rice                      d. butter
3. You should never drink sea water because there is ..... salt in it.  
a. not enough                      b. too many                      c. too much                      d. a few
4. Mr and Mrs Osama live in a ..... flat in Cairo.  
a. big, old, traditional                      b. old, big, traditional  
c. traditional, old, big                      d. old, traditional, big
5. I'm ..... to fish. When I eat it, it makes me ill.  
a. addicted                      b. popular                      c. allergic                      d. ready
6. Teenagers shouldn't spend too much time on ..... media.  
a. society                      b. social                      c. ancient                      d. community
7. I need a new ..... to get to the Halloween party.  
a. costume                      b. uniform                      c. email                      d. custom
8. A/An ..... is a large group of musicians who play different instruments together.  
a. concert                      b. orchestra                      c. opera                      d. staff
9. We love to watch the beautiful ..... from the train windows.  
a. scenery                      b. pictures                      c. portrait                      d. photograph
10. Farmers use ..... to protect their crops from insects.  
a. soil                      b. chemicals                      c. climate                      d. industry

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nora ..... (play) tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
2. I hope there ..... (is) less air pollution in the future.

3 Don't

(forgot) to do your homework

4.

(Be) you able to do sports?

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about **NINETY (90)** words on:

"Healthy food"

## Exam 7

Al Gharbia - Tanta



## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- |                          |           |           |            |          |
|--------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|
| 1. Nadia is .....        | a. deaf   | b. blind  | c. brave   | d. weak  |
| 2. Nadia likes .....     | a. music  | b. food   | c. sport   | d. juice |
| 3. Nadia plays the ..... | a. guitar | b. violin | c. piano   | d. oud   |
| 4. I am ..... of Nadia   | a. sad    | b. angry  | c. annoyed | d. proud |

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Hassan about his holiday.

Ahmed : Where did you go on holiday?

Hassan : ① .....

Ahmed : ② .....?

Hassan : Because I like the weather of Alexandria.

Ahmed : ③ .....?

Hassan : I came back on Friday.

Ahmed : Did you take any photos?

Hassan : ④ .....

Ahmed : Can I come with you the next time?

Hassan : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My grandfather is my hero. He was born in a village to a poor family in January 1952. But he worked hard at school and he went to the university. He was always interested in helping people and he became a doctor. I admire him because he has stopped working as a doctor, but he hasn't stopped helping people. He teaches in the village school. He has taught many children who are now at the university. When he was a doctor, he helped poor patients for free. Furthermore he gave them medicine without taking any money. He is really a great man.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

2. What is the writer's grandfather interested in?

3. Why do you think the writer's grandfather is a great man?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "admire" means the same as ....

- a. hate                      b. love                      c. dislike                      d. live

5. The writer's grandfather worked as .....

- a. doctor                      b. pilot                      c. mechanic                      d. farmer

6. The underlined word "he" refers to the .....

- a. uncle                      b. brother                      c. father                      d. grandfather

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They ..... loudly because they were happy.

- a. slept                      b. spent                      c. invented                      d. laughed

2. What ..... if there is a new student at my class?

- a. should I do                      b. I should do  
c. I should doing                      d. should I doing

3. You should eat healthy food to get the ..... you need

- a. juicy                      b. spell                      c. diary                      d. energy

4. Can I have ..... rice please?

- a. few                      b. some                      c. any                      d. many

5. I asked my elder brother to ..... me a musical instrument

- a. advise                      b. recommend                      c. do                      d. sew

6. When he scored his third goal, he was .....

- a. bored                      b. sad                      c. excited                      d. unhappy

7. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ do this exercise  
 a. what to                      b. how far                      c. who to                      d. how to
8. I cover my bed with a nice \_\_\_\_\_ made of linen  
 a. scarves                      b. belt                      c. skirt                      d. sheet
9. My mobile doesn't work so I asked someone to \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
 a. decay                      b. repal                      c. repair                      d. recycle
10. \_\_\_\_\_ are used to produce electricity  
 a. Solar panels                      b. Coral reefs  
 c. Climate changes                      d. Mobile phones

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This dress is the \_\_\_\_\_ (ones) I like.  
 2. He bought a \_\_\_\_\_ (black, leather, big) bag.  
 3. When Hoda \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) Cairo, she will buy new shoes.  
 4. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ (arrived) late

**E Writing**

**6** Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Online shopping"

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

**Exam 8**

Kafr El-Sheikh - East Administration



**A Listening**

**1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar was born in \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. 1994                      b. 1949                      c. 2002                      d. 1990
2. A/an \_\_\_\_\_ attacked him when he was 22.  
 a. whale                      b. shark                      c. snake                      d. octopus
3. Omar lost his \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. arm                      b. head                      c. fingers                      d. leg
4. Omar is an important sports \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. doctor                      b. coach                      c. engineer                      d. scientist



## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

**Tourist** : Excuse me Can I ask you some questions?

**Soha** : ① .....

**Tourist** : ② .....

**Soha** : The Pyramids are in Giza. ?

**Tourist** : Are they far from here?

**Soha** : ③ .....

**Tourist** : How can I go there?

**Soha** : ④ .....

**Tourist** : ⑤ .....

**Soha** : The ancient Egyptians built them. ?

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Fathi works as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend, they go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people leaves behind. They always pick up lots of plastic bottles. Fatma visits a home for old people who are disabled so it's difficult for their families to look after them. She goes there after school on Thursday. The volunteers visit and talk to a special person. The woman who they visit is called Nadia. She worked as a nurse when she was young and Fatma loves talking to her. Ahmed works for a charity which looks after animals that are old and cannot work. People donate money to the charity to buy food for the animals. They help to feed the animals and look after them.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. What's your opinion about charity?

3. Why do people donate money to the charity which Ahmed works for?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to .....

a. Fatma

b. Aya

c. Nadia

d. Sara

5. It isn't nice for people to ..... on the beach

a. pick up rubbish

b. help to clean

c. leave rubbish

d. pick up plastic bottles.

6. The underlined word pick up means to ..... something  
 a. leave                      b. collect                      c. donate                      d. lend

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I would like to ..... a machine to tidy my room.  
 a. invite                      b. invent                      c. travel                      d. disappear
2. These bowls are made of .....  
 a. oil                      b. flour                      c. cloth                      d. clay
3. That's the city ..... I was born.  
 a. when                      b. why                      c. where                      d. which
4. .... means very nice to eat.  
 a. Sour                      b. Dirty                      c. Delicious                      d. Healthy
5. What ..... do you think musicians need?  
 a. money                      b. skills                      c. time                      d. power
6. Public libraries. .... to encourage people to read and borrow books.  
 a. give                      b. bring                      c. aim                      d. catch
7. My teacher is very ..... He never gets nervous.  
 a. brave                      b. patient                      c. slow                      d. ugly
8. Don't drink water from the sea because it can be full of .....  
 a. salt                      b. nutrients                      c. sugar                      d. light
9. These trainers are much better than the ..... I had before.  
 a. on                      b. ones                      c. first                      d. one
10. You can ..... plastic bottles instead of throwing them away.  
 a. produce                      b. make                      c. reuse                      d. eat

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. My uncle ..... (have to) get up early every day.
2. Maher eats ..... (a few) food. He wants to lose weight.
3. .... (That) are my father's glasses.
4. She will not watch TV if she ..... (be) too busy

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"My family"

.....

.....

.....

## Isamilla - Isamilla

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- الدكتور - حبيب - احمد - جابر

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title for the passage
2. What's the writer's grandfather interested in?
3. Where was the writer's grandfather born?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "he" refers to  
a. uncle                      b. brother                      c. father                      d. grandfather
5. The underlined pronoun "admire" means .....  
a. hate                      b. dislike                      c. love                      d. teach
6. The writer's grandfather's family was .....  
a. poor                      b. rich                      c. low                      d. fast

**D Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Watermelons and oranges are .....  
a. juicy                      b. spicy                      c. salty                      d. tasteless
2. If a person is ....., he isn't able to hear.  
a. blind                      b. deaf                      c. free                      d. strong
3. I don't like this soup. There is too ..... salt in it.  
a. many                      b. enough                      c. few                      d. much
4. .... is not a dairy product.  
a. Milk                      b. Cheese                      c. Rice                      d. Butter
5. Did you ..... Aswan last year?  
a. visited                      b. visit                      c. visits                      d. visiting
6. I don't want ..... coffee.  
a. any                      b. enough                      c. some                      d. a few
7. "....." means to change words into a different language.  
a. Wait                      b. Spend                      c. Translate                      d. Waste
8. Many famous ..... act in that new film. I recommend it.  
a. moons                      b. writers                      c. reviewers                      d. stars
9. I like to wear my ..... on the bus to listen to music.  
a. helmet                      b. headphones                      c. glasses                      d. jacket
10. I am ..... to fish. When I eat it, it makes me ill.  
a. allergic                      b. addicted                      c. read                      d. popular

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Don't ..... (touching) electric wires.
2. If you feel ill, you ..... (see) a doctor.



3. (lie) you able to plan your day well?  
4. How about (play) football?

## E Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on.  
"Shopping online"

## Exam 10

## Alexandria - El Montazh



## A Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- At the weekend, we go to the ..... and pick up the rubbish  
a. cinema                      b. teacher                      c. school                      d. beach
- I work as a ..... for a charity.  
a. cleaner                      b. doctor                      c. volunteer                      d. market
- We always pick up plastic .....  
a. bottles                      b. chairs                      c. tables                      d. pots
- The charity helps to ..... our local beach.  
a. play                      b. eat                      c. clean                      d. pick

## B Language Functions

- 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is helping a tourist to get to the Pyramids.

Tourist : Excuse me, can I ask you some questions?

Ahmed : ① .....

Tourist : ② .....

Ahmed : The Pyramids are in Giza.

Tourist : Are they far from here?

Ahmed : ③ .....

Tourist : How can I get there?

Ahmed : ④ .....

Tourist : ⑤ .....

Ahmed : The Ancient Egyptians built them.

## C Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

We have a big garden around our house. There is a lot of grass there. Now it's September and the grass is long and thick. I also have the trees in the garden. There is a young lemon tree which is very small. It doesn't have any fruit. There is also a peach tree in the garden.

There aren't many peaches this year because of the cold weather in April and May. The third tree is an apple tree. Apples always grow well in this area and the tree is full of big green apples. Tomorrow, I want to make a big apple pie. There are the red roses and we have other flowers that are green and yellow. There are two animals in the garden, a beautiful white cat and a friendly dog.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

2. Do you like fruits? Why / Why not?

3. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. There are ..... trees in the garden.

a. two

b. ten

c. one

d. three

5. The underlined word "pie" is a kind of .....

a. roses

b. bread

c. trees

d. dessert

6. There are red ..... and flowers.

a. roses

b. dogs

c. cats

d. people

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maya is very happy because she is going to ..... in a play next Summer.

a. add

b. act

c. make

d. save

2. People like travelling by plane because it is .....

a. tiring

b. traditional

c. boring

d. comfortable

3. Children should ..... eating sweets because they are unhealthy.

a. encourage

b. increase

c. reduce

d. suggest

4. We ..... food with our tongue.

a. taste

b. hear

c. smell

d. see

5. Pollution isn't only one problem, but it ..... many problems.

a. causes

b. saves

c. do

d. help

- 6 Workers have to  
a improve
- 7 It is important to  
your house.  
a make
- 8 Do you know  
a fix
- 9 Would you like  
a few
- 10 When it rains, you  
a should

- their skills to get good jobs  
b communicate c connect d prepare
- sure that you closed the doors well before leaving  
b decide c take d save
- the mobile?  
b how fix c how to fixing d how to fix
- cold orange juice?  
b lots c any d some
- take your umbrella.  
b shouldn't c mustn't d need

• Final Exam •

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. My mother can \_\_\_\_\_ (making) a cake.
2. That pink jumper is the \_\_\_\_\_ (ones) I bought last week
3. The students \_\_\_\_\_ (do) an exam next Sunday. It's arranged
4. Where did you \_\_\_\_\_ (went) last week?

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How technology is useful"

## Exam 11

Assiut - Manfalout



## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker loves .....  
a. sports b. social media c. social sports d. social games
2. The speaker loves watching ..... online.  
a. matches b. lessons c. videos d. swimming
3. The speaker talks to his friends on the .....  
a. TV b. phone c. internet d. radio
4. The speaker loves having a/an ..... phone.  
a. old b. new c. ancient d. modem

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sally and Marwa are talking about online technology.

Sally : What are you reading about, Marwa?

Marwa : ① .....

Sally : Are you interested in technology?

Marwa : ② .....

Sally : ③ .....?

Marwa : I think the mobile phone is the most important invention.

Sally : ④ .....

Marwa : ⑤ .....?

Sally : Because it helps us do research and get lots of information.

Marwa : I agree with you.

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. We need to drink eight glasses of water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese help us to have **strong** bones. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them and we need protein to have a strong body.

A lot of sugar is bad for your teeth. Examples of healthy snacks are fruit and nuts. People need to eat five to ten pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day. People often like fast food although it has lots of fat sugar in it. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is fresh.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. How many glasses of water do we need every day?

.....

2. Give examples of healthy snacks.

.....

3. Why do you think we need dairy products?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun it refers to

a. snack                      b. protein                      c. milk                      d. fast food

5. The word ..... is the opposite of the underlined word **strong**.

a. serious                      b. weak                      c. active                      d. lazy



6. Meat is an important source of

a. protein

b. carbohydrates

c. salt

d. vitamin

Final Exams

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I use my ..... to listen to music without anyone hearing it.  
a. shorts                      b. glasses                      c. headphones                      d. trousers
2. My dad usually drinks tea with .....  
a. a little                      b. a few                      c. many                      d. few
3. Can you ..... words from English into Arabic?  
a. trick                      b. continue                      c. build                      d. translate
4. When I ..... much money, I will buy a car.  
a. won                      b. will win                      c. win                      d. wins
5. I like my food ..... that's why I add a lot of pepper.  
a. sweet                      b. spicy                      c. juicy                      d. salty
6. Mum made lunch and ..... it with hot soup.  
a. saved                      b. served                      c. chopped                      d. added
7. Ola paints beautiful .....  
a. sculptures                      b. portraits                      c. photographs                      d. instruments
8. One day, scientists will ..... treat all diseases.  
a. be able                      b. can                      c. able                      d. know how to
9. Their car is bigger and more ..... than ours.  
a. comfortable                      b. serious                      c. tiny                      d. loose
10. Salma uses her ..... to text her friends and send emails.  
a. camera                      b. mobile phone                      c. drone                      d. remote control

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you feel sick, you should ..... (seeing) a doctor.
2. Would you like to have ..... (a) juice?
3. (Are) ..... Soha able to do the housework every day?
4. It's a ..... (black, nice, leather) jacket.

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A review of a book you have read"

.....

.....

.....

## Exam 12

Fayoum - Sennoris



## A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We have ..... air pollution in our country.  
a. a lot of                      b. little                      c. few                      d. many
2. .... can reduce pollution.  
a. Traffic                      b. Trees                      c. Cars                      d. planes
3. Trees are good for the .....  
a. pollution                      b. houses                      c. traffic                      d. environment
4. People should ..... trees.  
a. reduce                      b. cut                      c. plant                      d. have

## B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

**Khalid is talking to Amir who bought some clothes last weekend.**

**Khalid** : Hi, Amir. Where did you go last weekend?

**Amir** : ① .....

**Khalid** : Shopping! ② .....

**Amir** : I bought a T-shirt and a pair of sunglasses.

**Khalid** : ③ .....

**Amir** : I went with my brother and sister.

**Khalid** : What did your brother buy?

**Amir** : ④ .....

**Khalid** : What colour are your brother's shoes?

**Amir** : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Healthy food is really important for everyone. It helps us grow well and gives us energy. If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. We need to drink much water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. **They** give us calcium. It helps us to have strong bones. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. We need protein to have strong body. Fruits and nuts are healthy snacks. People need to eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day. Fit people are so interested in what they eat. The more healthy food they eat, the **fitter** they will be. Bad habits of having food are the main reasons of health problems nowadays.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
3. Why do you think healthy food is so important for us?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The word filter can be replaced by .....  
a. weaker                      b. stronger                      c. smaller                      d. bigger
5. We can stop some health problems by having ..... food.  
a. expensive                      b. cheap                      c. healthy                      d. fatty
6. Dairy products gives us .....  
a. calcium                      b. carbohydrates                      c. olives                      d. fit

**D Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. There's a/an ..... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.  
a. app                      b. screen                      c. battery                      d. charger
2. Sea water is .....  
a. sweet                      b. spicy                      c. juicy                      d. salty
3. My dress is damaged, so my mother is ..... it.  
a. acting                      b. sewing                      c. painting                      d. playing
4. In ancient Egypt, clothes made from ..... were popular.  
a. oil                      b. plastic                      c. linen                      d. wheat
5. How many ..... do you speak?  
a. jobs                      b. subjects                      c. sports                      d. languages
6. Can you ..... a script for the school show?  
a. write                      b. come                      c. play                      d. paint
7. .... my point of view, too much of technology can give you headaches.  
a. From                      b. In                      c. By                      d. On
8. If Huda visits Cairo, she ..... some new shoes.  
a. would buy                      b. buying                      c. will buy                      d. bought
9. Leila likes ..... milk in her tea, but not very much.  
a. a lot                      b. a little                      c. any                      d. a few
10. These earrings are the ..... my mum gave me last summer.  
a. one                      b. ones                      c. once                      d. won

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. It's a ..... (old, short, gold) necklace.      1.500
2. I'm going to ..... (helps) my father.

3

"To chop" the topyloom, but don't chop them too small  
(point) a scanning?

4. Do you know how

## E Writing

⑥ Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Are you for or against shopping online?"

## Exam 13

Beni-Suef



## A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hany likes the

a. shopping

b. desert

c. noise

d. clothes

2. The desert is always ..... at night.

a. noisy

b. cold

c. hot

d. heavy

3. Hany always wears ..... clothes at night.

a. heavy

b. yellow

c. light

d. green

4. Hany likes the desert because it is .

a. worse

b. quiet

c. hot

d. noisy

## B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Huda are talking about food.

Mona : Can I ask you some questions about food?

Huda : ① .....

Mona : What is your favourite food?

Huda : ② .....

Mona : Why do we need to eat well?

Huda : ③ .....

Mona : Energy! ④ .....

Huda : We need energy to be able to do many things.

Mona : ⑤ .....

Huda : We should eat healthy food to keep healthy.



## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Kareem. I have got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an old farmer. My mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. My father and mother work day and night to help us live happily. They bring us up to love our country Egypt. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. In my school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals and birds. I like to study farming because I want to grow the main crops on our farm.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many persons are there in Kareem's family?
2. Why do you think Kareem like to study farming?
3. What does the passage talk about?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "farming" means .....  
 a. weaving  
 b. growing crops  
 c. making clothes  
 d. playing music
5. Kareem's mother works at .....  
 a. home  
 b. school  
 c. bank  
 d. company
6. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .....  
 a. Kareem's brothers  
 b. Kareem's parents  
 c. Kareem's friends  
 d. Kareem's uncle

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandmother's hobby is to sew .....  
 a. customs  
 b. costumes  
 c. pottery  
 d. painting
2. Don't use too much social media or you will be ..... to them.  
 a. addicted  
 b. worried  
 c. useful  
 d. allergic
3. I can't find my watch. It's .....  
 a. hurt  
 b. disappeared  
 c. sent  
 d. found
4. Nurses help ..... to get better at hospitals.  
 a. medicines  
 b. patients  
 c. players  
 d. wards
5. I ..... a new phone online yesterday.  
 a. saved  
 b. made  
 c. ordered  
 d. took

6. I read a ..... of that book. It was very good.  
 a. revision                      b. revenge                      c. review                      d. letter
7. Spinach is a kind of .....  
 a. fruit                      b. snacks                      c. vegetables                      d. fats
8. Mona doesn't have many friends. She only has ..... friends.  
 a. much                      b. a few                      c. any                      d. a little
9. Would you like ..... cake, Roham? - No, thanks.  
 a. any                      b. some                      c. many                      d. plenty
10. .... It be cold if I travel to England?  
 a. Will                      b. Does                      c. Is                      d. Did

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sama ..... (not travel) abroad when she leaves school.  
 2. Can your brother ..... (taken) some photographs?  
 3. I will wear a ..... (dress, blue, linen, new) for the party.  
 4. Why don't you wear ..... (these) nice scarf?

## E Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:  
 "Your favourite subject"

.....  
 .....  
 .....

## Exam 14

Minga - Beni- Mzar



## A Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mai is ..... years old.  
 a. 12                      b. 13                      c. 15                      d. 16
2. She is in ..... school.  
 a. primary                      b. secondary                      c. elementary                      d. preparatory
3. The school is ..... Mai's house.  
 a. far                      b. near                      c. old                      d. new
4. Mai likes ..... best.  
 a. maths                      b. English                      c. history                      d. Arabic

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rana and Jana are talking about their summer holiday

- Rana : Where are you going to spend the next summer holiday?  
 Jana : ① .....  
 Rana : ② ..... ?  
 Jana : We are going to Alex by train.  
 Rana : Did you visit Alex before?  
 Jana : ③ .....  
 Rana : ④ ..... ?  
 Jana : We are going to stay for two weeks.  
 Rana : I hope you will enjoy your time there.  
 Jana : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We have so much technology now. There are televisions, laptops, mobile phones and so on. Mobile phones and other items of technology are sometimes **harmful** to our health. Scientists think mobile phones should be used as little as possible, and it is better to be careful about using them. Mobile phones are bad for children. In fact, research shows that mobile phones might kill more people than smoking. Wi-Fi technology may cause headaches as well.

It is better to have no electronic devices in your bedroom. But if you can't go without **them**, at least make sure you don't have a computer or mobile phone in your bedroom, or at least make sure that they are turned off.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of this passage?  
 .....
2. What may Wi-Fi technology cause?  
 .....
3. Do you think that technology is useful?  
 .....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. .... aren't examples of technology.

a. Televisions      b. Computers      c. Books      d. Phones

5. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to  
 a. televisions      b. computers      c. phones      d. electronic devices
6. The word "harmful" means very  
 a. bad      b. good      c. nice      d. great

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There's a/an \_\_\_\_\_ on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.  
 a. app      b. screen      c. battery      d. charger
- My father drinks much coffee. He is \_\_\_\_\_ to it.  
 a. damaged      b. broken      c. addicted      d. hated
- \_\_\_\_\_ food is prepared quickly and is usually unhealthy.  
 a. Helpful      b. Fast      c. Slow      d. Famous
- We usually eat some \_\_\_\_\_ between meals.  
 a. snail      b. smoke      c. snacks      d. snakes
- Salma plays the violin in a / an \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. character      b. orchestra      c. math      d. team
- A \_\_\_\_\_ person is the person who is not able to see.  
 a. blind      b. deaf      c. wise      d. stupid
- It's a beautiful new, blue, \_\_\_\_\_ dress.  
 a. wooden      b. electric      c. plastic      d. linen
- If she has a headache, she \_\_\_\_\_ see a doctor.  
 a. have      b. should      c. is      d. was
- There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ students in the classroom  
 a. any      b. some      c. a little      d. much
- Salma knows how to \_\_\_\_\_ well.  
 a. cooks      b. cook      c. cooked      d. cooking

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- \_\_\_\_\_ (Doesn't) make noise in the library.
- I bought \_\_\_\_\_ (this) shoes last week at the market.
- The sky is cloudy! It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain).
- Ali \_\_\_\_\_ (listen) to music at the moment.

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite food"

.....

.....

.....





## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:  
Shopping online is

- 1 Shopping online is  
a cheap b. expensive c. great d. bad
- 2 While shopping online, you can stay  
a nowhere b. at home c. in the club d. at a shop
- 3 Shopping online saves  
a. clothes b. money c. time d. cars
- 4 When we shop online, there will be  
a. less b. more c. much d. air pollution.

## B Language Functions

**2** Complete the following dialogue:

Sameh and Mokhtar are talking about a new T-shirt Mokhtar bought yesterday.

**Sameh** : Hello, Mokhtar. What a beautiful T-shirt!

**Mokhtar** : Hi, Sameh. Thank you very much.

**Someh** : Is it new?

**Mokhtar** : 1

**Sameh** : When did you buy it?

**Mokhtar** : 2

**Sameh** : ③ ----- ?

**Mokhtar** : It is 500 pounds.

**Sameh** : Where did you buy it?

**Mokhtar** : 4

Sameh : 6

**Mokhtar** : It is made of the best Egyptian cotton.

## C Reading Comprehension

**③ Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Last summer, a rich father took his son on a trip to show him how poor people live. They spent a day on the farm of a poor family where the nature and love among people. On the way home the father asked his son: "What did you learn from this trip?"

The son was so wise, he said "We have a kilo milk in the fridge, they have the cow itself. We have a pool, they have a river. We have expensive lamps, they have stars and the moon. We buy food, they grow it. We have walls to protect us, they have friends. We have social media, they spend time with their family. Thank you dad for showing me how poor we are.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. What do cows give us?
3. Do you like living in a village, why?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "It" refers to  
a. a pool                      b. food                      c. the moon                      d. stars
5. They visited the farm  
a. last week                      b. last winter                      c. yesterday                      d. last summer
6. The opposite of "expensive" is  
a. poor                      b. cheap                      c. sheep                      d. shop

**D Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .... are like planes, but they do not have wings.  
a. Cars                      b. Cameras                      c. Mobiles                      d. Helicopters
2. I asked my aunt to ..... a French internet article into Arabic.  
a. build                      b. check                      c. translate                      d. damage
3. We ..... things when we put them in our mouths.  
a. smell                      b. see                      c. taste                      d. hear
4. Many people are ..... to nuts, so they don't eat cakes.  
a. addicted                      b. popular                      c. allergic                      d. ready
5. Some birds have strong ....., so they can fly for a long distance.  
a. beaks                      b. wings                      c. tails                      d. legs
6. .... means having something that makes you ill when you eat or touch it  
a. Safe                      b. Fresh                      c. Addicted                      d. Allergic
7. Lara always gives her grandmother a big ..... when she sees her.  
a. hug                      b. huge                      c. hide                      d. hold
8. I can't use my mobile phone because there is a problem ..... it.  
a. on                      b. with                      c. for                      d. in

9. My teacher is wearing sunglasses

- a. big, red, plastic      b. red, plastic, big  
c. big, plastic, red      d. plastic, big, red

10. Look at the black clouds! It soon.

- a. is going to rain      b. is raining      c. rains      d. 'll rain

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Cafés ..... (closing) in the future.
2. He has arranged everything. He ..... (spend) his holiday in Paris
3. Let's go to the beach. There are ..... (little) people there today.
4. Mariam ..... (don't) use to read when she was five

## E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on:

To your friend Hany about "How to be safe online".

Your name is Magdy and your email address is magdy22@yahoo.com.

Your friend's email address is hany33@yahoo.com

## Exam 16

### The Red Sea - Hurghada



## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How old is Nada? .....

- a. Thirty      b. Thirteen      c. Twenty      d. Twelve

2. What is her favourite sport? .....

- a. Swimming      b. Tennis      c. Basketball      d. Football

3. Why does she eat fruit and vegetables? .....

- a. To be healthy      b. To be fat      c. To be weak      d. To be thin

4. What does she drink to have strong bones? .....

- a. Tea      b. Milk      c. Coffee      d. Water

## B Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Reem is talking with Haneen about clothes.

Reem : Hello, Haneen. Your dress looks beautiful.

Haneen : Hi, Reem ①

Reem : Is it new?

Haneen : ② I bought it yesterday

Reem : ③ .....

Haneen : It's 500 pounds.

Reem : ④ .....

Haneen : I bought it at shopping mall..

Reem : What is made of?

Haneen : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Technology has changed our life very much. It helps us to live easier and better life. Some examples of technology are smartphones, computers, internet and robots. The internet is very important type of technology. It gives us a lot of information. Smart phones help us to communicate with people. You can send and receive messages and photos easily. Using the social networking sites may be the most important uses of mobile phones. Although it is difficult to live without modern technology, it can be bad for you. Many people spend a lot of time watching videos or checking social networking sites. They can have eye problems and headaches. They stay up late at night and find it difficult to get up early in the morning. They become addicted to phones. It is important to know about the latest technology, but you should be careful when you use it.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. What examples of technology do you use?

2. Why is the internet important?

3. Do you think modern technology is dangerous? Why? Why not?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. In this passage we know about the .....

a. shopping online

b. modern technology

c. information

d. laptops



5. The word "addicted to" means  
 a. hurt                      b. hate                      c. dislike                      d. like so much
6. The underlined word "They" refers to  
 a. people                      b. internet                      c. mobile                      d. computer

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ on this phone which tells me about the weather  
 a. delivery                      b. app                      c. customer                      d. owner
- \_\_\_\_\_ is a kind of funny drawings.  
 a. Acting                      b. Costumes                      c. Cartoon                      d. Photography
- I like this cake because it tastes \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. bad                      b. sad                      c. terrible                      d. delicious
- Can you \_\_\_\_\_ this passage into Arabic?  
 a. invent                      b. translate                      c. waste                      d. taste
- Deaf people can't \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. hear                      b. feel                      c. see                      d. walk
- Basma wears a beautiful golden \_\_\_\_\_ in her ears.  
 a. earrings                      b. headphones                      c. scarves                      d. watches
- We can use \_\_\_\_\_ to change the sunlight into electricity.  
 a. water                      b. wind turbines                      c. solar panels                      d. air pollution
- I don't put \_\_\_\_\_ salt on my food because it isn't very healthy.  
 a. any                      b. many                      c. some                      d. a few
- \_\_\_\_\_ is my brother's photo.  
 a. These                      b. Those                      c. This                      d. They
- Look at the black clouds! It \_\_\_\_\_ to rain.  
 a. go                      b. are going                      c. is going                      d. gone

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- \_\_\_\_\_ (Does) Mona able to drive her car every day?
- This book is funny, but that \_\_\_\_\_ (ones) is very boring.
- I'm not very hungry, I'll take \_\_\_\_\_ (a few) cheese in a sandwich.
- If Mazen feels ill, he should \_\_\_\_\_ (sees) the doctor.

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite food"

.....

.....

.....



**A Listening**

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Mohamed \_\_\_\_\_ before he goes to sleep  
 a. watches videos      b. plays football      c. reads a book      d. visits his aunt
2. Mohamed isn't sleeping very \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment  
 a. badly      b. difficult      c. well      d. hard

**B Language Functions**

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Mona is talking with Huda about the next summer holiday.

- Mona : How are you, Huda?  
 Huda : 1 \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mona : Where will you go on the next summer holiday?  
 Huda : 2 \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Mona : Hurghada! Who will you go with?  
 Huda : 3 \_\_\_\_\_?

**D Vocabulary and Structure**

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A long piece of material that you wear around the neck or shoulders is called  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. dress      b. pants      c. galabeya      d. scarf
2. He isn't going to \_\_\_\_\_ away his old watch.  
 a. throwing      b. threw      c. throw      d. throws
3. There's a/an \_\_\_\_\_ on this phone which tells me about the weather.  
 a. app      b. bag      c. helicopter      d. solar panel
4. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ more chicken, Amal?  
 a. some      b. any      c. few      d. little
5. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals.  
 a. play      b. cartoon      c. film      d. programme

## D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Ali and his family decided to go on holiday for a week. They chose a holiday near the sea because everyone in the family enjoys the seaside. They went to Hurghada where water was very calm and warm. They liked diving swimming and saw a lot of sea life. They also enjoyed seeing the coloured fish. Mr. Ali's wife liked going on walks near the beach and watching the sunset. She also liked fishing. Mr. Ali's son liked to go diving. At noon, all the family went to the cinema then they went to shopping and bought their friends some presents.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Ali and his family choose a holiday near the sea?

2. What did Ali and his family do at the end of the holiday?

3. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Ali and his family decided to go on holiday for ..... days.

a. fourteen                      b. ten                      c. seven                      d. eighty

5. Ali's wife liked .....

a. riding horses                      b. reading                      c. running                      d. fishing

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. I - the Egyptian - Last month - Museum - visited, .....

2. to be - clothes - comfortable - in my - I like, .....

3. is - my - school - This - uniform, .....

4. area of desert - is a large - in - Wadi Rum - Jordan, .....

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Healthy food"



**A Listening**

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Lama ordered the mobile phone  
 a. yesterday      b. last week      c. last month      d. two weeks ago
2. The screen of the mobile phone was  
 a. clean      b. opened      c. delivered      d. damaged

② Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ali is talking with Ahmed about going to the cinema.

Ali : Hi, how are you?

Ahmed : Hi, ① .....

Ali : ② ..... ?

Ahmed : I went to the cinema yesterday.

Ali : ③ ..... ?

Ahmed : I went there by taxi.

**B Usage**

③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The water in the sea is  
 a. sweet      b. salty      c. juicy      d. spicy
2. If you want to get the park quickly, you ... the bus.  
 a. should take      b. will take      c. take      d. took
3. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started .....  
 a. crying      b. laughing      c. hiding      d. wondering
4. .... all the vegetables into small squares.  
 a. Chopping      b. Chopped      c. Chop      d. Chops
5. This email is in Spanish. Are you able to ..... it for me?  
 a. waste      b. translate      c. say      d. taste

**D Reading Comprehension**

④ Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Judy plays squash every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a netball game, she always eats some fish with a lot of pasta, because this gives her energy. When she is playing netball, she drinks a little water. Then, after the game, she eats a few sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very good for her.



**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What does Judy play every week?
2. Why does she eat a lot of fish?
3. Why doesn't she eat many sweets?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Judy is allergic to  
a. pasta                      b. falafel                      c. grapes                      d. nuts
5. She drinks ..... water  
a. a little                      b. a few                      c. any                      d. a lot of

**5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:**

1. international - classical - plays - and - The orchestra - Arabic - music.  
.....
2. to wear - jewellery - heavy - They - metal - loved. - .....  
.....
3. is - for - growing - crops - Egypt - famous. ....  
.....
4. should - time - What - I - come? .....  
.....

**E Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on.**

"Environmental problems"

.....

.....

.....

**Exam 19**

Al Azhar - Qalyubia



**A Listening**

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Fast food is .....  
a. taste                      b. tasteful                      c. tasty                      d. healthy
2. You should have .....  
a. snake                      b. snacks                      c. snail                      d. soap

## B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue

Khalid and John are talking about snacks.

Khalid : What's your favourite snack, John?

John : ①

What about?

Khalid : I like chips, too, but I like falafel more

John : ②

Khalid : Yes, falafel is a popular snack in Egypt

John : Is it a healthy snack?

Khalid : ③

## C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I use my mobile to ..... my friends.  
a. text                      b. spend                      c. addict                      d. visit
- We shouldn't have ..... fat in our diet.  
a. many                      b. few                      c. much                      d. a lot
- I am ..... if you are busy tonight.  
a. walking                      b. wondering                      c. wandering                      d. working
- I found a/an ..... for a job in the newspaper yesterday.  
a. style                      b. occasion                      c. advert                      d. climate
- Keep quiet, the baby .....  
a. sleep                      b. sleeps                      c. is sleeping                      d. sleeping

## D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Disabled means someone who isn't able to use a part or parts of the body in the way other people can. Disabled aren't different but they need more help. For example the blind need special schools to learn how to use Braille. They can read and write draw and even play music. They also need help to be able to communicate well. To conclude, the disabled are heroes. They can do amazing things, they need more help to live a normal life.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What does the "disabled" mean?

2. How can they read?

3. What do they need to communicate with?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The blind need ..... schools to learn.

a especially

b special

c private

d public

5. They can do amazing things. "Amazing" here means

a. boring

b. dull

c. surprising

d. angry

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. factories - a lot - Clothes - of - pollution - cause.

2. is trying - environment - to help - farmers - to protect - the - The government.

3. a lot of - from the - There's - traffic - in our city - air pollution.

4. is- much better - for - the - Wind - environment - energy.

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Water pollution"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Unit 7

### SB Answers

#### Lesson 1 Page 2

##### Discuss

- Can you match the descriptions to these pictures of new inventions?

1. e                      2. a                      3. d                      4. b

##### Find

- Look through the unit. What did Lama buy from the internet?

She bought a new mobile phone.

##### Research

- Who was H. G. Wells? Why is he famous?

H. G. Wells (1866–1948) was a British writer. He was famous for writing science fiction stories like *The Time Machine* and *The War of the Worlds*, which were also made into films.

#### Page 3

- Match the inventions 1–4 on page 2 with the people who talk about them.

1. They are found along the coast of the sea

Hatem : Picture 4

Mamad : Picture 2

Tarek : Picture 1

Sawson : Picture 3

- Complete the sentences from the listening with will or won't

1. won't                      2. will                      3. won't

4. will                      5. will

#### Lesson 2 Page 4

- Match a word from A to a word from B to make useful phrases.

have : a delivery, time, money, a choice

save : time, money

spend : time, money

waste : time, money

wait for : a delivery

- Read the article. Can you find any of the phrases from Exercise 2 in the text?

save (me) time, spend (lots of) time, have (more) choice, waste time, waiting for a delivery

- Complete the table with the reasons for and against shopping online. Can you add any more ideas to the table?

For : It saves time. There is more choice. It is better for the environment. There will be less traffic.

Against : You can't try things before you buy. You need to wait for a delivery. Ships and rates will rise.

Extra ideas :

For : Things are often cheaper online.

Against : It is less interesting than going shopping with your friends or family.

#### Page 5

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. go/will spend                      2. visit/will buy

3. won't use/is                      4. will took/gets

5. buy/won't be able to

- Complete these sentences with your own ideas.

1. I will buy some new shoes.

2. I will go to the local shop.

3. I do my homework tonight.

4. I have school work to finish.

#### Lesson 3 Page 6

- Check the meaning of the words in bold in your dictionary.

**addicted** : liking something so much that you want to do or have it all the time

**by mistake** : something you do or say without intending to

**headache** : a pain inside your head

**horrible** : very bad, not nice at all

**social media** : websites and computer programs that allow people to communicate and share information in the internet using a computer or mobile phone

- Listen to these four people talking about the problems they have with technology. Match them to the problems a–d above.

Shady c                      Hala b

Randa a                      Adam d

- Complete the advice an expert gives to the people in Exercise 3.

1. a good idea                      2. need to/should

3. is important                      4. good friends/should



1 Match to make sentences.  
1c 2d 3a 4e 5b

2 Complete these sentences with your own ideas. Use should

- 1 you should tell your parents
- 2 you shouldn't chat to people you don't know
- 3 you should tell his/her parents or a teacher
- 4 you should turn off all your technology.

### Lesson 4 Page 8

1 Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

- 1 He or she travels through time.
- 2 Students' own answers.

2 Read part of the story The Time Machine and answer the questions.

- 1 They are in London, at the Time Traveller's house.
- 2 The Time Traveller
- 3 They travel in time/go to the past and future

3 Look at the words in red. Use a dictionary to check their meanings. Write the words in your notebook.

**impossible** : if an action or event is impossible, it cannot happen or be done

**pull** : hold something and move it towards you

**lever** : a handle that you push or pull to make a machine work

**disappear** : suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find

**explore** : look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there

4 Read the text again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 T
- 2 F (The small model of a machine disappears.)
- 3 T
- 4 F (The small machine travels to the future.)
- 5 F (It is not finished.)
- 6 T

### Lesson 5 Page 9

1 Complete the poster with these words.

- 1 watch 2 enough 3 headaches
- 4 headphones 5 video games 6 outside

2 Look at these sentences from a debate called Technology can be bad for your health. Are these opinions positive or negative?

Positive – sentences 1, 4, 6

Negative – sentences 2, 3, 5

### Lesson 6 Page 10

1 Read the email. What is it about?

It is about a damaged phone.

2 Read the email again and answer the questions.

- 1 Last week
- 2 Today
- 3 The screen was damaged
- 4 She wants to change the phone/get a new phone
- 5 How she can change the phone

3 Which of these phrases are used to start or end a formal email? Write S (Start) or E (End).

- 1 S 2 E 3 S 4 E 5 E

### Lesson 7 Page 11

1 Match the verbs to the nouns to make phrases.

- 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 d

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs and should, shouldn't, will or won't.

- 1 are / should 2 listen/will
- 3 don't do/won't 4 want/should
- 5 are/should

## WB Answers

### Page 70

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

- 1 Helicopters 2 headphones
- 3 app 4 translate 5 motorbike

2 Choose the correct words.

- 1 corrections 2 invent
- 3 predict 4 translate

### Page 71

1 Choose the correct words.

- 1 saves 2 spend 3 have 4 of

2 Match to make the questions that he asks his mother.

- 1 d 2 c 3 e 4 b 5 a

3 Complete with the questions from Exercise 2, then role-play the dialogue.

- 1 Who will meet me at the airport if the plane is late?
- 2 What clothes will I wear if it's cold?
- 3 Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school?
- 4 What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson?
- 5 What will I eat if I don't like the food?

### Page 72

1 Match the words and the definitions.

- 1 social media 2 by mistake
- 3 horrible 4 addicted to

2) Complete the sentences with words or phrases from Exercise 1

- 1 addicted to      2 handle  
3 try make      4 social media

3) Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

- 1 visit      2 stay      3 try  
4 understand      5 swim

4) Complete the sentences. Use should and if / when.

- 1 we should talk to him/her  
2 if you are going to be late  
3 you should go home  
4 you should pick it up  
5 you should stay in the house  
6 we should work together

### Page 73

1) Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.

1. disappeared      2. impossible      3. pull  
4. lever      5. explore

2) Answer the questions about The Time Machine.

1. They meet at the Time Traveller's house.  
2. They say that it's impossible.  
3. He shows them a small model of a time machine.  
4. It took him two years to build.  
5. It disappears.  
6. He will explore the past and the future.

### Page 74

1) Choose the correct words in a debate called All computer games are bad for you.

- 1 don't      2 idea      3 opinion  
4 play      5. From

2) Now listen and complete the dialogue with the correct sentences 1-5 from Exercise 1.

- a.5      b.1      c.2      d.3      e.4

### Page 75

1) Read the email and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places.

- 1 a      2 b      3 a

2) Read the email again and answer the questions.

- 1 It arrived today.  
2 It was for children aged 6-9.  
3 Because it did not say the game was for children of this age  
4 He wants a different game that he can play with his friends who are 13 or 14  
5 He wants to know how he can change the game

### Page 76

1) Complete the table.

Adjectives : addicted, horrible, useful  
Inventions : headphones, motorbike, social media  
Verbs : order, pull, translate

2) Complete with the words from Exercise 1.

- 1 pull      2 headphones      3 translate  
4 social media      5 motorbike

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 d      2 c      3 c      4 a      5 a

## Unit 8

## SB Answers

### Lesson 1 Page 12

Quiz:

In which country do you think these snacks are popular?

- Starji: Morocco, Samosa: India, Chips: Britain, Rojak: Malaysia, Falafel: Egypt

Find:

Look through the unit. What is Okinawa and where is it?

- It is an island in Japan

### Page 13

1) Listen and put the snacks from page 12 in the order that you hear them. Were your answers to the quiz correct?

- a.3      b.2      c.4      d.5      e.1

2) Listen again and complete the sentences with these words.

- 1 sweet      2 delicious      3 salty  
4 spicy      5 juicy

3) Choose the correct word. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs.

- 1 juicy      2 spicy      3 salty      4 sweet

- Students' own answers.

### Lesson 2 Page 14

1) Read the texts about two teenagers and answer the questions.

- 1 Imad      2 Mustafa      3 Mustafa  
4 Mustafa Imad      5 Students' own answers.

- 1 Complete the sentences with a lot, a little or a few  
 1 a few 2 a little 3 a lot  
 4 a few 5 a little 6 a lot

Page 15

- 1 Listen to Anni and Hani talking to their grandmother and answer the questions  
 1 They are at their grandmother's house  
 2 They are having dinner  
 3 They are eating chicken and beans now  
 4 They don't eat the rice pudding because they are (really) full.

- 2 Match to make questions and answers. Then listen again to check your answers.  
 1 c 2 d 3 e 4 a 5 b

- 3 Choose the correct words.  
 1 Would, full 2 Do  
 3 a few, Would 4 a little 5 Would, couldn't

Lesson 3 Page 16

- 1 Complete the quiz.  
 1 c 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 b  
 6 a 7 b 8 c
- 2 Complete the sentences with the words in bold from the quiz.  
 1 bones 2 protein  
 3 fresh 4 dairy products

Page 17

- 3 Look at the photographs and complete the sentences with the correct cooking verbs.  
 1 heat 2 pour 3 serve  
 4 chop 5 fry 6 beat
- 4 Complete the recipes for an omelette and tomato salad with these instructions.  
 How to make an omelette How to make a tomato salad

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 Beat two eggs in a bowl with little milk  | 1 Take two big tomatoes and half an onion    |
| 2 Add a little salt to the eggs and milk  | 2 Chop all the vegetables into small squares |
| 3 Heat some butter in a frying pan  | 3 Put the chopped vegetables into a bowl     |
| 4 Pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter                   | 4 Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice     |
| 5 When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve with salad. | 5 Serve the salad with your omelette         |

Page 18

- 2 Read the article again and answer the questions  
 1 How many times in all have I...  
 2 It's unusual to eat...  
 3 I...  
 4 I...  
 3 Complete the meanings with the correct word from the article in bold  
 1 Unusual 2 eat 3 taste 4 delicious

Lesson 5 Page 19

- 2 Listen again and answer the questions  
 1 The cook in his parents' restaurant  
 2 Because he helps in the kitchen at his parents' restaurant  
 3 Because eating snacks isn't good for you  
 4 She feels very hungry after athletics club  
 5 Tamer is worried about his exams  
 6 He can't tell his mother that she gives him too much food
- 3 Read the advice and answer the questions.  
 1 Eman 2 Yes, it is good advice  
 3 It's a good idea to, how about (bringing), why don't you try (eating). Perhaps you could (eat)

Lesson 6 Page 20

- 1 Read about Okinawa and answer the questions.  
 1 People in Okinawa eat a lot of fresh vegetables. They only eat a little meat and few dairy products  
 2 The Okinawan breakfast is very healthy because it gives them a lot of energy to start the day.  
 3 The result of the Okinawans' healthy diet is that they live a long time
- 2 Complete the table with the expressions that the writer uses to introduce each point.  
 1 Firstly 2 Furthermore  
 3 Another important thing 4 As you can see

Lesson 7 Page 21

- 1 Match the photos with these words and phrases.  
 1 c 2 a 3 b 4 e 5 f 6 d
- 2 Choose the correct words to complete the dialogue.  
 1 Is 2 any 3 little 4 Would  
 5 some 6 few 7 enough
- 3 Match to make sentences about how to make a fried egg.  
 1 c 2 f 3 d 4 b 5 e 6 a

## WB Answers

### Page 77

- 1 Match the words in the food. Add more examples.

1 c 2 e 3 d 4 b

Suggested answers

a fish rule chips

b chocolate sweets cake

c watermelon oranges grapes

d banana, curry, chiles

- 2 Complete the email with some or any.

1 some 2 some 3 some 4 any 5 any

### Page 78

- 1 Match the definitions to their words.

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b

- 2 Answer the questions with these words.

1 pasta 2 pizza 3 nuts

- 3 What other types of food are people often allergic to? Research the information.

People can be allergic to almost anything, but common types of food include milk/dairy products, wheat (gluten) and caffeine (in coffee or tea).

- 4 Circle the correct words.

1 any 2 a lot of 3 some  
4 a lot of 5 a little 6 a few

- 5 Put the dialogue into the correct order.

a4 b2 c1 d3 e5 f7 g6

### Page 79

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. a4

1.b 2.c 3.e 4.d 5.c

- 2 Answer the questions.

1 butter 2 water 3 meat 4 eggs

- 3 Match to make sentences.

1.a 2.d 3.c 4.e 5.b

- 4 Circle the correct words in the recipe.

1. Wash 2. Add 3. Heat 4. Pour 5. Serve

### Page 80

- 1 Complete the diagram with these verbs for senses.

1 see 2 hear 3 smell 4 taste 5 touch

- 2 Listen to four people talking about food. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. T 2. F (She likes them.)  
3. T 4. F (She says it doesn't taste nice.)  
5. T

6. F (He loves to smell cakes cooking but he never eats cakes at all because he's allergic to nuts.)

### Page 81

- 1 Read about sleep and answer the questions.

1 very small babies  
2 Ali is a ~~ten~~ <sup>four</sup> hours a night  
3 You need less sleep  
4 Suggested: Because it helps you to stay healthy

- 2 Read the text again and circle the correct answers.

1 enough 2 enough  
3 sleeps for too many 4 not enough  
5 doesn't sleep for enough

### Page 82

- 1 Complete the sentences with these words

1 Spinach 2 Japan 3 pepper 4 red

- 2 Complete the text with these expressions.

1 Firstly 2 Furthermore  
3 Another important point 4 To conclude

### Page 83

- 1 Can you add any words?

cooking words	types of food	words that describe food
add beat fry	fove bean omelette pepper	fresh juicy salty

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 a 2 d 3 b 4 c 5 d 6 d

- 3 Complete the recipe for pizza with these verbs.

4 Cook 5 little 6 Serve

## Unit 9

## SB Answers

### Lesson 1 Page 22

- ☐ Discuss

1.c 2.f 3.b 4.a 5.d 6.e

- ☐ Find

They are called Meg, Beth, Amy and Jo.

- ☐ Research

- The Cairo Opera House in Cairo  
- El Sawy Culture Wheel in Cairo.

- ☐ Reading

- They are getting ready for an end-of-year school show



- Read the messages again and complete the table in your notebook.  
They are getting ready for an end-of-year school show

Activity	Name
Acting	Lamar with the drama club
Sewing costumes	Marion and Azzu
Doing make-up	Lara
Painting scenery	Mona
Playing music	Talia
Writing the script	Habiba

## Lesson 2 Page 24

- 1 Match the photos to the different types of art.
- drawing
  - photograph
  - pottery
  - portrait
  - cartoon
  - sculpture

## Page 25

- 4 Read the review again and answer the questions.
- He visited it last month.
  - No, it is also from the 20th century.
  - They are of important and normal Egyptians.
  - Al Madina. It made him feel happy/it was colourful.
  - It is free.
  - Students' own answers.

- 5 Can you think of any other phrases to add to the chart?

-Description: famous, good, important, normal, cool, big, small, colourful, free, busy, interesting, exciting, boring, etc.

-Giving opinions: From my point of view, I thought, It made me feel, In my opinion

-Talking about preferences: My favourite thing, The best thing, I liked ..., the most

-Giving recommendations: I recommend, It's a good idea to, You should ...

## Lesson 3 Page 26

- 1 Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

- Classical music: Students' own answers.
- Suggested: Yes, because it takes many hours of practice each day.
- Suggested: Patience, musical ability
- Students: own answers.

- 2 What is special about the orchestra?

The musicians are blind

- 3 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

- T
- F (Only girls can go to the school.)
- F (The students play music in the afternoon.)
- T

- F (All of the musicians are blind.)
- F (The Orchestra plays Arabic and international music.)
- T
- T

## Page 27

- Life skills.

- ✓ Do not leave bags on the floor on public transport
- ✓ Tell a blind person about objects on the street
- ✓ Ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help

- 7 Write a paragraph about a musician from Al Hour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra in your notebook.

The Al Hour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is a school for blind girls in Cairo. Judy is one of the musicians. She is able to play the clarinet very well. She was born blind and started playing when she was eight. She likes playing in the orchestra because she loves meeting other people. Last year, she visited Oman and France with the orchestra. I would like to go to one of their concerts and I would recommend listening to them online or on the radio if you can.

## Lesson 4 Page 28

- 2 Read the story and check your answers to Exercise 1.

- They are reading and listening to a story
- They are at home (in the living room).
- Yes, because they are all sitting together and look happy.

- 3 Look at the verbs in red in the text. Use a dictionary to check the meaning. Write them in your notebook.

wonder: think about something and want to know why it is true

hide: go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found

cry: produce water from your eyes, usually because you are sad, angry or hurt.

hug: put your arms around someone and hold them closely, usually because you love them

- 5 Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

- She wants them to hear it before they know she wrote it, perhaps to get a more honest answer from them.
- Because she likes the story and is proud of her sister
- 3-5 Students' own answers.

## Lesson 5 Page 29

- 2 Listen to a telephone conversation between two friends and complete the notes.

- Warda's house
- Tonight
- Watch Little Women
- drinks (fruit juice)
- 7 pm

3 Listen again. Complete these phrases from the conversation.

- 1 wondering 2 Would 3 Shall  
4 Should 5 could 6 should

4 Which of the phrases from Exercise 3 do you use for the following?

- 1 invitations 2 requests 3 and 4  
5 offers 6 asking for information 7

### Lesson 6 Page 30

1 Does the writer like the film or not?

The writer likes the action and the scary dinosaurs but he doesn't like the story because it's not very interesting or new.

2 Read the review again and answer the questions.

- It's an adventure film.
- stars
- It happens in a theme park.
- Some dinosaurs escape.
- The writer likes the scary dinosaurs.
- He doesn't like the story. It is not interesting or new.

3 In what order does the writer put the following information in the review?

- a4 b5 c1 d3 e2

### Lesson 7 Page 31

1 Complete the table.

Play	Concert	Verbs
costume	instrument	cry
make-up	musician	escape
scenery	orchestra	hug

2 Complete the conversation with the correct words. Then listen and check your answers.

1. wondering 2. Would 3. cool  
4. Shall 5. could 6. should

### WB Answers

#### Page 84

1 Match to make activities.

- 1.e 2.c 3.a 4.b 5.d

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word from Exercise 1.

- 1 is sewing 2 costumes 3 make-up  
4 scenery 5 instrument

3 Reorder the words to make questions. Then answer the questions about yourself.

1. Can you sew? No, I can't.  
2. Do you know how to use a computer? Yes, I do.

3. Are you interested in sewing? No, but I can sew.  
4. Can you play the guitar? I can't play, but I can learn to play it.  
5. Would you like to learn to play it?

### Lesson 2 Page 85

1 Match the words with their meanings.

- 1.b 2.d 3.f 4.c 5.a 6.e

2 Complete the review of a museum with these words.

- 1 thought 2 point of view 3 because  
4 recommend 5 idea

3 Read the review again and answer the questions.

- She thought they were fantastic.
- They really teach you about life in the past.
- The Islamic area (where you can see different types of calligraphy).
- She recommends looking at the clothes from other countries.
- Because the museum is quite dark.

### Page 86

1 Listen and choose the correct words.

1. blind 2. musicians 3. violin  
4. playing 5. orchestra 6. amazing  
7. read 8. concerts

2 Match the words with their meanings.

- 1.c 2.a 3.b

3 Look at the picture and complete the sentences about the difficulties disabled people can have.

- see the traffic light
- go into the shop/up the stairs
- hear the other boy

4 Write a list of four things that we can do to help some of the people in Exercise 3.

- Someone could tell the blind man that the lights are green for him. / The traffic lights could make a noise so that the blind man knows when it is green.
- Someone could put a slope/ramp on the stairs for the disabled woman so she can go in the shop.
- The boy who is shouting could stand in front of the deaf boy so that he knows he is talking to him.
- The boy who is shouting could learn sign language.

### Page 87

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. cry 2. wonder 3. hide 4. hug

2 Answer the questions.

- Suggested: When they are frightened / When they do not want people/other animals to see them.
- Students' own answers.

Put the events in Little Women in the correct order.

a5 b3 c6 d4 e2 f1

Page 88

Match to make sentences or questions.

1d 2a 3b 4e 5c

Put the dialogue in the correct order. Put the dialogue in the correct order.

a3 b7 c6 d2  
e8 f5 g4 h1

Research.

They are all also films. They have the same names (in English), except for Alice's Adventures in Wonderland which was called Alice in Wonderland as a film

Page 89

Match the words with their meanings.

1c 2d 3b 4a

Some words have more than one meaning. Complete the sentences, using each word two times.

1 park 2 star 3 park  
4 view 5 star 6 view

Put this review of a book into the correct order.

a4 b1 c3 d2

Page 90

Review

Write the words. What is the word in the blue column?

	l	c	a	r	i	a	a	n
	2	c	r	y				
3	c	a	s	t	u	m	e	
4	b	i	s	n	d			
	5	s	c	r	i	p	t	
6	p	h	a	t	a	g	r	a

Complete the sentences. Write what these people can/know how to/are able to do well.

- stop fires
- paint pictures
- can play musical instruments.
- knows how to act in films
- is able to teach us English.

Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

- Number 1 is a drawing.
- is a portrait.
- is pottery and 4 is a sculpture.
- 2-4 Students' own answers.

SB / WB Answers

Review C

SBAnswers

Lesson 1 Page 32

Read the medical advice and complete the sentences with should

- you should stand 1.5 metres from them
- you should use the correct drugs
- you should take a test for Covid-19 every 72 hours
- you should wear a mask
- you should have it online

Choose the correct words.

- lot of
- are able to
- a few
- a lot
- know how to

Complete the review with these words

- play
- costume
- scenery
- acting
- action
- script

What did the writer like about the play? What didn't he like? Write in your notebook and say why.

Liked about the play	Didn't like about the play
Caesar's costume. It made him look very important. The scenery. It looked like Ancient Rome. The acting. It was very good.	The story was sad. It made him cry There was not much action It was mostly talking It was very long. It lasted three hours The language was difficult. It is not modern English.

Lesson 2 Page 33

Listen to Heba and Sara talking about food. What do they spend too much time doing?

They spend too much time playing computer games/ being online

Listen again and complete the table.

	Heba	Sara
Favourite food	mangoes	lolalet
Knows how to make	omelettes and salad	cakes
Problems	Eats too many cakes Doesn't do enough exercise Spends too much time online in the evening	Eats too many cakes Doesn't eat enough fruit Spends too much time playing computer games in the evening

350

## WB Answers

### Page 91

- 1 Look at the picture and choose the correct words.

- 1 a few                      2 a lot of                      3 A few  
4 a little                      5 a lot of

- 2 Match to make sentences.

- 1.f    2.a    3.e    4.c    5.b    6.d

- 3 Complete these sentences with should and a suitable verb.

- 1 you should practise every day.  
2 you should ask them first.  
3 you should watch Jurassic World.  
4 you should end it with Yours sincerely.  
5 you should do it again.  
6 you should do more exercise / eat more fruit.

### Page 92

- 5 Listen again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. T  
2. T  
3. F (She will beat eight eggs.)  
4. F (She should chop it really small.)  
5. F (They can all have a little.)

- 6 Read and complete the reviews with these words.

1. costumes                      2 scenery  
3 recommend                      4 photographs  
5 cartoons                      6. buy  
7. point of view                      8. sculptures  
9 phones                      10. action  
11. made                      12. best

- 7 What are the reviews from Exercise 6 for? Read and match.

- a4    b2    c3    d1

## Unit 10

## SB Answers

### Lesson 1 Page 34

- Quiz

Find these items in the photos. Who can finish first?

- a. sunglasses, belt, handbag earrings  
b. belt, trainers  
c. headscarf  
d. galabeya, sandals, headscarf

### Research

What type of material is best for a hot climate?

cotton

### Find

Look through the unit. Why is Egypt good for growing cotton?

The climate is perfect for growing cotton

### Page 35

- 2 Match the people with the photos on page 34.

- 1.a    2.d    3.c    4.b

- 3 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 Comfortable and relaxed  
2 Her mother  
3 When he is helping his father outside  
4 They keep him cool and protect him from the sun  
5 She bought it at the market.  
6 It is a cool colour.  
7 Because he is going for a special meal with his grandparents.  
8 His father (when he's going to work).

### Lesson 2 Page 36

- 1 Discuss these questions in pairs.

2. The Ancient Egyptian clothes are made of linen, the sandals are made of leather, the jewellery is made of metal/gold.  
3. Students' own answers.

- 2 What did the people love to wear?

They loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery.

- 3 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

Correct the false sentences.

2. F (Clothes made of linen were popular)  
3. T  
4. F (Children did not usually wear clothes until they were about six years old, then wore the same clothes as their parents.)  
5 T  
6. F (They wore gold necklaces.)

- 4 Discuss these questions in pairs.

1. Now clothes are usually made of cotton, and are not just white. People do not wear jewellery very much.  
2. People still wear loose, white clothes with a belt, leather sandals and some jewellery.  
3. Students' own answers.

### Page 37

- 5 Put the adjectives in the correct order.

1. It's a beautiful, blue skirt.  
2. It's a colourful, cotton scarf.  
3. It's a short, old, gold necklace.



Lesson 3 Page 38

- 1 Read the blog. Where did the three people get the clothes they talk about?  
 Sarah from a shop in Cairo  
 Ayman from his dad  
 Noha her grandmother made it
- 2 Read the blog again. Tick (✓) the correct people.
- |   | Noha | Ayman | Dalia |
|---|------|-------|-------|
| 1. Sarah's clothes that are good                |      | ✓     |       |
| 2. Ayman wears the same clothes?                |      |       | ✓     |
| 3. Noha's clothes someone else used to own?     |      | ✓     |       |
| 4. Is Ayman trying to change how he shops?      | ✓    |       |       |
| 5. Has Dalia's clothes made by a family member? |      |       | ✓     |

Page 39

- 4 Read and correct the underlined words..
- 1 those      2 one      3 this  
 4 these      5 ones
- 5 Write about a special item of clothing.  
 One special item of clothing is my blue, cotton shirt. My mother bought it for me when my cousin got married. I always wear it for other special events like weddings and birthdays. It always makes me feel happy when I wear it.

Lesson 4 Page 40

- 1 Read the article. Did the Ancient Egyptians make the same types of material as now?  
 No, they made linen.
- 2 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match the words and the definitions.
- 1 soft      2 luxury  
 3 picked      4 crops  
 5 chemicals      6 perfect  
 7 industry      8 environment
- 3 Read the article again and match paragraphs 1-4 with the headings a-d.
- a      b      c      d
- 4 Discuss these questions in groups.
- 1 Farmers could use fewer chemicals on their land and use recycled water.

- 2 The dress that she is wearing is made of cotton. It is very comfortable and it is very nice.
- 3 She likes it because it is very nice and it is very comfortable. It is also very nice and it is very comfortable.

Lesson 5 Page 41

- 2 Listen to a conversation in a shop and answer the questions.
- 1 A dress  
 2 She wants it for her 12-year-old daughter.  
 3 She doesn't like yellow.  
 4 It is a bit big. It is the wrong size.  
 5 She tries it on and then buys it.  
 6 It is a beautiful blue dress.
- 3 Listen again and put these phrases in the order that you hear them.
- a 6      b 2      c 7      d 3  
 e 1      f 5      g 4

Lesson 6 Page 42

- 1 Read the advert and answer the questions.
- 1 Suggested: A school girl  
 2 It was a present but she already has one that is the same.  
 3 Students' own answers.
- 2 Read the advert again and complete the first half of the table.

To sell	a handbag
Age	new
Colour	black
Material	leather
Size	large
Price	LE 500

Lesson 7 Page 43

- 2 Write a description of four things using two or more adjectives.
- 1 She is wearing a nice, long, blue scarf.  
 2 She is wearing a long, thin, leather bag.  
 3 She has a small, brown, leather handbag.  
 4 She is wearing casual, blue cotton trousers.  
 5 She is wearing a long, expensive, gold necklace.  
 6 She is wearing a smart, black, cotton top.
- 3 Choose the correct word.
- 1 this      2 ones  
 3 those      4 that  
 5 ones/ones      6 this

- (4) Complete the conversation in a shop.  
 1 help      2 like      3 try      4 changing  
 5 fit      6 size      7 take

- (5) Write a short advert to sell these sunglasses.  
 I'm selling a pair of cool, new, blue plastic sunglasses.  
 Good for a beach holiday! The price is only LE 150.  
 Email me for more information

## WB Answers

### Page 93

- (1) Complete the table with the items of clothing.  
 Can you add any words?

head / face	legs	feet	body / neck
head scarf	trousers	trainers	belt
sunglasses	skirt	sandals	necklace
earrings	shorts	boots	galabeya
		shoes	scarf

- (2) Describe the two people below. Think about the following.

In photo 1, the woman is wearing a white blouse and a headscarf. I think she is wearing a black skirt, too. Her clothes are smart and traditional. I think her clothes look comfortable and I like what she is wearing because she looks nice.

In photo 2, the man is wearing a galabeya and a headscarf. His clothes are casual and traditional. They are not very colourful. I think his clothes look comfortable for his work. He is perhaps a fisherman and he is outside in the hot sun. I like what he is wearing, because I prefer to wear jeans.

### Page 94

- (1) Match the objects with the materials they are usually made of.  
 1.c    2.d    3.a    4.b    5.f    6.e
- (2) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.  
 1.a    2.b    3.c    4.b    5.a
- (3) Describe the things in the pictures using the words in brackets.  
 1. It's a long, striped, plastic snake.  
 2. It's a beautiful, long black car.  
 3. They're old, brown, leather boots.

### Page 95

- (1) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.  
 1.c    2.a    3.a

- (2) Choose the correct words to complete the dialogue.  
 1 These      2 those      3 ones  
 4 ones      5 this      6 one

### Page 96

- (1) Match the opposites. You can use a dictionary.  
 1.d      2.b      3.a      4.c
- (2) Complete the article with these words.  
 1 crop      2 industry      3 perfect  
 4. picked      5. chemicals      6. soft  
 7. luxury      8. take
- (3) Read the article again and answer the questions.  
 1 It makes a lot of money.  
 2 People often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. Bamboo material is not very soft.  
 3. Because cotton is softer than bamboo.  
 4. Students' own answers.

### Page 97

- (1) Match to make phrases.  
 1.c    2.a    3.d    4.e    5.b
- (2) Complete the dialogue with these words.  
 1 special    2. smart    3. that    4. one  
 5. changing    6 fit    7 try    8. take

### Lesson 6 Page 98

- (1) Complete the table with these words.

adjective	material	object
cool	leather	chest of drawers
fantastic	linen	handbag
old	metal	headphones
striped	plastic	jacket
useful	wooden	tool

- (2) Which of the objects in Exercise 1 is it trying to sell?  
 chest of drawers
- (3) Read and correct the underlined words in this advert.  
 1 buy      2. one    3. wood    4. expensive

### Page 99

- (1) Complete the sentences with these words.  
 1 casual      2. trainers      3. occasion  
 4. smart      5. cotton      6. earrings  
 7. try      8. belt

1 Read the descriptions. Can you add an adjective?

1. man 2. brown 3. reaction  
4. gold 5. big

2 Make these sentences plural.

- 1 How much are those necklaces in the window?  
2 Those birds are flying very high.  
3 Should I buy the red chairs or the black ones?  
4 I really like these pairs of trousers.  
5 These books are funny, but those ones are very boring!

## Unit 11

### SB Answers

#### Lesson 1 Page 44

Discuss:

- a plant trees b pick up rubbish  
c. reuse mobile phones d install solar panels  
e save wildlife f recycle plastic bottles

Find:

They want to plant new trees in the mangrove forest

#### Page 45

1 Match each post with one of the photos from page 44.

- 1e 2a 3c

2 Read the posts again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 T  
2 F (He says it is dangerous to save wildlife from the flood water, but his father knows how to keep him safe.)  
3 T  
4 F (They are going to plant trees on the roof of the school.)  
5 F (It is best to reuse parts of old mobile phones.)

3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 later this year 2. next week 3. tomorrow

4 Make questions about your future intentions. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs.

- 1 What are you going to do at the weekend?  
2 Where are you going to go for your next holiday?  
3 How are you going to improve your English?  
4 Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?

#### Lesson 2 Page 46

1 What is going to happen? Match the photos with the sentences.

- 1e 2d 3f 4a 5c 6b

2 Listen and complete the sentences with the correct form of these verbs to say what is going to happen

- 1 They are going to be late.  
2 Huda is going to go swimming.  
3 He is going to get up.  
4 They are going to get off the bus.  
5 Fenda is going to win the race.  
6 Omar is going to go to bed.

#### Page 47

5 Listen to a radio programme about beautiful places in the world and check your answers to Exercise 4.

1. It is Wadi Rum in Jordan.  
2. It is a desert with mountains, desert plants and wildlife.  
3. There are problems with rubbish, water, tourists damaging wildlife and hunters killing animals.

6 Listen to the programme again and complete the table

ENVIRONMENTAL PROBLEMS	
1. Tourists leave rubbish.	
2. Some tourists drive across the desert which can damage plants and wildlife.	
3. Hotels use lots of water.	
4. Hunters kill desert animals.	

#### Lesson 3 Page 48

2 Listen to a science teacher talking about drones and check your answers to Exercise 1.

1. They can be used for fun, for taking photos and for deliveries.  
2. They are going to be used for deliveries for helping wildlife, for doing some dangerous jobs and for planting trees.

3 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 It means you can control drones from the ground.  
2 They don't make much noise or cause as much air pollution.  
3 They can see if there are any problems in places where people can't go.  
4. Checking wind turbines.  
5 They can drop seeds onto the ground in places that people can't go to.

5 Put the time expressions in the correct order from now to the future.

- 1 in five minutes 2 this afternoon/evening  
3 tomorrow 4 the day after tomorrow  
5 next week 6 in 10 days time  
7 in three weeks

Page 49

- 7 Complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if you don't know the meaning of a word.

- 1 tomorrow / 11th      2 at 30 and Sunday  
3 coral reefs      4 mangrove forest  
5 Hobbit / 8 am      6 starting

Lesson 4 Page 50

- 1 Discuss this question in pairs.  
It is about young people who have invented things to help the environment.
- 2 Look at the words in bold in the article. Match the words and the definitions.
- 1 filters      2 bacteria      3 system  
4 ocean      5 chemicals      6 green
- 4 Read the article again and answer the questions.
- It kills wildlife.
  - It has arms with filters on them. These filters take the plastic out of the sea water, without hurting sea life.
  - She saw children in India drinking water from a dirty canal.
  - She uses light from the sun.

Lesson 5 Page 51

- 1 Discuss these questions in pairs.
- a star gazing      b bird watching  
c hiking in the desert      d diving  
e rock climbing      f canoeing
- 2 Which two of the activities from Exercise 1 do they talk about?  
rock climbing, star gazing
- 3 Listen again and answer the questions.
- He thinks it is scary, he is helping his father with something.
  - Yes, he does.
  - He thinks he will get cold and bored.
  - They are meeting outside Amir's house at 10.30.
- 4 Listen again and put these phrases in the order that you hear them.
- a4      b1      c5      d2      e6      f3

Lesson 6 Page 52

- 1 Read the postcard and answer the questions.
- She's in Siwa.
  - She's sitting by the water and watching the sunset.
  - She's staying with her parents' friends.
  - Because Haba and her family arrived very late, but the friends wanted to get up and make dinner, and they bring fresh dates every day.
  - They went to Shali Fortress and the Siwa museum.
  - She's looking forward to visiting the Siwa salt lake.

- 2 Find time expressions in the postcard for the following.

- 1 present - today, at the moment, every day  
2 past - the day before yesterday, yesterday morning  
3 Future - tomorrow

- 3 Read and correct the underlined mistakes in these sentences.

1. visited      2 are staying  
3. are arriving      4 am looking

Lesson 7 Page 53

- 1 Look at the photos. What is going to happen? What are the people going to do.

- She's going to get a taxi.
- He is going to play tennis / hit the ball.
- He is going to feed the cows / animals.
- She is going to paint a picture.

- 2 Make two dialogues using these words. Then role-play the dialogues.

- 1
- A: What are you doing at the weekend?  
B: On Saturday morning, I'm having a piano lesson. In the afternoon, I'm meeting my cousin.  
A: Aren't you going to the book club on Saturday afternoon?  
B: No, I'm not going this weekend. Are you going?
- 2
- A: Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain!  
B: Yes, it's going to be very windy, too.  
A: I'm going to close all the windows.

- 3 Write a reply to the text message in your notebook.

Hi  
I'm doing my homework this afternoon but I will call you when I have finished. Then I'll help with the English homework if I can. We studied the future in class last week.

Yes, I am free on Saturday morning and I'd love to come. It sounds fun. What time can we meet?

WB Answers

Page 100

- 1 Match the words with their meanings.

- 1.d      2.f      3.a      4.b      5.c      6.e

- 2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words from Exercise 1.

- saved
- solar panels
- install
- reduce
- repair
- wind turbines



- 3 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.  
 1 The jury said the killer was going to commit a heinous crime.  
 2 The man is going to try to (convince) the jury.  
 3 The woman is going to make a speech.

### Page 101

- 1 Match to make phrases for environmental  
 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 d
- 2 Many adjectives end in -al. Complete the table.  
 1 environment 2 traditional 3 natural  
 4 risk 5 environmental
- 3 Choose the correct words.  
 1 environment 2 traditional 3 natural  
 4 risk 5 environmental
- 4 What do you think is going to happen? Write sentences.  
 1 It is going to rain.  
 2 Number Four: The girl is going to win the race.  
 3 The water is going to fall over.  
 4 The man's hat is going to blow away / come off / The wind is going to blow off the man's hat.

### Page 102

- 1 Complete the sentences with these words.  
 1 mangrove 2 conservation  
 3 control 4 drone
- 2 Read Judy's diary and choose the correct time expressions.  
 1 this evening 2 tomorrow  
 3 the day after tomorrow 4 next week  
 5 in nine days' time
- 3 Listen and complete Khaled's diary.  
 1 See a play 2 Play basketball  
 3 Help my uncle 4 Take my cousins to the desert  
 5 Fly to Greece

### Page 103

- 1 Complete the sentences with these words.  
 1 filter 2 location  
 3 system 4 bacteria
- 2 Complete the table. Can you add any words?
- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| water           | land           |
| coast           | desert         |
| lake            | forest         |
| river           | jungle         |
| sea             | mountain       |
| Suggested ocean | Suggested farm |

### SB / WB Answers

- 1 Read the article on Student's Book page 91.  
 Choose the correct answer.  
 1 a 2 a 3 b 4 c

### Page 104

- 1 Match to make sentences.  
 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 d
- 2 Complete the dialogue with these words.  
 1 leaving 2 going 3 coming 4 far
- 3 Are the following expressions positive [✓] or not sure [?]?  
 1 [✓] 2 [✓] 3 [✓]  
 4 [?] 5 [✓] 6 [✓]

### Page 105

- 1 Put these time expressions in order from the past to the future.  
 1 the day before yesterday 2 yesterday  
 3 at the moment 4 tomorrow  
 5 in three days' time
- 2 Read Hamdi's email and circle the correct time expressions from Exercise 1.  
 1 At the moment 2 Yesterday  
 3 The day before yesterday 4 Tomorrow  
 5 in three days' time
- 3 Read the email again and answer the questions.  
 1 He is walking in the desert.  
 2 It was very hot.  
 3 He went diving in the coral reefs at Sharm el Sheikh.  
 4 He wants to see the beautiful birds that live at Wadi Khat.  
 5 He is going to be home on Saturday.

### Page 106

- 1 Choose the correct words.  
 1 solar panels 2 cause  
 3 land 4 environmental
- 2 Answer the questions with going to.  
 1 He is going to go swimming.  
 2 The Blue team are going to win.  
 3 No, she is not going to catch the train.  
 4 Because it is going to be cold/wet.  
 5 They are going to go to Japan.
- 3 Match to make sentences.  
 1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b 5 e
- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets to talk about future arrangements.  
 1 is playing 2 is leaving  
 3 are painting 4 is not waiting  
 5 Are / walking

## Lesson 1 Page 54

## Research:

Papua New Guinea (with around 140 languages)

## Find:

People speak more than 2,100 languages in Africa

## Page 55

- 3 What type of learner do you think would prefer doing these things? Write R (Reading and writing), S (Seeing), D (Doing) or L (Listening).

1 L 2 S 3 R 4 S  
5 D 6 L 7 D 8 R

## Lesson 2 Page 56

- 1 Circle the correct words.

1. fail 2. pass 3. decide

- 3 What jobs do they hope to do?

Fares : Manager of the family shop

Nevine : Doctor

- 4 Write F (Fares) or N (Nevine).

1 F 2 N 3 F 4 N  
5 F 6 N 7 N 8 F

## Page 57

- 5 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1 was 2 wanted  
3 will be 4 is  
5 will learn  
6 am starting/am going to start  
7 am going to take/am taking  
8 will pass

## Lesson 3 Page 58

- 1 Check the meaning of these words and phrases in a dictionary, then discuss these questions in pairs.

1. Sounds = any noise you make (e.g. clapping, stamping, shouting, animal noises, etc.) Voice = noises only with your mouth (talking, singing, screaming, etc.) Speaking = using words

2. People mostly use speaking and writing.

3. Animals mostly use sounds and perhaps body language.

- 2 What types of communication from Exercise 1 does Dr Ahmed talk about?

He talks about body language, sounds, voice, speaking, eye contact and facial expressions

- 4 Listen again and check your answers to Exercise 2.

1. F (They can understand when someone is angry for example)  
2. T  
3. F (They use other forms of communication)  
4. T 5. T  
6. F (They also make a noise when they are frightened, for example)

## Page 59

- 5 Work in pairs.

Advice : How about...? You should... Why don't you...?

Opinions : In my view..., I think..., In my opinion...

Suggestions : Let's..., Shall we...? What about...? We could.

- 6 Read this post from the internet. What is the girl's problem?

Her older sister does not want to talk to her.

- 8 Write a reply to Radwa in your notebook. Use some of the phrases from Exercise 5.

What about trying to do something together that you both like? You could watch your favourite film or go shopping. In my opinion, if she is talking to her friends, you should wait until she's finished. How about spending more time with your friends, too?

## Lesson 4 Page 60

- 2 Read the text quickly and answer the questions.

1 Three  
2 It connects you to the international community

- 3 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings.

1 identities 2. connects 3. experts  
4. advantages 5. national 6. dialect  
7 multilingual

- 4 Read the text again and answer the questions.

1 a dialect, a national language and a European language (like English, French and Portuguese)  
2. They connect people to their own community, the country and international communities.  
3. You can talk to different people in different ways and it helps you understand both your home and the world better

## Lesson 5 Page 61

- 3 What do you need to do for it? Complete the study plan.

I should.  
- study with friends sometimes so we can help each other  
- remember to take breaks for food, exercise and to relax  
- go to bed early. I will learn better if I'm not tired.

## Lesson 6 Page 62

## 1 Read the advert again and answer the questions.

- 1 They come from around the world
- 2 It is in the south of England
- 3 They study English in the mornings
- 4 They do sports and other activities
- 5 They visit famous places in England, like London or Oxford

## 2 You would like to go to Hapstone House. Complete the form.

Personal statement: I would like to study at Hapstone House because I want to improve my English. I think English is very important for my studies and my life. I would also like to visit England because I think it will be very different to Egypt and very interesting. I think it would be good to study with people from other countries and learn about their lives. In my opinion, if I study at Hapstone House I will learn lots.

## Lesson 7 Page 63

## 1 Match the words and the definitions.

- |                 |                 |            |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------|
| 1. pass         | 2. disappointed | 3. voice   |
| 4. multilingual | 5. organised    | 6. improve |

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- |                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 didn't use to go  | 2 is studying               |
| 3 went              | 4 didn't understand/speak   |
| 5 was doing/visited | 6 are going to go/are going |

## 3 Work in pairs. Take it in turns to read a sentence from list 1. The other person should answer using an expression from list 2.

I don't understand my homework. You should ask your teacher for help.

I want to learn to draw. - Why don't you join art classes?

We have an exam tomorrow! - Shall we study together?

Do you think it's good to speak lots of languages?

- In my opinion, it's really useful to speak lots of languages!

My house is too noisy to study in. - You should study in the library.

I don't know what job I want to do when I'm older.

From my point of view, you should find something you enjoy.

## WB Answers

## Page 107

## 1 Complete the sentences with these words.

- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| 1 take notes | 2 learners |
| 3 repair     | 4 mostly   |

## 2 What sort of learners are the following?

Choose the correct words

- |             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1 writing   | 2 seeing things |
| 3 listening | 4 doing things  |

## Page 108

## 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.

- |          |           |                |
|----------|-----------|----------------|
| 1 failed | 2 proud   | 3 disappointed |
| 4 pass   | 5 decided |                |

## 2 Match to make sentences.

- |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 b | 2 c | 3 a | 4 a | 5 d |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

## 3 Choose the correct words.

1. didn't use to have 2 come
3. are taking 4 had
- 5 are going to build 6 will cut

## Page 109

## 1 Read and choose the correct form of communication.

- |                |                       |          |
|----------------|-----------------------|----------|
| 1. sounds      | 2. body language      | 3. touch |
| 4. eye contact | 5. facial expressions |          |

## 2 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2. Then role-play the dialogue.

- |                  |                |          |
|------------------|----------------|----------|
| 1. point of view | 2. expressions | 3. think |
| 4. body          | 5. should      | 6. Let's |
| 7. How           |                |          |

## Page 110

## 1 Complete the crossword.

Across

- |           |                |             |
|-----------|----------------|-------------|
| 1 dialect | 3 national     | 5 advantage |
| 6 expert  | 7 multilingual |             |

Down

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 2 connect | 4 identify |
|-----------|------------|

## 2 Complete the text with the correct form of the words from Exercise 1. (there is one word you do not need).

- |             |                 |             |
|-------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. expert   | 2. multilingual | 3. national |
| 4. identify | 5. dialect      | 6. connects |

## 3 Answer the questions.

- 1 Arabic

## Page 111

## 1 The prefix dis- usually has a negative meaning. What is the opposite of these words? Be careful! One word is different.

- |             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1 connected | 2 disadvantage  |
| 3 organised | 4 pleased/happy |

## 2 Choose the correct words.

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1 connected      | 2 disappointed |
| 3 a disadvantage | 4 organised    |



**3 Complete the study plan with these words.**

- |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. Make  | 2. Write | 3. Don't |
| 4. Watch | 5. Read  | 6. Work  |

**Page 112**

**1 Mario is writing an email to an English language school. Read and correct the underlined words.**

- |            |                    |
|------------|--------------------|
| 1. am      | 2. February        |
| 3. address | 4. Road            |
| 5. don't   | 6. want to improve |
| 7. next    | 8. will            |
| 9. -       | 10. hearing        |

**2 Now complete Mario's application form for the English school.**

Name : Mario Dello

Age : 14

Date of birth: 14 February ( + year)

Nationality: Italian

Address: 7 North Road, Rome

Phone number: 889900

Personal statement: (Suggested) I want to study at your school because I need to improve my English for my exams next year. I think I will enjoy your course and also your sports activities.

**Page 113**

**1 Match to make phrases. Which is one word?**

1. d    2. e    3. b    4. b    5. c

Multilingual is one word.

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct time expression.**

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. at the moment | 2. usually     |
| 3. Last week     | 4. Next Monday |
| 5. In the future |                |

**3 Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets.**

- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. used to help | 2. was walking       |
| 3. did not want | 4. took              |
| 5. heard        | 6. am going to start |
| 7. will be      | 8. love              |

**Review D**

**SB Answers**

**Lesson 1 Page 64**

**1 What information is in the letter?**

Information that they will need for the trip.

**2 Listen again and complete the form.**

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. Camping  | 2. desert  |
| 3. 10th     | 4. eight   |
| 5. 1.3th    | 6. six     |
| 7. loose    | 8. worm    |
| 9. trainers | 10. camera |

**5 Write a postcard to a friend. Include the following information.**

We arrived yesterday and we put up our tents. Then we went for a walk. While we were walking in the desert, we saw a big bird! It was beautiful. I like cooking on the fire and sleeping in the tent. Tomorrow we are going to learn about the rocks in the desert. I'm looking forward to visiting some people who live in the desert, too.

Regards

**Lesson 2 Page 65**

**1 Read the article about a shop and choose the correct words**

- |                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. On                      | 2. environment-friendly |
| 3. talked                  | 4. are working          |
| 5. luxury, Egyptian cotton |                         |
| 6. worked                  | 7. saw                  |
| 8. was picking             | 9. wanted    10. at     |

**2 Read the article again and answer the questions.**

- The Eco Shop
- It will sell local fruit and vegetables, luxury, Egyptian cotton and other local things.
- It only sells things that are environment-friendly. You can recycle glass, plastic and paper.
- People can learn how to cook and sew.
- She saw a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach.
- Students' own answers.

**WB Answers**

**Page 114**

**1 Choose the correct words.**

- |                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. communication     | 2. developed    |
| 3. used to type      | 4. started      |
| 5. voices            | 6. are speaking |
| 7. are going to know | 8. expressions  |

**2 Read the article again and answer the questions.**

- They have developed.
- They used to type messages using special letters on their phones.



3 They started to touch the screens on their phones to send messages.

4 They can now understand people's voices.

5 Students' own answers.

3 Complete the dialogue with these words.

- |           |                  |
|-----------|------------------|
| 1. climb  | 2. one           |
| 3. scary  | 4. point of view |
| 5. should | 6. leather       |
| 7. hot    | 8. size          |
| 9. fit    | 10. let's        |

### Page 115

5 Match the people to three of the photographs.

- |                |           |            |
|----------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. gababeya    | 2. scarf  | 3. casual  |
| 4. T-shirt     | 5. cotton | 6. special |
| 7. traditional | 8. loose  |            |

Picture b: Deena

Picture c: Tarek

Picture d: Osama

6 write a description of the person in the other photograph.

She is wearing casual clothes. She is wearing a headscarf and a loose, long, blue and white shirt.

She is wearing a blue cotton jacket and casual cotton trousers.

7 Match to make study tips.

- |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.d | 2.e | 3.a | 4.b | 5.c |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

## End of Term Practice Answers

1 Listen and choose the correct

- |                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. a. few things      | 2. b. Hala likes healthy food. |
| 3. c. cut the carrots | 4. b. fourteen                 |

2 Complete the following dialogue:

1. lime
2. Shall I bring some books
3. good idea
4. We'll need to write down important notes.
5. You're right!

3 Read the text. Then answer the questions:

A) Answer

1. Because their brain doesn't understand it.
2. To train their brain to eat more healthily

B) Choose

3. b. ate it and didn't like it.
4. a. know because you have seen it before
5. d. a and b

4 Choose the correct answer

- |                  |                   |              |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| 1. b. should see | 2. c. is not able |              |
| 3. d. any        | 4. b. a little    | 5. c. how to |
| 6. a. translate  | 7. b. pay         | 8. d. energy |
| 9. c. heat       | 10. a. crying     |              |

5 Read and complete with

- |              |           |        |             |
|--------------|-----------|--------|-------------|
| 1. invention | 2. action | 3. odd | 4. visiting |
|--------------|-----------|--------|-------------|

6 Choose one of the following:

students' own answers

# Listening material

## Unit 7

### Azhar Listening

It's important not to become addicted to technology. If you feel you can't live without your phone, you should try taking a break every day for an hour or more.

### Test Listening

Online shopping is great! Firstly, it saves me time. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes.

## Unit 8

### Azhar Listening

Fava beans and falafel are very popular in Egypt. They are really delicious. People in Egypt like to eat them for breakfast.

### Test Listening

Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside. Durian fruits are very healthy and taste delicious.

## Unit 9

### Azhar Listening

Eman Dadr is a musician. She is able to play the violin well. She started playing it when she was six.

### Test Listening

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> centuries.

## Review C

I've bought a nice book. The articles are always interesting to read and they have fantastic photographs, too. I really like the cartoons because they make me laugh!

## Unit 10

### Azhar Listening

I'm Leila, I have two nice pairs of sandals. I usually wear them in summer. They are my favourite. I bought them last year.

## Test Listening

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets.

## Unit 11

### Azhar Listening

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. We can use remote controls. This means we can control drones from the ground.

## Test Listening

There's a lot of air pollution from the traffic in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.

So next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.

## Unit 12

### Azhar Listening

When I was young, I wanted to be a scientist. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I will be a scientist.

## Test Listening

I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

## Review D

There is a lot of air pollution where I live. My neighbours never recycle their rubbish. In my view, it is important to recycle. We should take plastic and glass out of bins and recycle it.

## End of Term Practice

- Amira** : Hi, Inji. Do you know how to cook?  
**Inji** : Yes, I can cook a few things. What do you want to make?  
**Amira** : Shall we make a cake for Halo? It's her birthday tomorrow.  
**Inji** : Good idea! She likes healthy food, so if we want to make her something healthy, we should make a carrot cake.  
**Amira** : Okay. We will need a recipe. Here's one on my phone.  
**Inji** : What do we need?



- Amira** : We need some flour, a lot of carrots, a little sugar and some eggs.  
**Inju** : Good, I think we have all of those. What shall I do, Amira?  
**Amira** : Perhaps you could mix the flour and sugar in a bowl, Inju. I'll cut the carrots.  
**Inju** : Okay. How old will Hata be?  
**Amira** : She is fourteen tomorrow.  
**Inju** : If she is fourteen, we should put fourteen nuts on the cake when it's cooked. She likes nuts.  
**Amira** : That's a good idea!

**Exam 1**

My name is Ahmed. Ali is my friend. I'm 14 years old. My friend Ali is 16 years old. Ali likes playing football. Ali dislikes playing tricks. He is a good boy.

**Exam 2**

Ali went to Luxor, last month. He went with his family. They stayed in Luxor for a week. They stayed in a big hotel. They had a great time.

**Exam 3**

Omar likes sports. He is in the running team at school. Omar eats good food to give him energy. He eats chicken for lunch. Omar goes running early in the morning.

**Exam 4**

I went to the museum last week. The museum is in Cairo. I saw lots of monuments there. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history.

**Exam 5**

To be healthy, you have to sleep well. Make sure you have a balanced diet. Eat some of all types of food. Don't worry too much to be healthy.

**Exam 6**

There is a lot of pollution where I live. Our neighbours never recycle rubbish. It's very important to recycle rubbish. We should take the paper and glass out of the bins and recycle them.

**Exam 7**

Nadia is a blind girl. She is a good girl. Nadia likes music. Nadia plays the violin. I'm very proud of her.

**Exam 8**

Omar is an important sports coach. Omar was born in 1990. Omar lost his leg in an accident. A shark attacked him when he was 22.

**Exam 9**

Ramy is a blind boy. Ramy likes music. Ramy is in the school orchestra. He plays the piano. I'm very proud of Ramy.

**Exam 10**

I work as a volunteer for a charity. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up the rubbish. We always pick up plastic bottles. The charity helps to clean our local beach.

**Exam 11**

I love having a new phone. I love watching videos online. I love social media, too. I talk to my friends on the internet.

**Exam 12**

We have a lot of air pollution in our country. People should plant trees.

Trees are good for the environment. Trees can reduce pollution.

**Exam 13**

Hani likes the desert because it is quiet. Hani likes the desert very much. Hani always wears heavy clothes at night when he goes to the desert. The desert is always cold at night.

**Exam 14**

Mai a good girl. Mai is thirteen years old. She goes to a preparatory school. Mai's school is near her house. Mai likes Arabic best.

**Exam 15**

Shopping online is great. In shopping online, you can stay at home. Shopping online saves money. When you shop online, there will be less pollution.

**Exam 16**

Nada is a good girl. She likes sports very much. Nada is 13 years old. Nada likes swimming. She eats vegetables and fruit to be healthy. Nada drinks milk to have strong bones.

**Exam 17**

Mohamed isn't sleeping very well at the moment. Mohamed watches videos before he goes to sleep. He shouldn't use the mobile too much.

**Exam 18**

Last week, Lama ordered a mobile phone online. Lama found that the screen of the mobile phone was damaged. Lama didn't receive the mobile phone.

**Exam 19**

Fast food is tasty but it is unhealthy. You should have snacks between meals. You should eat healthy snacks.